



Forest Service  
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE

Pacific Southwest Region / Sequoia National Forest

R5-MB-330A

May 2023

# Land Management Plan for the Sequoia National Forest

Fresno, Kern, and Tulare Counties, California



**Cover images:** (Clockwise starting at upper left)

*Poppies:* Looking down the North Fork of the Kern River. Photo by Alfred Watson

*Little Kern Looking South:* Adventures await you south on the Little Kern. USDA Forest Service photo

*Big Meadow:* Not all water flows directly to the ocean. Water at Big Meadow infiltrates the forest floor to help replenish the ground water supply in California. USDA Forest Service photo

*Young women looking toward Bull Run creek drainage.* Photo by Forest Howell-Gilbert

*In accordance with Federal civil rights law and U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) civil rights regulations and policies, the USDA, its agencies, offices, and employees, and institutions participating in or administering USDA programs are prohibited from discriminating based on race, color, national origin, religion, sex, gender identity (including gender expression), sexual orientation, disability, age, marital status, family/parental status, income derived from a public assistance program, political beliefs, or reprisal or retaliation for prior civil rights activity, in any program or activity conducted or funded by USDA (not all bases apply to all programs). Remedies and complaint filing deadlines vary by program or incident.*

*Persons with disabilities who require alternative means of communication for program information (such as Braille, large print, audiotape, American Sign Language, etc.) should contact the responsible agency or USDA's TARGET Center at (202) 720-2600 (voice and TTY) or contact USDA through the Federal Relay Service at (800) 877-8339. Additionally, program information may be made available in languages other than English.*

*We make every effort to create documents that are accessible to individuals of all abilities; however, limitations with our word processing programs may prevent some parts of this document from being readable by computer-assisted reading devices. If you need assistance with any part of this document, please contact Kevin Fox at the Sequoia National Forest at (559) 784-1500.*

*To file a program discrimination complaint, complete the USDA Program Discrimination Complaint Form, AD-3027, found online at <https://www.usda.gov/oascr/how-to-file-a-program-discrimination-complaint> and at any USDA office or write a letter addressed to USDA and provide in the letter all of the information requested in the form. To request a copy of the complaint form, call (866) 632-9992. Submit your completed form or letter to USDA by: (1) mail: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Civil Rights, 1400 Independence Avenue, SW, Washington, D.C. 20250-9410; (2) fax: (202) 690-7442; or (3) email: [program.intake@usda.gov](mailto:program.intake@usda.gov).*

*USDA is an equal opportunity provider, employer, and lender.*

*El USDA es un proveedor, empleador y prestamista que ofrece igualdad de oportunidad*

# **Land Management Plan for the Sequoia National Forest**

**Fresno, Kern, and Tulare Counties, California**

**Responsible Official and  
contact for more information:**

**TERESA BENSON**  
Forest Supervisor  
Sequoia National Forest  
220 East Morton Avenue  
Porterville, CA 93257  
(559) 784-1500

This page intentionally left blank



# Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction .....	1
Location.....	1
Distinctive Roles and Contributions of the Plan Area.....	1
Purpose of the Forest Plan.....	5
Adaptive Planning .....	6
Plan Structure .....	7
Plan Components.....	7
Other Plan Content .....	9
Chapter 2. Forestwide Desired Conditions and Management Direction.....	11
Introduction .....	11
Ecological Sustainability and Diversity of Plant and Animal Communities.....	11
Air Quality .....	11
Watersheds.....	12
Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	23
Animal and Plant Species .....	49
Invasive Species.....	74
Fire .....	76
Social and Economic Sustainability and Multiple Uses.....	83
Sustainable Recreation (excludes designated wilderness) .....	83
Scenery.....	87
Timber and Other Forest Products .....	88
Range .....	91
Tribal Relations and Uses .....	94
Cultural Resources .....	95
Local Communities.....	97
Volunteers, Interpretation, Partnerships, and Stewardship .....	98
Geology and Minerals.....	99
Energy .....	100
Infrastructure.....	101
Lands.....	102
Chapter 3. Area-Specific Desired Conditions and Management Direction .....	105
Management Areas.....	106
Wildlife Habitat .....	106
South Fork Wildlife Area.....	109
Conservation Watersheds.....	109
Sustainable Recreation.....	111
Recommended Wilderness.....	115
Eligible, Suitable, or Recommended Wild and Scenic Rivers.....	116
Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area .....	117
Designated Areas.....	124
Wilderness.....	124
Wild and Scenic Rivers.....	127
Giant Sequoia National Monument.....	128
Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail.....	128

## Contents

Inventoried Roadless Areas .....	129
National Recreation Trails .....	130
Research Natural Areas.....	130
Special Interest Areas.....	131
Walker Pass National Historic Landmark.....	131
Chapter 4. Forest Plan Monitoring.....	133
Introduction .....	133
Monitoring Program .....	135
Watershed Conditions .....	135
Terrestrial Ecosystems .....	135
Aquatic Ecosystems .....	136
Focal Species .....	137
Ecological Conditions for At-risk Species.....	138
Visitor Use, Visitor Satisfaction, and Progress toward Meeting Recreation Objectives .....	139
Climate Change and Other Stressors .....	139
Progress toward Meeting the Desired Conditions, Objectives, or other Plan Components .....	140
Productivity of the Land .....	141
Appendices.....	143
Appendix A: Maps .....	145
Lands of Specific Character .....	145
Management Areas .....	147
Designated Areas .....	154
Recreation Opportunity Spectrum .....	157
Scenic Integrity Objectives .....	158
Appendix B: Proposed and Possible Actions .....	159
Introduction.....	159
Air Quality .....	159
Water, Soils, and Watershed.....	159
Terrestrial Ecosystems.....	159
Aquatic and Riparian Ecosystems.....	160
Animal and Plant Species .....	160
Invasive Species.....	160
Fire .....	161
Timber and Other Forest Products .....	161
Range .....	161
Sustainable Recreation.....	161
Scenery.....	162
Tribal Relations and Uses .....	162
Cultural Resources .....	162
Geology and Minerals.....	163
Infrastructure.....	163
Lands.....	163
Special Uses .....	164
Interpretation and Education.....	164
Designated Areas .....	164
Appendix C: A Renewed Partnership Focus for the Sequoia National Forest .....	166
Creating a Partnership Culture .....	166
Forest Capacity for Working in Partnership .....	167

## Contents

Best Practices for Building New Partnerships .....	167
Steps for Ensuring Effective Outreach and Communication with Nontraditional Partners and the Public .....	170
Appendix D: Timber Suitability and Management .....	172
Determination of Suitability for Timber Production.....	172
Planned Timber Sale Program .....	176
Vegetation Management Practices.....	177
Appendix E: Aquatic and Riparian Conservation Strategy .....	182
Introduction.....	182
Plan Components .....	182
Watershed Conditions (Forestwide).....	183
Riparian Conservation Areas .....	183
Conservation Watersheds.....	184
Monitoring Indicators .....	185
Conservation Watershed Descriptions.....	186
Appendix F: Species of Conservation Concern.....	187
Appendix G: Existing Resource Plans.....	190
Existing Resource Plans that Continue to Guide Management .....	190
Superseded Resource Plans.....	191
Appendix H: Geographic Definitions of Mixed Conifer Types and Application for Wildlife Territories .....	192
Topographic Definitions.....	192
Dry Mixed Conifer.....	193
Moist Mixed Conifer.....	193
Application for California Spotted Owl Territories .....	193
References for Appendix H .....	193
Glossary .....	194

## Tables

Table 1. Percent of montane forest landscape in different seral stage patches by vegetation type at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres) <sup>1</sup> .....	30
Table 2. Structure within forested patches (10s to 100s of acre areas with similar forest)* .....	33
Table 3. Snags and large logs in unburned and low to moderate severity burn patches at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres)* .....	33
Table 4. Percentage of upper montane forest landscape in different seral stage patches by vegetation type at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres) <sup>1</sup> .....	37
Table 5. Structure within forested patches (areas of tens to hundreds of acres with similar forest)* .....	38
Table 6. Snags and large logs in unburned and low to moderate severity burn patches at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres)* .....	39
Table 7. Large and old trees at landscape scale, except where high-severity fires have occurred (greater than 75 percent basal area mortality).....	45
Table 8. Key constraints from plan components relevant to vegetation management, within and outside California spotted owl territories.....	64

## Contents

Table 9. Desired structural conditions by vegetation type for areas within the wildlife habitat management area .....	107
Table 10. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the destination recreation areas .....	111
Table 11. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the general recreation areas .....	113
Table 12. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the backcountry terrain recreation areas.....	114
Table 13. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate watershed conditions ..	135
Table 14. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate conditions for terrestrial ecosystems.....	135
Table 15. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate ecological conditions for aquatic and riparian ecosystems.....	136
Table 16. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate the status of focal species.....	137
Table 17. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate ecological conditions for select at-risk species.....	138
Table 18. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate visitor use, visitor satisfaction, and progress toward meeting recreation objectives.....	139
Table 19. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that measure changes on the plan area resulting from climate change and other stressors .....	139
Table 20. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate progress toward meeting desired conditions not addressed elsewhere in the monitoring program, particularly those related to social and economic sustainability of communities.....	140
Table 21. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate soils and soil productivity.....	141
Table 22. Sequoia National Forest land suitable for timber production .....	173
Table 23. Average annual volume outputs for the Sequoia National Forest planned timber sale program. <sup>1</sup> The sustained yield limit for the lands that may be suitable for timber production is 159 MMcf per decade, or 15.9 MMcf per year.....	177
Table 24. Estimated vegetation management practices on the Sequoia National Forest (annual average acres implemented).....	178
Table 25. Stocking criteria for suitable lands by forest type*.....	180
Table 26. Regional forester's list of animal species of conservation concern for the Sequoia National Forest as of March 2023.....	187
Table 27. Species recently proposed for listing under the Endangered Species Act. These species were considered as species of conservation concern throughout the plan revision process. ....	189

## Figures

Figure 1. Location of the Sequoia National Forest and vicinity .....	3
Figure 2. A schematic of the relationship of watersheds, riparian conservation areas, and riparian and aquatic environments.....	13
Figure 3. Variation in dominant trees and tree density .....	23
Figure 4. Diagram of a cross-section in a forest patch that illustrates the heterogeneity, or complex mosaic of different tree densities, sizes, and species mix. ....	31
Figure 5. Examples of ponderosa pine patches.....	32
Figure 6. Dry mixed conifer forest .....	34
Figure 7. Examples of moist mixed conifer forest.....	35
Figure 8. Photos of red fir forest heterogeneity .....	37
Figure 9. Examples of a Jeffrey pine patch.....	41
Figure 10. Example of mapped California spotted owl protected activity center (PAC) and territory. ....	63
Figure 11. Riparian conservation areas.....	145
Figure 12. Strategic fire management zones.....	146
Figure 13. Wildlife habitat management areas .....	147
Figure 14. South Fork Wildlife Management Area .....	148
Figure 15. Conservation watersheds .....	149
Figure 16. Sustainable recreation management areas .....	150
Figure 17. Recommended wilderness .....	151
Figure 18. Designated, recommended, and eligible wild and scenic rivers.....	152
Figure 19. Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area.....	153
Figure 20. Designated research natural areas, special interest areas, and national recreation trails .....	154
Figure 21. Congressionally designated wilderness, wild and scenic rivers, and inventoried roadless areas .....	155
Figure 22. Wilderness opportunity classes in the South Sierra Wilderness.....	156
Figure 23. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes .....	157
Figure 24. Scenic integrity objectives.....	158
Figure 25. Timber suitability areas of the Sequoia National Forest .....	175

This page intentionally left blank



# Chapter 1. Introduction

---

## Location

The Sequoia National Forest (the Forest or the Sequoia), one of 18 national forests in California, is located at the southernmost end of the Sierra Nevada mountain range (figure 1). The Sequoia encompasses approximately 1.1 million acres, within Tulare (62 percent), Kern (26 percent), and Fresno Counties (12 percent). There are about 46,000 acres of private, State, county and other land ownerships embedded within the boundaries of the Sequoia National Forest. Other Federal land managers in the region include the National Park Service, Bureau of Land Management, Army Corps of Engineers, and the Tule River Tribe.

The Sequoia is bordered by the Sierra National Forest to the north, the Inyo National Forest to the east, and the Tule River Indian Reservation to the west. Along the northern border, the Sequoia National Forest shares management of the congressionally designated Kings River Special Management Area with the Sierra National Forest. Because Kings River Special Management Area is within the administrative boundary of the Sierra National Forest, it is included in the Sierra National Forest plan. The Forest has two major sections divided by the Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks. The Giant Sequoia National Monument is primarily located within the Sequoia National Forest. The 2012 Giant Sequoia National Monument Management Plan<sup>1</sup> provides management direction for the monument.

The Forest is divided into three ranger districts: the Hume Lake Ranger District on the north end, the Western Divide Ranger District just east of Springville, and the Kern River Ranger District at the southern end near Lake Isabella. The Sequoia National Forest supervisor's office is in Porterville, California.

## Distinctive Roles and Contributions of the Plan Area

The Sequoia National Forest is described as the gateway to the southern Sierras, characterized by soaring granite monoliths, glacier-carved canyons, limestone caves, world-class whitewater, scenic lakes and reservoirs, and towering conifers. The Sequoia National Forest is named for the world's largest trees—giant sequoias—and contains the greatest concentration of giant sequoia groves in the world. Thirty-three groves and the surrounding areas are managed within the Giant Sequoia National Monument (figure 1).

Elevations range from 790 feet in the Lower Kern River Valley to 12,432 feet in the Golden Trout Wilderness. The elevation span, combined with the variability in aspect and slope created by deep river canyons, a variety of geology and soils, and precipitation that comes primarily as rain at low elevations and snow at high elevations, creates a high diversity of ecosystems across the Forest. The Sequoia National Forest has a diverse assemblage of plant communities and a high diversity of rare and endemic plants because of its location at the crossroads of five different geographic and floristic provinces: Sierra Nevada, San Joaquin Valley Grassland, Great Basin Desert, Mojave Desert, and Tehachapi Mountains.

---

<sup>1</sup> USDA Forest Service, Sequoia National Forest. 2012. Giant Sequoia National Monument: Record of Decision, Management Plan, and Final Environmental Impact Statement. Vallejo, CA.

The Sequoia National Forest is inhabited by over 2,000 plant species, and approximately 304 species of terrestrial wildlife, including: 194 bird species, 85 mammal species, 13 amphibian species, 25 reptile species, and 9 native fish species. The iconic California golden rainbow trout and its cousin, the threatened Little Kern golden trout, are found in Kern River tributaries. The southern Sierra Nevada, including the Sequoia National Forest, is one of three native sites in California and Oregon for the fisher, whose original range included much of the western United States and Canada. The Sequoia's terrestrial and aquatic plant and animal species, and the resulting biodiversity, are critical for resilient and healthy forest ecosystems upon which all social and economic contributions depend.

People also cherish this varied landscape. These lands and people are connected and strongly influence each other. Native Americans have inhabited these areas for thousands of years and their diversity, longevity, and importance in the region result in deep cultural ties to the Forest and surrounding lands. The Sequoia lies in the traditional territories of 8 federally recognized Tribes, as well as 23 non-federally recognized Tribes, Tribal groups, and Tribal organizations. Tribal communities are contacted and consulted and are important partners in forest management activities.

With its vicinity to the Los Angeles Basin and the San Francisco Bay population centers, the Sequoia offers recreational opportunities that are extremely important, both socially and economically. Recreational users develop deep affinities for particular places and experiences. Outdoor recreation also creates economic benefits by serving as a draw for businesses and highly skilled workers.

The Sequoia National Forest features a diverse range of settings and special places for people to enjoy, from the dramatic Kings Canyon, through the ancient giant sequoias, down to the mighty Kern River, the Isabella Lake Reservoir, and on to the forested Kern Plateau and the Piute and Scodie Mountains. Opportunities are plentiful for viewing scenery, driving for pleasure, hiking, fishing, horseback riding, mountain biking, paddling, climbing, skiing, snowshoeing, over-snow vehicle use, and off-highway vehicle use.

Most visitors to the Sequoia National Forest originate from California's Central Valley and the extensive urban areas of southern California and the San Francisco Bay Area. For these visitors, the higher elevations and bodies of water offer a cool retreat from hot summer temperatures, and a reprieve from the stress of urban living. National and international visitors are drawn to iconic natural features such as the giant sequoia groves in the Giant Sequoia National Monument, 60 miles of world-class white-water opportunities on the Kern River and climbing destinations on granite monoliths such as the Needles. Most visitors to the Sequoia National Forest spend at least one night; therefore, overnight accommodations are an important element of most recreation experiences.

The Sequoia National Forest is within a 4-hour drive of nearly half of the 37 million people who live in California. This pool of potential visitors is one of the most ethnically diverse in the world, challenging the Sequoia to look at new methods of providing services.

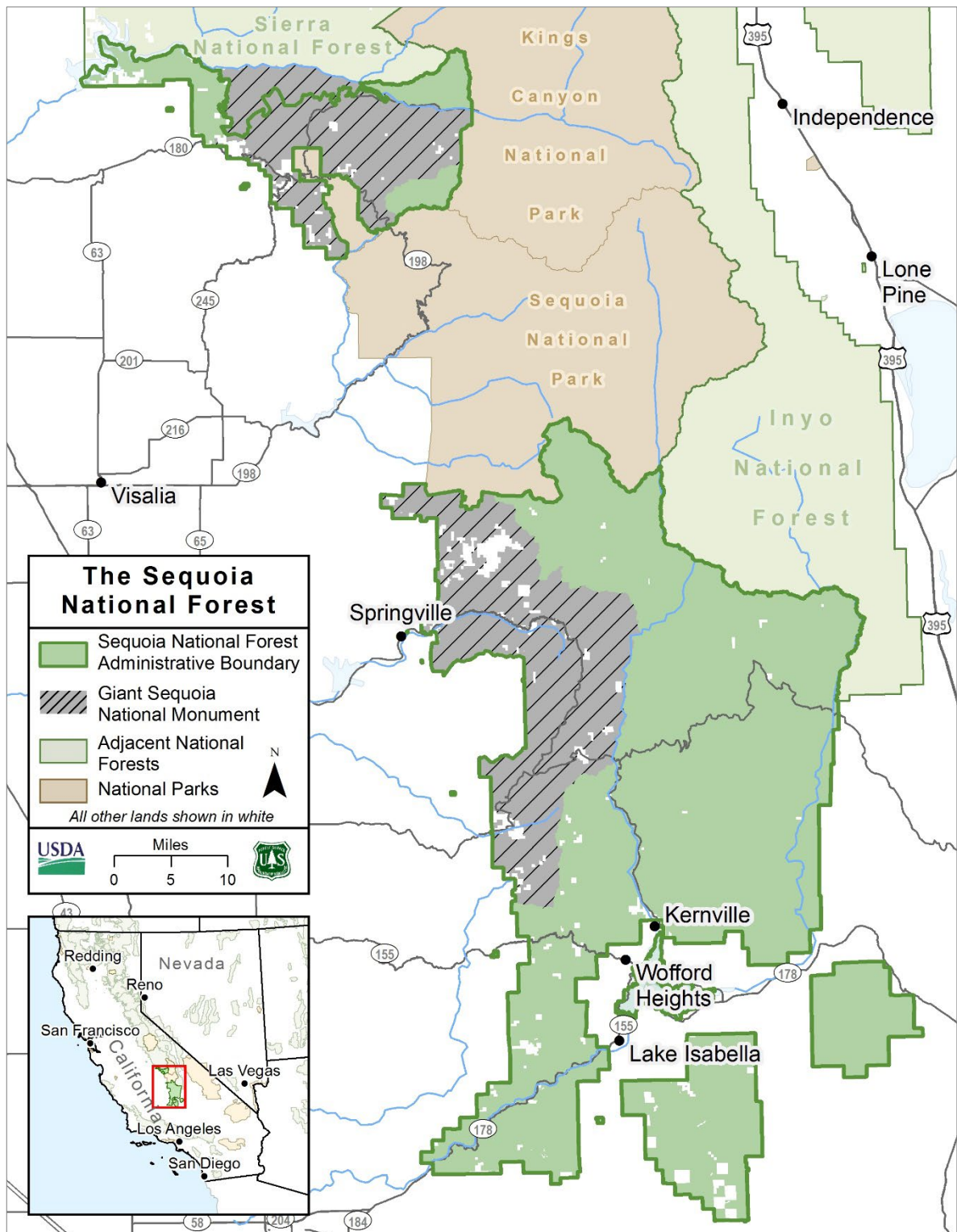


Figure 1. Location of the Sequoia National Forest and vicinity

Forest facilities offer experiences ranging from highly developed resorts, campgrounds, and picnic areas, to minimally developed overnight and day use areas that serve primarily as access points to trails, creeks, rivers, and general forest areas for people who prefer the Forest without

the amenities that developed sites provide. Key developed recreation areas include campgrounds and day use sites at Isabella Lake, along the Kern River, and on the Kern Plateau. The Greenhorn Mountains and Piute Mountains provide valued dispersed recreation opportunities. The resulting tourism from recreational opportunities in the Sequoia contributes to the economic stability of some local communities. Visitor spending supports jobs, creates revenue for local businesses, and generates county sales tax revenues used to provide local public services.

The Sequoia National Forest has six areas designated as wilderness and two areas of the Moses Inventoried Roadless Area within the Giant Sequoia National Monument that were recommended for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System through the 2012 Giant Sequoia National Monument Management Plan, adding up to 314,310 acres or 27 percent of the Forest. These areas offer solitude and vast open spaces as part of one of the largest contiguous blocks of wilderness in the continental United States.

The Sequoia National Forest provides opportunities for nature-based education to a wide variety of local and area residents. Programs like the Youth Conservation Corps and WildPlaces provide opportunities to students from communities in and around the San Joaquin Valley and across the Nation to learn about natural resources and to contribute to stewardship.

The San Joaquin Valley, located to the west, is mostly rural and agricultural in character and has historic economic and cultural ties to the commodities that are produced on the Sequoia National Forest. In addition, the valley is home to urban centers with a growing and increasingly diverse racial and ethnic population that is seeking new and evolving recreational opportunities. Within this ecological, social, and economic landscape, the Sequoia contributes a vast array of benefits.

Cultural opportunities are also an important contribution of Forest lands. Tribal communities benefit socioeconomically using cultural resources for artisan and craft materials, medicinal purposes, fuel, and traditional foods, and by supporting heritage tourism and recreation. Cultural resources on the Sequoia National Forest also enhance the sustainability of Tribal communities by providing opportunities for traditional ceremonies and religious practices that strengthen the community's sense of place and self. Gathering activities on the Forest play an important role in contributing to social, economic, familial, and religious benefits. Native American areas for gathering and distributing wealth and resources on the Sequoia include sedge beds, sour berry patches, meadows, elderberry patches, and black oak groves.

While visitors enjoy the opportunities the Sequoia National Forest provides, many people call it their home. Most private property is concentrated around small residential communities that existed or have grown within or adjacent to the Sequoia over time. There are also isolated private properties scattered throughout the national forest that support ranching interests, residences, and second homes.

Reducing fire hazards to adjacent lands and communities is a key contribution of the Sequoia National Forest to local communities. Wildfires are actively suppressed on national forests when needed to protect key resources and to prevent intrusion of dangerous fires into communities. Tools used to reduce hazardous fuels and maintain fuel conditions that support fires that are characteristic of complex ecosystems include wildfires managed to meet resource objectives, prescribed burning, and mechanical treatments.

Watersheds in the Sequoia drain into the Tulare Buena Vista Lakes Hydrologic Province and contribute to municipal water supplies, agricultural uses, recreation, warm and cold freshwater habitat, groundwater recharge, and freshwater replacement. Most of the runoff from the northern

Sequoia National Forest is carried by the Kings River to Pine Flat Reservoir. In the southern section of the Sequoia, the Kaweah River flows into Lake Kaweah, the Tule River flows into Lake Success, and the Kern River flows into Isabella Lake and then down into the southern end of the Central Valley. Three reservoirs on or adjacent to the Sequoia National Forest have an historic average of approximately 1,360 thousand acre feet of water and ultimately supply water to the populations and agricultural industries of the southern San Joaquin Valley. Six hydroelectric projects are located on the Forest, four on the Kern River, and two on the Tule River. The drainage into the Tule River is primarily from the Giant Sequoia National Monument. These contributions of the Sequoia National Forest are critical in supporting the economic and social sustainability of jobs, rural culture, and quality of life in the San Joaquin Valley. People living outside of the valley benefit from continued agricultural production in the area, one of the most diverse and fertile agricultural areas in the world.

The Sequoia National Forest is also a source for timber with approximately 124,000 acres of productive forest land available and a rolling average timber volume sold of 4,150 thousand board feet between 2016 and 2020. This timber production helps to support a lumber mill in the small community of Terra Bella. This contribution is important socially and economically as the mill in Terra Bella is one of the only remaining mills in California south of Yosemite National Park. Another small lumber mill is currently being constructed near Auberry, but it is unclear when it will be fully operational.

Livestock has grazed the rangelands of the Sequoia National Forest since the late 1800s. Grazing contributes to the economic and social well-being of people by providing economic diversity and by promoting stability for families that depend upon range resources for their livelihood.

The benefits from all Forest contributions provide tremendous ecological, social, and economic value. Some of these benefits are more easily appreciated than others. For example, Sequoia recreation, cultural opportunities, and a clean water supply are enjoyed directly by people and communities as a whole. Other vital ecosystem services provide benefits like biodiversity that are less apparent in our daily lives but are important because they support and regulate the ecosystems and social environments in which we live. The term “value” is used here to represent something more inclusive than a monetary value and captures the idea that all contributions of the Sequoia National Forest, even when they are not directly related to dollars that are spent or received, still contribute to improving the quality of our lives.

## **Purpose of the Forest Plan**

Every national forest the Forest Service manages is required to have a land management plan (forest plan) that is consistent with the National Forest Management Act of 1976 (16 U.S.C. 1604) and other laws. The National Forest Management Act directs that these plans be amended as necessary and revised within 15 years. Forest plans are one of three levels of planning and decision-making that guide how we manage National Forest System lands.

The first and broadest level of planning occurs at the national level through the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) Forest Service Strategic Plan, a 5-year plan that allows public transparency of the agency’s goals, objectives, and accomplishments. The second level of planning occurs at the level of National Forest System administrative units through forest plans. The third level of planning includes development of on-the-ground projects and activities, which are designed to achieve the desired conditions and objectives of the forest plan. Projects and activities must be consistent with the forest plan.

Forest plans are intended to be strategic, meaning they identify long-term or overall desired conditions and provide general direction for achieving those desired conditions. Forest plans focus on outcomes and are flexible to allow management to adapt to local conditions. Generally, forest plans are not tactical and do not specify methods that must always be used and do not require resources to be allocated. Forest plans emphasize strategic decisions: “why” and “what,” and to a lesser extent, “when” and “where.” The “how” decision is generally made at the tactical or project planning level and includes a set of site-specific details of time, place, and circumstances of a particular project proposal.

Forest plans themselves do not compel any action, authorize projects or activities, or guarantee specific results. A project might be needed because of a discrepancy between current conditions and desired conditions. Projects may be proposed in response to demands by the public or to respond to forest plan objectives. When a project is proposed, it is first checked against the suitability of areas. If the project is an appropriate use, then relevant design criteria, standards and guidelines are used. The proposed action for the project is then analyzed using appropriate National Environmental Policy Act procedures. If the project is not consistent with the forest plan, the project may be redesigned or rejected, or a forest plan amendment may be considered. After the project is completed, it is evaluated against forest plan desired conditions and objectives.

A forest plan guides and constrains Forest Service personnel, not the public. Any constraint on the public can only be imposed by law and regulation, or through an order issued by a Forest Service responsible official.<sup>2</sup> In addition to forest plans, management of National Forest System lands is guided and constrained by laws and regulations, and policies, practices, and procedures that are in the Forest Service Directive System. These are generally not repeated in forest plans.

## Adaptive Planning

Forest planning is a continuous process that includes a framework of assessment, plan development, amendment, revision, and monitoring. The intent of this forest planning framework is to create an integrated approach to the management of resources and uses, incorporate the landscape-scale context for management, allow the Forest Service to adapt to changing conditions and improve management based on monitoring and new information.

An adaptive forest plan recognizes there is always uncertainty about the future of natural systems and the timing and type of disturbances. Social conditions and human values regarding the management of national forests are also likely to change. Because the setting for managing a national forest changes over time, the forest plan incorporates an effective monitoring program, capable of detecting change, with an adaptive flexibility to respond to those changes. The forest plan monitoring program asks key management questions and identifies measurable indicators that can provide answers about change. When conditions change beyond what was anticipated in the forest plan, a responsive process using narrow amendments can be used to adjust plans between revisions.

The planning framework creates a structure within which land managers and partners work together to understand what is happening on the land. It is intended to establish a flexible forest plan that allows the national forest staff to adapt management to changing conditions and improve management based on new information and monitoring.

---

<sup>2</sup> See 36 CFR part 261, Subpart B - Prohibitions in Areas Designated by Order.



## Plan Structure

In chapter 1, we have introduced the Sequoia National Forest plan area, distinctive roles and contributions, and described the purpose and structure of a forest plan.

Chapters 2 and 3 provide plan components that establish the framework for integrated resource management and for guiding project and activity decision making. Plan components that apply forestwide or to lands of specific character are in chapter 2. Plan components that apply to specific mapped parcels of land are in chapter 3. Plan components include desired conditions, objectives, goals, suitability of lands, standards, and guidelines. See the next section for definitions of plan components and further details on where plan components apply.

Chapter 4 describes the plan monitoring program that forms the basis for continuous improvement and provides information for adaptive management of the plan area. The purpose of monitoring in an adaptive management framework is to facilitate learning to support decisions on necessary changes to the plan. The plan monitoring program consists of a set of monitoring questions and associated indicators to evaluate whether plan components are effective and appropriate and whether management is effective in maintaining or achieving progress toward desired conditions and objectives for the plan area.

The appendix section includes maps (appendix A), proposed and possible actions (appendix B), a strategy for a renewed partnership focus for the Sequoia National Forest (appendix C), timber suitability (appendix D), an aquatic and riparian conservation strategy (appendix E), and species of conservation concern (appendix F).

## Plan Components

A plan is not an assemblage of program plans with a suite of unique plan components for every resource area. While the entire set of plan components must fulfill all the requirements of 36 CFR 219.8–219.11, there is no need for a one-to-one correlation of one plan component to each requirement listed in those sections. Likewise, not all uses must be provided for on all lands. What is essential is that the combined plan components, as a whole, meet the requirements for ecological integrity, diversity of plant and animal communities, multiple-use management, ecologically sustainable production of goods and services, and they contribute to economic and social sustainability. All these requirements go hand in hand. An integrated plan means that all plan components work together toward achieving or maintaining desired conditions and are internally consistent.

This plan includes six types of plan components that guide future project and activity decision making. Five types of plan components are required: desired conditions, objectives, suitability of lands, standards, and guidelines. Goals are included as an optional plan component. These six types of plan components, along with other plan content, are organized in chapters 2, 3, and 4 as described above. The six components are described as follows:

A **desired condition** describes specific social, economic, and/or ecological characteristics of the plan area, or a portion of the plan area, toward which management of the land and resources should be directed. A desired condition description is specific enough to allow progress toward achievement to be determined but does not include a completion date.

An **objective** is a concise, measurable, and time-specific statement of a desired rate of progress toward a desired condition or conditions. Objectives are based on reasonably

foreseeable budgets. It is important to recognize that we developed the objectives in this plan considering historic and expected budget allocations as well as professional experience with implementing various resource programs and activities. It is possible that the Sequoia National Forest could either exceed or not meet an objective based upon several factors, including changes in budget and staffing, planning efficiencies, partnership opportunities, and resource conditions across the plan area (for example, as a result of wildfire or drought).

A **goal** is a broad statement of intent, other than desired conditions, usually related to process or interaction with the public. Goals are expressed in broad, general terms with no completion dates. Goals may be used to describe overall desired conditions of the plan area that are also dependent on conditions beyond the plan area or Forest Service authority. Goals may be used in lieu of objectives if the outcome is the result of a partnership between the Forest Service and other landowners within the broader landscape, or if the outcome is uncertain, because it could be beyond the fiscal capability of the unit. A goal is an optional plan component.

The **suitability of lands** is determined for specific lands within the plan area. The lands are identified as suitable or not suitable for various uses or activities based on desired conditions applicable to those lands. The suitability of lands is not identified for every use or activity. If certain lands are identified as not suitable for a use, then that use or activity may not be authorized. Appendix D identifies lands that are not suitable for timber production.

A **standard** is a mandatory constraint on project and activity decision-making, established to help achieve or maintain the desired condition or conditions, to avoid or mitigate undesirable effects, or to meet applicable legal requirements.

A **guideline** is a constraint on project and activity decision making that allows for departure from its terms, so long as the purpose of the guideline is met. Guidelines are established to help achieve or maintain the desired condition or conditions, to avoid or mitigate undesirable effects, or to meet applicable legal requirements.

Plan components apply forestwide, to lands of specific character, or to specific parcels of land. Plan components for lands of specific character—such as vegetation types or California spotted owl protected activity centers—apply where the characteristics that define these lands exist on the Sequoia, which can naturally change over time. Plan components that apply to specific mapped parcels of land include management areas and designated areas. The boundaries of management areas and designated areas are static, unless changed through statutory or administrative procedures. A management area is an area established through the planning process where the same set of plan components apply to convey a certain management emphasis (such as the wildlife habitat management area). A management area may or may not be spatially contiguous across the Forest. A designated area is an area or feature established by statute (such as a wild and scenic river) or administrative processes (such as a research natural area) and is managed to maintain the area's unique special character or purpose.

The forest plan contains a specific coding system to identify plan components and where they apply using the following pattern: AAA-BBB-CCC. The series of letters before the first dash references a resource area (for example, WTR for watershed conditions), management area (MA), or designated area (DA). The second series of letters references whether the plan components apply forestwide (FW), to land of specific character (such as RFIR for the red fir

vegetation type), or to a type of management or designated area (such as DRA for the destination recreation area). The third series of letters references the type of plan component (such as DC for desired conditions). So, the unique coding for air resources (AIR) desired conditions (DC) that apply forestwide (FW) begins with AIR-FW-DC, followed by the specific plan component number; and the coding for wilderness (WILD) guidelines (GDL) that apply to all designated areas (DA) of this type begins with DA-WILD-GDL.

Every project and activity authorized after plan approval must be consistent with the six types of plan components found in this plan (36 CFR 219.15(d)). Where there is overlap among the different types of areas where plan components apply (for example, management area versus forestwide), apply all applicable plan components where compatible; otherwise, the more stringent or restrictive direction applies. Exceptions to plan components occur where there are concerns for human health and safety in emergency situations.

A plan amendment is required to add, modify, or remove any plan components, or to change how or where plan components apply, including management areas (36 CFR 219.13(a)).

## Other Plan Content

In addition to plan components, the 2012 Planning Rule requires that a plan have other required content (36 CFR 219.7(f)(1)), including priority watersheds for maintenance or restoration, the plan area's distinctive roles and contributions within the broader landscape, a plan monitoring program, and proposed and possible actions that may occur in the plan area.

Priority watersheds are identified and described in the Watershed Condition section of chapter 2. Distinctive roles and contributions described above are intended to help provide focus or context to the plan, a foundation for developing plan components, and an all-lands perspective. The plan monitoring program is found in chapter 4 where it is explained in detail.

Proposed and possible actions are found in appendix B. This appendix lists the types of possible projects for the next 3 to 5 years to move toward desired conditions and objectives. This list does not commit the Sequoia National Forest to perform or permit these actions, which are provided as possible actions that would likely be consistent with plan components, particularly desired conditions and objectives. Proposed and possible actions also include the planned timber sale program, timber harvesting levels, and proportion of probable methods of forest vegetation management practices expected to be used. Timber and vegetation management information is found in appendix D rather than appendix B.

A forest plan may also include optional content (36 CFR 219.7(f)(2)). Optional content in this plan includes explanatory narrative and background information throughout the plan, a strategy for a renewed partnership focus for the Sequoia National Forest (appendix C), and potential management approaches.

Potential management approaches are used to describe the principal strategies and program priorities the responsible official intends to use to carry out projects and activities developed under the plan. Potential management approaches can convey a sense of priority and focus among objectives and the likely management emphasis. They should relate to desired conditions and may indicate the future course or direction of change, recognizing budget trends, program demands and accomplishments. Potential management approaches may discuss processes such as analysis, assessment, inventory, project planning, or monitoring. Since potential management approaches are not plan components, they are listed at the end of each relevant resource,

management area, or designated area section of the forest plan but they are not identified by a coding system.

Changes to “other plan content,” including both required and optional content, may be made through an administrative change to the plan (36 CFR 219.13(c)). A substantive change to the monitoring program made outside of a plan revision or amendment process may only be made after the public is notified of the intended change and consideration of public comment. All other administrative changes to other plan content may be made following public notice.

## Chapter 2. Forestwide Desired Conditions and Management Direction

---

### Introduction

This chapter contains direction that applies forestwide (i.e., across all lands of the Sequoia National Forest land management plan area), unless more stringent or restrictive direction is found following forestwide direction. This direction does not apply to the Giant Sequoia National Monument, which is managed under the 2012 Monument Management Plan.

Forestwide direction includes desired conditions, objectives, goals, standards, guidelines, and suitability of lands. Other Forest Service direction, laws, regulations, policies, Executive orders, and Forest Service directives (manual and handbook) are generally not contained in the forest plan components. Potential management approaches are also listed as appropriate in this chapter, but since potential management approaches are not plan components, they are not identified by a coding system.

This chapter is organized by resource, under two broad major categories:

- Ecological Sustainability and Diversity of Plant and Animal Communities
- Social and Economic Sustainability and Multiple Uses

The Sequoia National Forest staff intends to move resources and uses toward these forestwide desired conditions over the next 10 to 15 years, although they may not all be achieved for many decades. Some desired conditions may be very difficult to achieve, but it is important to strive to achieve them over time.

### Ecological Sustainability and Diversity of Plant and Animal Communities

The following topics are grouped under this heading:

- Air Quality
- Watersheds
- Terrestrial Ecosystems and Vegetation
- Animal and Plant Species
- Invasive Species
- Fire

#### Air Quality

Desired conditions and other plan components for air quality apply forestwide or to Class I airsheds, which have the highest standard of air quality. Class I airshed status applies to designated wilderness areas larger than 5,000 acres and in existence in 1977. On the Sequoia National Forest, the Domeland Wilderness is a Class I airshed.

### **Desired Conditions (AIR-FW-DC)**

- 01 The air quality value of visibility in Class I airsheds is maintained or improved to the natural background condition specified in the California Regional Haze State Implementation Plan.
- 02 Wildland fuel loadings resemble natural range of variation conditions, and the potential for harmful effects on air quality from high-intensity wildfires is low.

### **Goals (AIR-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Continue the visibility monitoring program and determine sensitive indicators for each air-quality-related value in Class I areas of the Sequoia. Protect air-quality-related values by reviewing all projects and management activities that may affect those values. Review external prevention of significant deterioration source applications and make recommendations to permitting authorities.
- 02 Participate in and support interagency collaborative smoke management, including real-time smoke monitoring and public messaging to maximize efficiency and relevance of monitoring results.
- 03 Provide early notification to the public about potential smoke from fire activities to promote awareness and protect human health and safety.
- 04 Support post-fire analysis of smoke impacts as they relate to emissions when they can inform refinement of smoke dispersion and transport modeling. Include analytical tradeoff and impact information, as appropriate, in public messaging to show smoke tradeoffs from large landscape-scale fuels treatment projects.
- 05 Work with State agencies and the public in State-level planning efforts that address air quality concerns.
- 06 Coordinate management activities that potentially impact the air quality of adjacent Class I areas with the responsible agency.

### **Guidelines (AIR-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Project design for prescribed burns, and strategies for wildfires, should incorporate emission reduction techniques to reduce negative impacts to air quality, subject to economic constraints, technical feasibility, safety criteria and land management objectives.
- 02 Decision documents for wildfires and prescribed burns should identify smoke sensitive areas and include management objectives and courses of action to mitigate impacts to those areas.

### **Potential Management Approach**

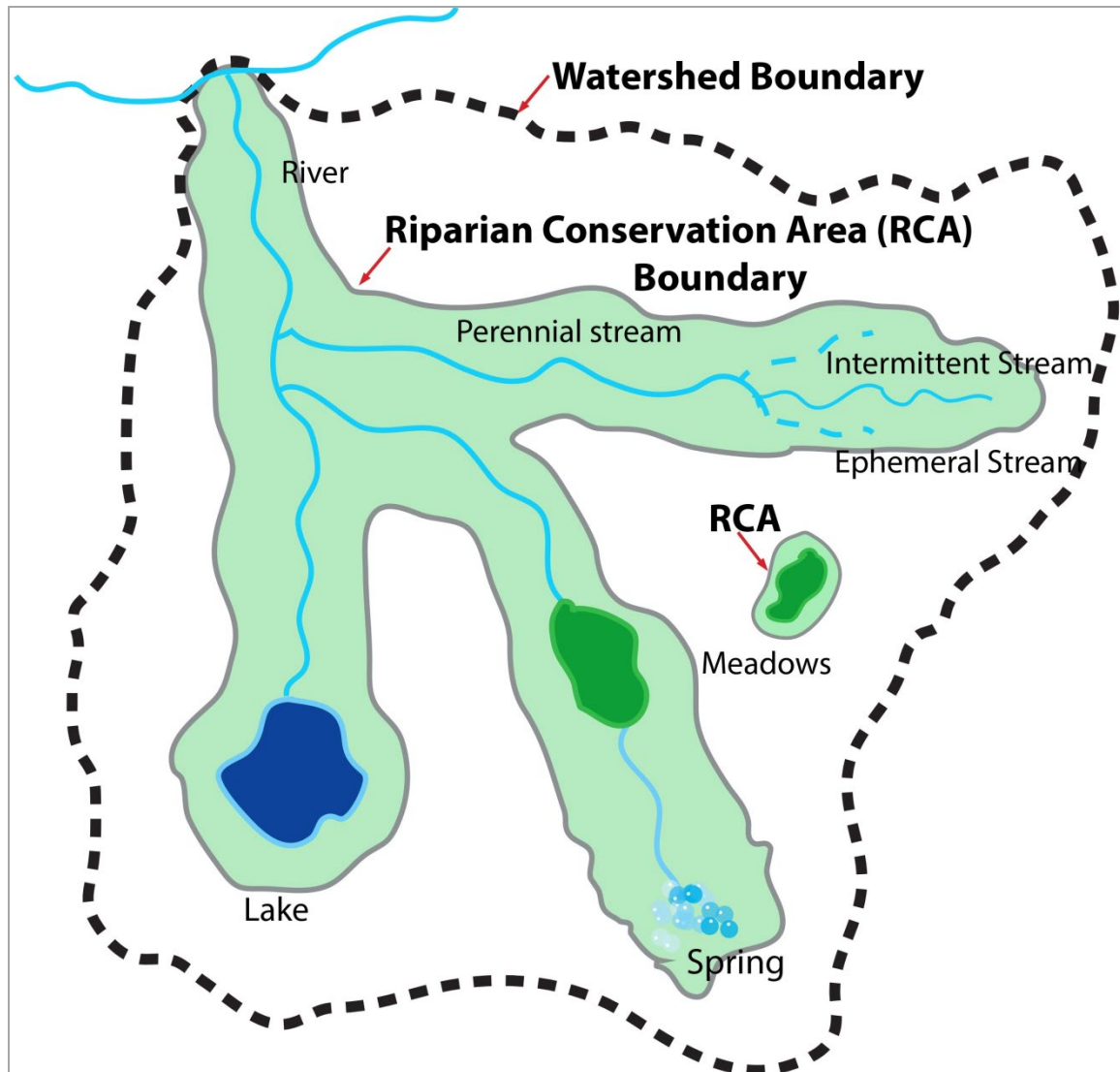
- Consider including smoke tradeoff evaluation in project-level planning comparing local (such as prescribed fire) and regional (such as wildfire) scales. Use existing scientific information on large wildfire emissions. Consider downwind communities at the local and regional scale.

### **Watersheds**

Plan components found in this section of the plan cover the broad area of soils and water throughout the Sequoia National Forest at the watershed scale. Watersheds include riparian conservation areas and the riparian and aquatic environments contained within them, such as



ivers, streams, meadows, springs, and seeps. Plan components specific to these areas are also found here. Figure 2 shows the relationship among watersheds, riparian conservation areas, and riparian and aquatic environments.



**Figure 2. A schematic of the relationship of watersheds, riparian conservation areas, and riparian and aquatic environments**

Conservation watersheds are a specific subset of watersheds selected by national forest managers to provide for continued high-quality water sources and the long-term persistence of at-risk species. The Management Areas section in chapter 3 presents plan components specific to conservation watersheds.

The plan components found in this section and in the Conservation Watersheds section in chapter 3, along with the monitoring indicators in chapter 4, form the foundation of the aquatic and riparian conservation strategy (see appendix E). These plan components and monitoring indicators have been integrated to provide for the maintenance and restoration of aquatic ecological integrity across the Sequoia National Forest.

The Forest Service National Watershed Condition Framework is used to identify priority watersheds for restoration. Priority watersheds are where plan objectives for restoration would concentrate on maintaining or improving watershed condition. Under the framework, the Sequoia National Forest Supervisor is responsible for identifying priority watersheds using an interdisciplinary team process.

The list of priority watersheds can be changed administratively without a forest plan amendment. Watershed Condition Framework priority watersheds are mapped online at the USDA Forest Service interactive map at [https://www.fs.usda.gov/biology/watershed/condition\\_framework.html](https://www.fs.usda.gov/biology/watershed/condition_framework.html).

## Forestwide Components for Watershed Conditions

### Desired Conditions (WTR-FW-DC)

- 01 Adequate quantity and timing of water flows support beneficial uses and ecological structure and functions, including aquatic species diversity and riparian vegetation. Watersheds are resilient to changes in air temperatures, snowpack, timing of runoff, and other effects of climate change.
- 02 Water quality supports State-designated beneficial uses of water. Water quality is sustained at a level that retains the biological, physical, and chemical integrity of aquatic systems and benefits the survival, growth, reproduction, and migration of native aquatic and riparian species.
- 03 Watersheds are fully functioning or trending toward fully functioning and resilient; recover from natural and human disturbances at a rate appropriate with the capability of the site; and have a high degree of hydrologic connectivity laterally across the floodplain and valley bottom and vertically between surface and subsurface flows. Physical (geomorphic, hydrologic) connectivity and associated natural processes (such as runoff, flooding, instream flow regimes, erosion, and sedimentation) are maintained and restored. Watersheds provide important ecosystem services such as high-quality water, recharge of streams and shallow groundwater, and maintenance of riparian communities. Watersheds sustain long-term soil productivity.
- 04 Soil and vegetation functions in upland and riparian areas are sustained and resilient. Healthy soils provide the base for resilient landscapes and nutritive forage for browsing and grazing animals, and support timber production. Healthy upland and riparian areas support healthy fish and wildlife populations, enhance recreation opportunities, and maintain water quality.

### Objective (WTR-FW-OBJ)

- 01 Maintain or restore watershed conditions in at least three HUC-12 watersheds within 15 years of plan approval based on the watershed condition framework. At least one of these HUC-12 watersheds must be a priority watershed where restoration activities result in a shift to a higher condition class. At least two HUC-12 watersheds must be located within conservation watersheds.

### Goals (WTR-FW-GOAL)

- 01 Coordinate with Tribes; local, State, and Federal agencies; adjacent landowners; and other interested parties on watershed restoration across ownership boundaries.

- 02 Take a landscape- or watershed-scale approach to restoring aquatic and riparian ecosystems so that they are resilient to climate change and other stressors. Use partnerships and integrate restoration activities with recreation, range management, fuels, and vegetation management to efficiently use limited resources.

#### **Standards (WTR-FW-STD)**

- 01 Use applicable best management practices and other soil management practices, as described in agency technical guides and handbooks, to minimize adverse impacts to soils and water resources during the planning and implementation of Forest management activities.
- 02 Restoration projects will not result in long-term degradation of aquatic and riparian conditions, including connectivity, at the watershed or subwatershed scale. Adverse effects from project activities are acceptable when they are short-term, site-scale, and support, or do not diminish, long-term recovery of aquatic and riparian resources.
- 03 For hydroelectric facilities that are exempt from FERC licensing on National Forest System lands, ensure that special use permit language provides adequate instream flow requirements to maintain, restore, or recover favorable ecological conditions for local riparian- and aquatic-dependent species.
- 04 After restoration actions (including soil disturbance or seeding activities), limit subsequent soil-disturbing management activities until project objectives are met.

#### **Guidelines (WTR-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Cooperate with Federal, Tribal, State, and local governments to secure in-stream flows needed to maintain, recover, and restore riparian resources, channel conditions, and aquatic habitat during all basic Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, state and other authorized water use planning, water rights, and relicensing on the Forest. Coordinate relicensing projects with the appropriate State and Federal agencies. Provide written and timely license conditions to the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

#### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Look for opportunities to restore watersheds that need thinning, fuels reduction, meadow restoration, soil condition improvement, water quality improvement and restoration of hydrologic and ecological connectivity.
- Maintain and restore soils with favorable infiltration characteristics and diverse vegetative cover to absorb and filter precipitation and to sustain favorable conditions of stream flows to the extent feasible.

#### **Riparian Conservation Areas**

Riparian conservation area widths are defined by type:

- perennial streams, 300 feet on each side of the stream, measured from the bank full edge of the stream;
- seasonally flowing streams (includes intermittent and ephemeral streams), 150 feet on each side of the stream, measured from the bank full edge of the stream;
- streams in inner gorge (defined by stream adjacent slopes greater than 70 percent gradient), top of inner gorge;

- special aquatic features (such as lakes, wet meadows, bogs, fens, wetlands, vernal pools, and springs) or perennial streams with riparian conditions extending more than 150 feet from edge of streambank, or seasonally flowing streams with riparian conditions extending more than 50 feet from edge of streambank, 300 feet from edge of feature or riparian vegetation, whichever width is greater; and
- other hydrological or topographic depressions without a defined channel, riparian conservation area width and protection measures determined through project-level analysis.

Riparian conservation area widths may be adjusted at the project level if interdisciplinary analysis demonstrates a need for different widths to meet or improve riparian conservation area desired conditions. Locations of riparian conservation areas for the Sequoia National Forest are shown in figure 11 (appendix A).

Riparian conservation area plan components apply to the entire riparian conservation area, as well as the specific riparian and aquatic environments contained within them, such as rivers, streams, meadows, springs, and seeps. Riparian and aquatic environments also have additional direction specific to each environment. The relationship among watersheds, riparian conservation areas, and riparian and aquatic environments is displayed in figure 2.

#### **All Riparian Conservation Areas**

##### **Desired Conditions (WTR-RCA-DC)**

- 01 The connections of floodplains, channels, and water tables distribute flood flows and sustain diverse habitats.
- 02 Riparian conservation areas have ecological conditions that contribute to the recovery of threatened and endangered species and support persistence of species of conservation concern as well as native aquatic and riparian-dependent plant and animal species.
- 03 The distribution and health of biotic communities in special aquatic habitats perpetuate their unique functions and biological diversity.
- 04 Native fish, amphibians, and other native aquatic species are present within their historic distribution, where supported by associated habitat. Habitat conditions support self-sustaining populations. Streams and rivers provide a variety of habitats for aquatic species, including deep pools and overhanging banks, structure provided by large wood, off-channel areas, and cover within their natural range of variation. Woody and herbaceous overstory and understory regulate stream temperatures. Aquatic and upland components are linked, providing access to food, water, cover, nesting areas, and protected pathways for aquatic, riparian, and upland species.
- 05 Riparian areas provide a range of substrates to sustain habitat for a variety of aquatic and terrestrial fauna within their natural capacity of the system.
- 06 Soil structure and function are sustained to infiltrate and disperse water properly, withstand erosive forces, sustain favorable conditions of stream flow, and cycle nutrients. Associated water tables support riparian vegetation and restrict nonriparian vegetation.
- 07 Key riparian processes and conditions (including slope stability and associated vegetation root strength, wood delivery to streams and floodplains, input of leaf and organic matter to

aquatic and terrestrial systems, solar shading, microclimate, and water quality) operate consistently with local disturbance regimes.

- 08 The condition of vegetation in riparian conservation areas, including riparian species composition, stand density, and fuel loading, is consistent with healthy riparian systems and reduces risks from uncharacteristic wildfire in the watershed.
- 09 Riparian areas in frequent fire landscapes (such as montane areas) have low- to moderate-severity fire restored as an ecological process. Fire effects occur in a mosaic and support restoration of ecological integrity, including ecosystem function, composition, structure, and resilience.
- 10 There are no new introductions of invasive species.
- 11 Along all State-designated Wild and Heritage Trout waters, streamside vegetation provides stream shading and fish cover, based on capability of the site.
- 12 Spatial and temporal connectivity for riparian- and aquatic-dependent species is maintained within and between watersheds. Connectivity provides physically, chemically, and biologically unobstructed movement for species survival, migration, and reproduction.
- 13 Native riparian vegetation is diverse, structurally complex, and provides food and cover to sustain fish and wildlife populations.
- 14 Streambank stability is within 90 percent of reach potential.

**Objective (WTR-RCA-OBJ)**

- 01 Restore the structure and composition of at least 400 acres in riparian areas within 15 years following plan approval, emphasizing riparian areas that face the most risk from large-scale high-intensity fire, past fire exclusion, or accelerated flooding events associated with climate change.

**Goals (WTR-RCA-GOAL)**

- 01 Coordinate and collaborate with State fish and wildlife agencies to address native aquatic species issues, including evaluating management and monitoring needs to address aquatic species requirements.
- 02 Where aquatic invasive species are adversely affecting the persistence of aquatic native species, work with the appropriate State and Federal wildlife agencies to reduce impacts of aquatic invasive species to native populations.
- 03 Restoration practices that are compatible with beaver reestablishment are accomplished in coordination with Tribes, local, State, and Federal agencies; adjacent landowners; and other interested parties.

**Suitability (WTR-RCA-SUIT)**

- 01 Riparian conservation areas (perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral streams, and special aquatic features) are not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest is allowed for other multiple use-purposes including safety and restoration toward desired conditions.

**Standards (WTR-RCA-STD)**

- 01 Ensure that management activities do not adversely affect water temperatures necessary for local aquatic- and riparian-dependent species assemblages. Exceptions may be authorized when necessary to comply with law and regulations.
- 02 Limit pesticide applications to cases where project-level analysis indicates pesticide applications are consistent with riparian conservation area desired conditions.
- 03 Prohibit storage of fuels and other toxic materials except at designated administrative sites and sites covered by special use authorization. Prohibit refueling within riparian conservation areas except when there are no other reasonable alternatives.
- 04 Ensure that culverts or other stream crossings do not create barriers to upstream or downstream passage for aquatic-dependent species, except where desired to protect native species.
- 05 All new or replaced permanent stream crossings must accommodate at least the 100-year flood, its bedload, and debris. Estimates for 100-year flood potential will reflect the best available science regarding potential effects of climate change, and species needs.
- 06 Locate water drafting sites to minimize adverse effects to instream flows and depletion of pool habitat.
- 07 Prevent disturbance to streambanks and shorelines of lakes and ponds caused by resource activities (such as livestock, off-highway vehicles, and dispersed recreation) from exceeding 20 percent of the stream reach, or 20 percent of natural lake and pond shorelines. Disturbance includes bank sloughing, chiseling, trampling, and other means of exposing bare soil or cutting plant roots. This standard may not be met within destination recreation areas, and sites authorized under special use permits, but activities will be designed and managed to reduce the percent of impact to the extent feasible.
- 08 Use screening devices for water drafting pumps. (Fire suppression activities are exempt during initial attack.) Use pumps with low entry velocity to minimize removal of aquatic species from aquatic habitats, including juvenile fish, amphibian egg masses, and tadpoles.
- 09 Mitigate or prohibit ground-disturbing activities that adversely affect hydrologic processes that maintain water flow, water quality, or water temperature critical to sustaining fen ecosystems and the plant species that depend on these ecosystems.
- 10 Assess the hydrologic function of riparian areas, meadows, fens, and other special aquatic features during rangeland management analysis. Ensure that characteristics of special features are, at a minimum, at proper functioning condition or functioning at-risk and trending toward proper functioning condition, as defined in appropriate technical reports. If systems are functioning at-risk, ensure that grazing practices are not retarding rates of natural recovery and assess appropriate actions to move toward proper functioning condition.
- 11 Limit construction of new skid trails or temporary roads for access into riparian conservation areas unless it is the only feasible option to conduct restoration activities for improvement of riparian conservation areas.
- 12 Designate mechanical equipment exclusion zones within riparian conservation areas when designing projects. The default exclusion zone width is within 150 feet of perennial streams,



meadows springs, and seeps; and 75 feet for intermittent streams. The width where mechanical equipment is limited can be adjusted in consideration of geomorphology, slope, soil conditions, and when needed to allow for ecological restoration activities. Temporary crossings can be authorized provided that the risk of short-term sedimentation and erosion are minimized through implementation of best management practices.

**Guidelines (WTR-RCA-GDL)**

- 01 See also MA-CW-STD-01. Hydrologic connectivity of streams, meadows, wetlands, and other special aquatic features should be maintained and restored. Roads and trails that intercept, divert, or disrupt natural surface and subsurface water flow paths should have corrective actions implemented where possible to restore connectivity.
- 02 Water quality or habitat for aquatic and riparian-dependent species should be maintained or restored. Roads, trails, off-highway vehicle trails, staging areas, developed recreation sites, dispersed campgrounds, special use permits, grazing permits, and day use sites that have been identified as contributing to degradation of water quality or habitat for aquatic and riparian-dependent species should have corrective actions implemented where possible.
- 03 When vegetation is treated in near-river or stream areas, coarse wood should be considered as an addition to the streams to enhance habitat, if applicable.
- 04 To reduce soil disturbance in riparian conservation areas, activities should use methods that limit soil disturbance to less than 20 percent of the riparian conservation area (such as low ground pressure equipment, helicopters, over-snow logging, extra ground cover requirements, or other non-ground-disturbing actions) to achieve desired conditions consistent with best management practices and plan direction.
- 05 Post-wildfire management activities should emphasize and enhance native vegetation cover, stabilize channels, reduce erosion, and minimize adverse effects from the existing road network to protect riparian systems.
- 06 To improve water quality or habitat for aquatic and riparian-dependent species, evaluate the impacts of facilities on riparian conservation areas when reissuing permits for livestock. If adverse impacts are found, existing livestock facilities should be relocated outside of meadows and riparian areas or mitigated.
- 07 Wildfire control methods and activities that would impact the riparian conservation area (in particular, dozer-built lines) should not be used unless alternative control methods are not effective, safe, or practical.
- 08 To protect ephemeral streams and adjacent soils from sedimentation and erosion, exclude mechanical equipment within 25 feet on either side of ephemeral stream channels by default. The width where mechanical equipment is limited can be adjusted in consideration of geomorphology, slope, soil conditions, and when needed to allow for ecological restoration activities. Temporary crossings can be authorized provided that the risks of short-term sedimentation and erosion are minimized through implementation of best management practices.
- 09 To protect water quality and spawning habitat, stream-modifying construction activities should be limited to low flow conditions. Exceptions may be authorized when necessary to comply with law and regulations.

### Potential Management Approaches

- Where applicable, ensure that fuel spill and erosion control plans are reviewed, up to date, and determined sufficient to protect soils and aquatic resources.
- As feasible, recommend restoration practices in: (1) areas with compaction exceeding soil quality standards; (2) areas that have lowered water tables; or (3) areas that are actively down cutting or that have historic gullies. Include restoration of aspen or other riparian vegetation where conifer encroachment is identified as a problem, using fire, hand, or mechanical treatments. Identify management practices that may be contributing to the observed degradation.
- Reroute trails away from meadows and springs. On the meadow edge, discourage or appropriately design dispersed recreation sites and user-constructed trails to minimize effects on meadows. Keep hunting blinds out of the wet meadows. Discourage and eliminate where possible winter motorized recreation in riparian conservation areas, from meadows, and within 100 feet of streams.
- Where feasible, complete initial inventories of fens within active grazing allotments prior to completing the allotment environmental analysis. If there are more than 10 fens in an allotment, complete initial inventories of at least 25 percent of all the fens in the allotment, and establish a 5-year schedule to complete inventory of the remaining fens in the allotment.
- Consider restoration practices that are compatible with reestablishment of beavers where suitable habitat exists and when effectively integrated with other natural resource and multiple-use objectives, recognizing important ecological processes that beavers support.

### Meadows

#### Desired Conditions (WTR-RCA-MEAD-DC)

- 01 Meadows are hydrologically functional. Sites of accelerated erosion, such as gullies and head cuts are stabilized, recovering, or within the natural range of variation. Vegetation roots occur throughout the available soil profile. Meadows with perennial and intermittent streams have the following characteristics: (1) stream energy from high flows is dissipated, reducing erosion and improving water quality; (2) streams transport sediment and capture bedload, aiding floodplain development; (3) meadow conditions enhance floodwater retention and groundwater recharge; and (4) root masses stabilize streambanks against cutting action.
- 02 Wetlands and groundwater-dependent ecosystems (including springs, seeps, fens, wet meadows, and associated wetlands or riparian systems) support stable herbaceous and woody vegetation communities that are resilient to drought, climate change, and other stressors. Root masses stabilize stream channels, shorelines, and soil surfaces. The natural hydrologic, hydraulic, and geomorphic processes in these ecosystems sustain their unique functions and biological diversity.
- 03 Meadows are resilient and recover rapidly from natural and human disturbances. They exhibit a high degree of hydrologic connectivity laterally across the floodplain and vertically between surface and subsurface flows. They provide important ecosystem services such as high-quality water, recharge of streams and aquifers, and moderation of climate variability and change.

- 04 Soils in wet and headwater meadows are influenced by a shallow water table and function to filter water. These soils also store and release water over an extended period of time, which helps to maintain streamflow during dry summer months.
- 05 Meadows have substantive ground cover and a rich and diverse species composition, especially of grasses and forbs. Meadows have high plant functional diversity with multiple successional functional types represented. Perennial streams in meadows contain a diversity of age classes of shrubs along the streambank, where the potential exists for these plants.
- 06 A complexity of meadow habitat types and successional patterns support native plant and animal communities. Meadow species composition is predominantly native, where graminoid (grass-like) species are well represented and vigorous, and regeneration occurs naturally. Healthy stands of willow, alder, and aspen are present within and adjacent to meadows with suitable physical conditions for these species. Natural disturbances and management activities are sufficient to maintain desired vegetation structure, species diversity, and nutrient cycling.
- 07 Meadows in montane and upper montane areas have low- to moderate-severity fire restored as an ecological process, especially on meadow edges, limiting conifer encroachment, and enhancing native understory plant composition and cover.
- 08 Fen condition is within the natural range of variation. Fens are resilient with continual peat accumulation and carbon sequestration. The hydrologic regime, and vegetation, soil, and water characteristics sustain the fen's ability to support unique physical and biological attributes.

**Objective (WTR-RCA-MEAD-OBJ)**

- 01 Enhance or improve conditions on at least five meadows of any size, within 15 years following plan approval.

**Rivers and Streams**

**Desired Conditions (WTR-RCA-RIV-DC)**

- 01 Stream ecosystems, riparian corridors, and associated stream courses sustain ecosystem structure; are resilient to natural disturbances (such as flooding) and climate change; promote the natural movement of water, sediment, and woody debris; and provide habitat for native aquatic species or desirable nonnative species.
- 02 Stream ecosystems, including ephemeral watercourses, exhibit full connectivity where feasible to maintain aquatic species diversity, except where barriers are maintained in good condition to protect native aquatic species. Ephemeral watercourses provide for dispersal, access to new habitats, perpetuation of genetic diversity, and nesting and foraging habitat for riparian and aquatic species.
- 03 Instream flows are sufficient to sustain desired conditions of riparian, aquatic, wetland, and meadow habitats and retain patterns of sediment, nutrients, and wood routing as close as possible to those with which aquatic and riparian biota evolved. The physical structure and condition of streambanks and shorelines minimize erosion and sustain desired habitat diversity.
- 04 Streams and rivers maintain seasonal water flow over time, including periodic flooding, which promotes natural movement of water, sediment, nutrients, and woody debris. Flooding

creates a mix of stream substrates for fish habitat, including clean gravels for fish spawning, large wood structures, and sites for riparian vegetation to germinate and establish.

- 05 Stream channel conditions exhibit a sediment regime under which aquatic and riparian ecosystems evolved. Elements of the sediment regime include the timing, volume, rate, and character of sediment input, storage, and transport. The sediment regime should be similar to the natural distribution of reference conditions.
- 06 Within rivers and streams, the level of coarse large woody debris is within the natural range of variation.

**Objectives (WTR-RCA-RIV-OBJ)**

- 01 Enhance or restore the structure, composition, or function of habitat for fisheries and other aquatic species along at least 5 stream miles over a 15-year period.
- 02 Eliminate or mitigate at least one priority barrier to aquatic organism passage or ecological connectivity within 15 years following plan approval.

**Lakes, Pools, Ponds**

**Desired Condition (WTR-RCA-LPP-DC)**

- 01 Lakes and ponds retain necessary attributes, such as adequate vegetation and large woody debris to function properly and support native biotic communities. Attributes include floodwater retention and groundwater recharge, stabilized islands and shoreline features, and diverse characteristics to provide for amphibian production, waterfowl breeding, and biodiversity.

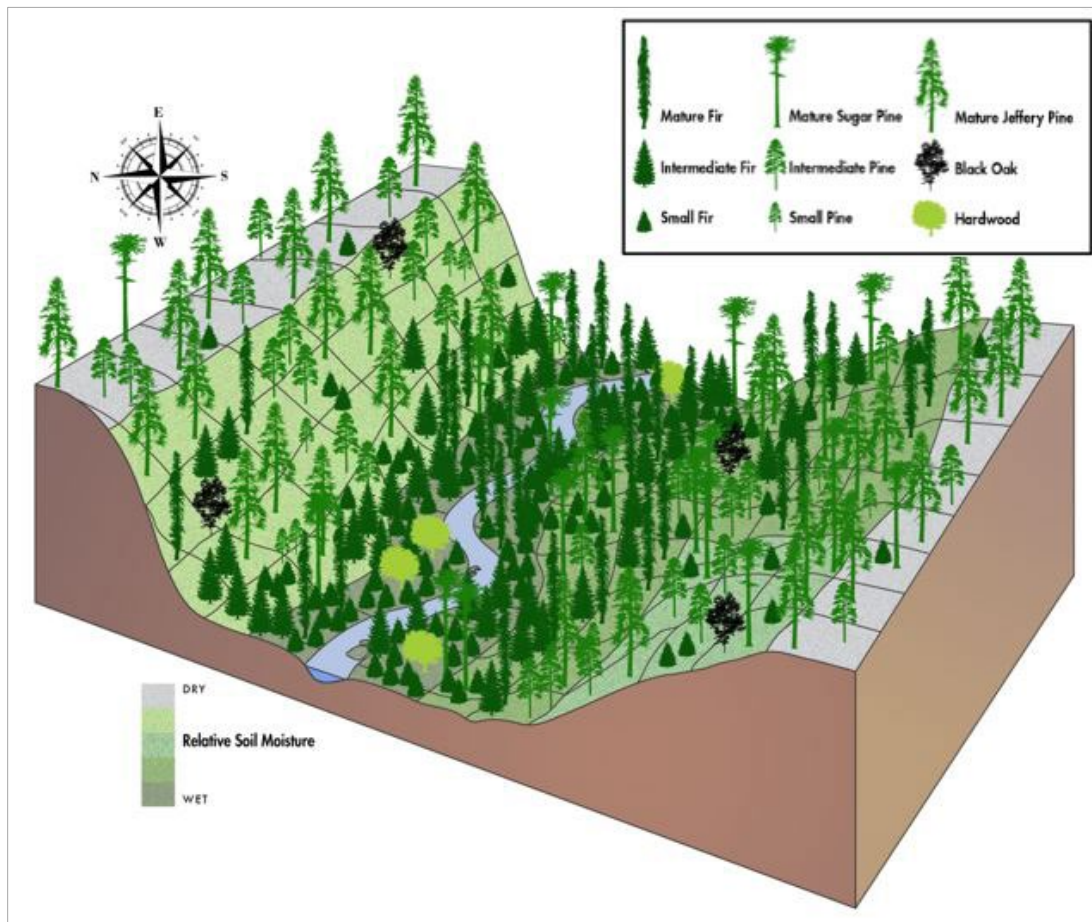
**Springs and Seeps**

**Desired Conditions (WTR-RCA-SPR-DC)**

- 01 Springs provide sufficient water to maintain healthy habitats for native riparian and aquatic species.
- 02 Springs are resilient to natural disturbances, groundwater diversions, and changing climate conditions. Springs function across the landscape within their type and water availability.
- 03 Springs and associated streams and wetlands have the necessary soil, water, and vegetation attributes to be healthy and functioning at or near potential. Water flow is similar to historic levels and persists over time, within constraints of climate change.

## Terrestrial Ecosystems

Terrestrial (land-based) ecosystems are diverse across the Sequoia National Forest, changing with elevation and topographic features like slope and aspect as shown in figure 3.



**Figure 3. Variation in dominant trees and tree density<sup>3</sup>**

This diagram illustrates how tree size and tree density vary across the topography of a watershed. The cross-section of a watershed is shown with a river or stream in the middle and slopes rising to a ridgetop on either side. Individual trees are shown with lighter colors depicting sun-dependent pine trees and darker green colors depicting shade-tolerant fir trees. The slope on the left is south facing and thus warmer and drier, with widely spaced pine trees and scattered fir trees. In the valley bottom, fir and hardwood trees dominate in a clumpy distribution. The north-facing slope is more shaded and thus often cooler and moister, with a moderate density of trees that become more widely spaced as they approach the warmer and drier ridgetop.

Terrestrial ecosystems are described in the following paragraphs in terms of ecological zones named the foothill zone, montane zone, upper montane zone, and the subalpine and alpine zones. The ecological zones were mapped broadly using elevation breaks but vary on the ground in location with respect to aspect and other topographic or soil factors. Each zone has different

<sup>3</sup> North, M., P.A. Stine, K.L. O'Hara, W.J. Zielinski, and S.L. Stephens. 2009. An ecosystems management strategy for Sierra mixed-conifer forests, with addendum. General technical report PSW-GTR-220. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station, Albany, California, USA.

dominant plants, seasonal weather, and wildlife habitat. Because of these distinctions, each ecological zone has desired conditions described for the dominant vegetation types or subtypes. For the more widespread forest types in the mixed conifer zone, there are separate desired conditions for the drier versus wetter parts of the landscape. The nature of each vegetation type may vary by location, but the desired conditions are designed to be broad enough to allow individual, site-specific adjustments at the project level to adjust for these differences.

**Foothill Zone** – At the lowest elevations, rising above the valley floor is the foothill zone. The foothill zone is a mosaic of blue oak woodland savannahs and chaparral-live oak plant communities. At the upper reaches of the foothill zone, ponderosa pine and black oak forests intermingle with the blue oak and chaparral communities.

**Montane Zone** – The foothill zone reaches up into the coniferous forest-dominated montane zone, which is dominated by ponderosa pine and mixed conifer forests on the western slopes of the Sierra Nevada. White fir, sugar pine, and incense cedar are intermixed throughout the montane zone. Ponderosa pine is dominant at the lower elevations and drier portions of this zone; at the higher reaches of the zone Red fir is present. The dry mixed conifer type occurs on the south and west aspects, ridges and upper slopes and is distinguished by typical dry site understory indicator plants such as buckwheat and iris. It has been altered greatly by fire suppression and past management actions. Formerly dominated by fire and drought resilient ponderosa pine and black oak, there is now a heavy ingrowth of shade-tolerant white fir and incense cedar.

Moist mixed conifer forests are found in the montane zone where soil moisture is higher, such as lower slopes, drainages, north and east aspects or where water tables are close to the surface. Understory plants here include mountain whitethorn, greenleaf manzanita, trailplant, false Solomon's seal, starflower, fairy bells, hazel, or Pacific dogwood. These areas have also been altered greatly by fire suppression and past management actions. Formerly co-dominated by ponderosa and sugar pine, it is now heavily dominated by white fir. Forests are more uniform, where formerly they were highly irregular and patchy.

For clarification of how moist and dry mixed conifer were delineated during development and analysis of the forest plan, see appendix H.

**Upper Montane Zone** – The upper montane zone occurs at higher elevations and receives a high percentage of precipitation that falls as snow. This zone is primarily comprised of red fir forests, open Jeffrey pine woodlands, wet and dry lodgepole pine forests, meadows and riparian areas, and montane chaparral. Red fir is replaced by other upper montane species and some lower montane species such as white fir in the Piute, Scodie, and Breckenridge mountains in the south. These vegetation types occur in a patchy mosaic across the upper montane landscape, depending on changes in elevation, topography, soils, climate, and prior disturbance history. Fire is an especially important ecological process in the upper montane zone, influencing forest structure and composition patterns, such as intermingled patches of trees and open areas. As with lower montane forests, decades of fire exclusion, past timber harvest, and patterns of increasing high-severity fire have resulted in increasing degrees of structural homogenization in upper montane forests at a landscape scale.

**Subalpine and Alpine Zones** – At the highest elevations, the sparsely vegetated subalpine and alpine zones occur. The subalpine zone has stands of high elevation conifers, including limber pine, and lodgepole pine, and foxtail pine. The alpine zone is generally referred to as “above

timberline” but may have stunted trees, often referred to as *krummholz*. It supports a rich understory flora of over 600 species, 200 of which are limited to that zone.

**Desert and Pinyon-Juniper Zones** – In addition to the forested areas on the west side of the Sierra Nevada described above, the Sequoia National Forest has eastern and southeastern areas bordering the Mojave Desert and Great Basin. Here, small portions of the desert and pinyon-juniper ecological zones are found. Massive areas of rock outcrops occur throughout all these vegetation types.

Desired conditions are described at different spatial scales, or extent of area. First, landscape-scale desired conditions apply to areas greater than 10,000 acres. The intent is to provide conditions that cover multiple small or medium-sized vegetation management projects or single very large (greater than 100,000 acres) projects. These are applied over multiple years, on a forestwide basis. Ecological zones are broad and not exact—for monitoring at forestwide and multi-forest scales. Second, mid-scale desired conditions apply to areas in the hundreds to thousands of acres. These desired conditions are applicable to smaller areas, such as a large single patch of vegetation or mosaic of patches in an area or subwatershed. Third, fine-scale desired conditions apply to the variation on the ground of smaller vegetation elements, such as understory shrubs, gaps or small openings, and litter cover.

Patches comprise areas of similar dominant species and vegetation structure. They are like the term “forest stand” but encompass a broader range of ecological aspects. Patches may not be uniform, but they are different from surrounding areas. One may have a “salt and pepper” look from above of tree clumps and gaps and another may be a uniform sea of forest canopy. Some desired conditions include the term “within-patch.” This refers to changes at the fine scale, like patches of shrubs or clumps of trees within patches.

Terrestrial ecosystem plan components do not apply to administrative or developed recreation sites. Direction for administrative and developed recreation sites are found in the following sections: forestwide direction for sustainable recreation, scenery, and infrastructure, and management area direction for sustainable recreation.

## Forestwide Components for Terrestrial Ecosystems

### Desired Conditions (TERR-FW-DC)

- 01 Each vegetation type is represented by a mosaic of conditions, densities, and structures. This mosaic, which occurs at a variety of scales across landscapes and watersheds, reflects conditions that provide for ecosystem integrity and diversity.
- 02 Vegetation structure and composition provide ecosystem resilience to climate change and other stressors including altered fire regimes, drought, and flooding in riparian systems.
- 03 Terrestrial ecosystems retain their essential processes and functions, despite anticipated changes in species composition associated with climate change.
- 04 Native insect and disease populations are generally limited with occasional outbreaks. Vegetation structural diversity and resilience minimizes the scale of insect and disease outbreaks.

- 05 Ecological conditions contribute to the recovery of threatened and endangered species, conserve proposed and candidate species, and support the persistence of species of conservation concern.
- 06 The landscape contains a mosaic of vegetation types and structures that provide habitat and connectivity for a variety of species including wide-ranging habitat generalists such as black bear and mule deer; more localized, semi-specialists such as ground-nesting and cavity-nesting birds and mammals; and habitat specialists such as old-forest- and early seral-associated species.
- 07 The carbon carrying capacity for a given ecosystem is stable or improving, given trends in climate change, fire, insects, disease, and drought.
- 08 Fire occurs as a key ecological process in fire-adapted ecosystems where it does not pose an unacceptable risk to life and property. Fire regimes, including the frequency, extent, and severity of fire, is ecologically appropriate and enhances ecosystem resilience and habitat heterogeneity, diversity, and quality.
- 09 Composition, density, structure, and condition of vegetation help reduce the threat of undesirable wildfires to local communities, ecosystems, and scenic character.
- 10 Terrestrial ecosystems provide a variety of benefits that improve people's economic, social, and physical well-being (clean water, forest products, livestock forage, carbon sequestration and storage, energy generation, recreational opportunities, landscapes with scenic character and scenic integrity, cultural uses, and biodiversity).
- 11 Vegetation provides sustainable amounts of forest products (including wood fiber; biomass; forage; firewood; edible and medicinal plants; and boughs, bark, berries, and cones) for commercial, Tribal, personal, educational, and scientific uses. These products are provided while sustaining wildlife habitat, soil and water quality and site productivity.
- 12 Vegetation types and vegetation conditions support continued use by Tribes for traditional, ceremonial, and medicinal purposes.

#### **Objectives (TERR-FW-OBJ)**

- 01 Restore forest structure and composition on at least 12,000 to 18,000 acres of the montane, upper montane, and portions of the foothill landscape, using primarily mechanical treatment, within 15 years following plan approval.
- 02 Restore low and moderate severity fire mosaics on at least 32,000 acres within 15 years following plan approval.
- 03 Implement restoration, enhancements, fuels reduction, or maintenance actions in at least three areas of Tribal importance within 15 years following plan approval.

#### **Goals (TERR-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Work cooperatively with researchers and other organizations to develop appropriate ecological restoration measures, especially within forest landscapes impacted by drought, bark beetle outbreaks, or uncharacteristic wildfire.



- 02 Restoration projects following large stand-replacing events (such as wildfire, drought, and bark beetle outbreaks) in forest landscapes should be designed to consider:
- a safety to people;
  - b the development of restoration strategies<sup>4</sup> that move current landscape conditions toward ecosystem desired conditions;
  - c fuel loads and the need to restore natural fire regimes to the recovering landscape;
  - d wildlife habitat, including the restoration of habitat for forest-dependent species;
  - e opportunities to increase carbon storage and sequestration;
  - f future projections in climate and their influence on ecosystems in the affected area, including the transition of one desired ecosystem type to another;
  - g long-term maintenance of regional biodiversity; and
  - h opportunities to recover some economic value as a harvested wood product from dead and dying trees to support ecological restoration objectives.
- 03 Work cooperatively with Federal and State agencies and other partners to restore low to moderate severity fire to the landscape.

#### Standards (TERR-FW-STD)

- 01 Retain live conifer trees greater than 30 inches in diameter except in the case of imminent threat to life and property, or if one of the conditions below is met:
- a When required for equipment operability, individual trees less than 35 inches in diameter may be removed on an incidental basis.
  - b Outside of California spotted owl territories, where necessary to move toward terrestrial vegetation desired conditions, live trees greater than 30 inches but less than 40 inches in diameter may be felled for coarse woody debris, or removed, under the following limited circumstances:
    - When removing trees is needed for aspen, oak, or meadow restoration treatments or for cultural or Tribal importance;
    - In overly dense stands to favor retention or promote the growth of even larger or older shade-intolerant trees to meet tree species composition and forest structure restoration goals more effectively;
    - To promote the establishment, growth, and development of shade-intolerant species by creating small gaps (generally less than 0.5 acre) in stands historically dominated by shade-intolerant species;
    - To improve the growth and vigor of rust-resistant sugar pine trees greater than 16 inches in diameter by reducing competition from surrounding trees; or
    - To reduce loss of large-diameter trees due to competition in overly dense stands within homogeneous plantations.

---

<sup>4</sup> Meyer, M.D., J.W. Long, and H.D. Safford, H.D., eds. 2021. Postfire restoration framework for national forests in California. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-270. Albany, CA: USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station. 204 p.

### Guidelines (TERR-FW-GDL)

- 01 Vegetation treatments facilitate increasing heterogeneity at all scales, from tree clumps to large landscapes. Several treatment strategies can be employed: using landscape topography (slope, aspect, and slope position) to vary stand densities; promoting tree clumps and gaps within a stand, increasing the proportion of large to small trees; retaining important habitat structures such as large trees, snags, and trees with broken tops; and increasing diversity by promoting hardwoods, pines, and native plant species.  
**Exceptions: Does not apply in community buffers.**
- 02 To retain essential habitat elements required for nesting, roosting, and denning by wildlife including fisher, California spotted owl, cavity-nesting birds, and tree-dwelling bats and other small mammals, mechanical vegetation treatments within forested habitats should maintain and promote large and structurally complex trees, snags, and downed logs distributed widely on the landscape and consistent with forest type desired conditions, especially where they occur in clumps and along forest edges.  
**Exceptions: Does not apply in community buffers.**
- 03 Management activities that generate accumulations of green slash should not increase the potential for bark beetle outbreaks.
- 04 Mechanical vegetation treatments and salvage operations should retain all large hardwoods greater than 12 inches in diameter (8 inches for blue oak), except where they pose a threat to human life or property or as needed for operability.  
**Exceptions:**  
**Does not apply in community buffers.**  
**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zone where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**
- 05 Burn prescriptions should be designed and implemented to minimize loss of large hardwoods greater than 12 inches in diameter (8 inches for blue oak). Specifically minimize losses on black oaks greater than 20 inches in diameter.
- 06 Design vegetation treatments to maintain or enhance special habitat features.

### Potential Management Approaches

- Develop and implement a new business model replacing dependence on appropriated funding with a business model that acknowledges and utilizes stakeholder involvement and investment to increase national forest managers' ability to move vegetation toward desired conditions.
- As feasible, include the location of special habitats in the corporate geographic information system.
- Consider partnerships with Federal and State agencies and other partners to identify priority areas for restoration, including areas of high tree mortality or adjacent to communities threatened by uncharacteristic wildfires.
- To support old-forest components, when appropriate encourage the development of old-forest conditions in areas where old forest is lacking and protect existing old-forest components from stressors by prioritizing restoration in key old-forest areas, including within forest landscapes impacted by large stand-replacing events.

- Promote native vegetation (such as conifers, hardwoods, and shrubs) in complex early-seral habitat that supports long-term ecosystem integrity considering climate change, drought, insects, disease, and fire.
- Consider future climate conditions when selecting planting priority areas, species composition, elevation, and seed zone origin(s) for revegetation or reforestation with native trees and other plants.
- Restoration projects should apply design features to reduce impacts to biological soil crusts when they are known to occur in the project area.
- Within vegetation management project areas, as appropriate, consider enhancing recreation facilities, infrastructure, and opportunities in such areas (including working with partners to maintain, re-route, or re-align existing system trails).

### Blue Oak Interior Live Oak Woodland

#### Desired Conditions (TERR-BLU-DC)

- 01 Blue oak-interior live oak woodlands occur in a highly variable and complex landscape pattern. Blue oak dominates the overstory in patches but is co-dominant with interior live oak or foothill pine. Blue oak woodlands are a mosaic of varying age and size classes with mature oaks that provide acorns from older trees. There are occasional pulses of blue oak regeneration to successfully replace mortality in older trees.
- 02 Fires occur periodically to maintain lower levels of dead grass and litter levels so that they do not fuel intense fire. Fires typically burn with low to moderate vegetation burn severity.
- 03 In annual grasslands, native plant abundance is maintained or improved and provides enough residual plant matter at the end of the growing season to maintain germination potential, site productivity and to protect soils.

### Chaparral-Live Oak

#### Desired Conditions (TERR-CHAP-DC)

- 01 Chaparral comprises native shrub and understory species that reflect the natural range of variation for the site. The chaparral vegetation type is composed of varying age classes and densities that protect against accelerated erosion, with 2 to 20 percent of the type in early seral grass and herbaceous cover, 5 to 20 percent in native herbaceous plants and shrubs, and 70 to 95 percent in dense shrubs.
- 02 Chaparral is in a constant state of transition from young to older stages and back again, with fire as the primary disturbance. High-severity fires that kill most aboveground stems occur on average every 35 to 100 years. Fire-return intervals allow the buildup of native shrub and plant seeds in the soil seed bank and for the accumulation of fuels necessary to support fire-induced regeneration. Invasive nonnative plants do not dominate between fires.

#### Guidelines (TERR-CHAP-GDL)

- 01 Treatments using fire within chaparral should be designed to provide a diversity of seral stages at the landscape scale. Where feasible, leave small to medium unburned or lightly burned patches for wildlife within very large burn units.

- 02 When chaparral is the potential natural vegetation type, treatment projects should not include active reforestation with the intent to convert the area to a forested type.

## All Montane Vegetation Types

### Desired Conditions (TERR-MONT-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, the Sierra Nevada montane landscape is a heterogeneous mosaic of open and closed canopy forest patches, meadows, and riparian areas. These ecosystem types occur in a complex mosaic of different densities, sizes, and species mixed across large landscapes that vary with topography, soils, and snow accumulation. The composition, structure, and function of vegetation make these ecosystems resilient to fire, drought, insects, pathogens, and climate change. The mix of seral stage patches, and open versus closed canopied areas, varies by forest type as shown in table 1 and figure 4. Large and old trees are common in later seral stages throughout the landscape and in varying densities (see Old Forest Habitats section).
- 02 At the landscape scale, fire is a key ecological process restoring and maintaining patchy fuel loads, and increasing heterogeneity and understory plant vigor. Fires occur regularly, generally every 10 to 20 years. Fires in this zone burn with low, moderate, or mixed severity, with dispersed patches of high severity (greater than 75 percent basal area mortality) generally less than 10 acres and rarely greater than 200 to 250 acres in size. The proportion of areas burned at high severity within a fire is generally less than 10 to 15 percent.
- 03 At the landscape scale, white pines (such as sugar pine and western white pine) are healthy and vigorous with a low incidence of white pine blister rust. Individual trees and the stands they occur in are resilient to moisture stress, drought, and bark beetles. White pine blister rust-resistant trees are regenerating, and populations are sustained.

**Table 1. Percent of montane forest landscape in different seral stage patches by vegetation type at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres) <sup>1</sup>**

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Early seral<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Small tree<sup>3</sup></b>	<b>Open mature forest<sup>4</sup></b>	<b>Intermediate mature forest<sup>5</sup></b>	<b>Dense mature forest<sup>6</sup></b>
Black oak/ ponderosa pine	5–20%	1–10%	20–40%	40–60%	0–20%
Ponderosa pine	5–20%	1–10%	60–90%	10–20%	0–10%
Dry mixed conifer <sup>5,7</sup>	10–20%	1–10%	60–90%	20–40%	0–20%
Moist mixed conifer <sup>7</sup>	10–20%	2–15%	10–40%	30–60%	30–60%

1. Complex early seral forests are not included in this table because they are a habitat type that is managed on the scale of individual stand-replacing events, not at the landscape scale. Mature forest types includes old forests.

2. Shrub, grass/herb, tree seedling/sapling.

3. California Wildlife Habitat Relationship system (CWHR)<sup>5</sup> tree size classes 2 & 3.

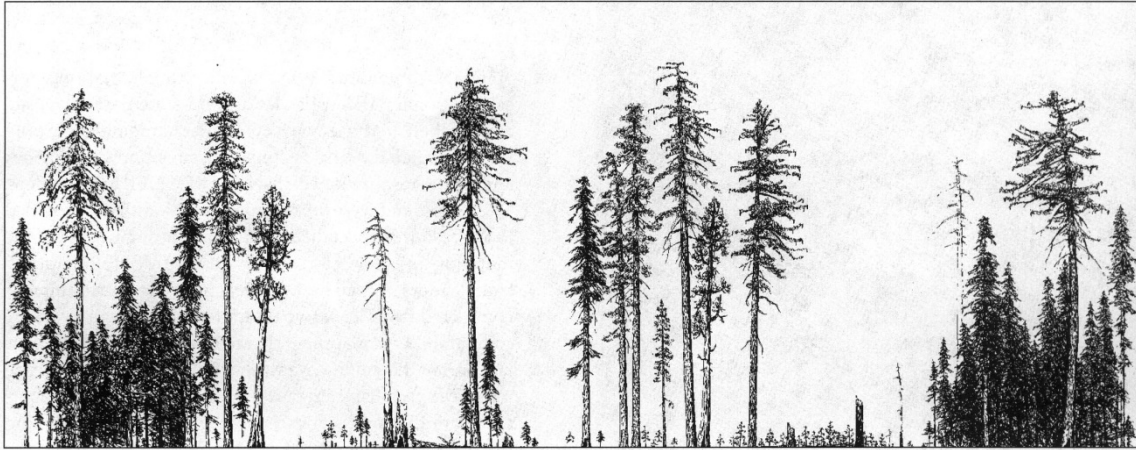
4. CWHR 4 & 5; 10 to 40 percent tree cover.

5. CWHR 4 & 5; 40 to 60 percent tree cover.

6. CWHR 4, 5, & 6, more than 60 percent tree cover.

7. Mapping of moist and dry mixed conifer is further described in appendix H.

<sup>5</sup> Mayer, K.E. and W.F. Laudenslayer. 1988. A Guide to Wildlife Habitats of California. California Department of Fish and Game.



**Figure 4. Diagram of a cross-section in a forest patch that illustrates the heterogeneity, or complex mosaic of different tree densities, sizes, and species mix.<sup>6</sup>** From left to right, there are large and likely old, overstory trees above a widely varying and clumpy understory. On the left, three large trees tower above a dense clump of mid and small fir trees. In the middle, encompassing two-thirds of the cross-section, several individual large trees and small clumps tower above a sparse understory, and there are scattered seedlings and clumps of shrubs. To the right, a similar dense patch as the one on the far left occurs, with a large snag and some mid-sized trees.

## Black Oak/Canyon Live Oak

### Desired Condition (TERR-BLCK-DC)

- 01 Oak trees, snags, and down logs provide habitat for a variety of wildlife species. Oak snags and live trees with dead limbs, hollow boles, and cavities provide shelter, and resting and nesting habitat. Acorns are plentiful, provide food for wildlife, and are available for traditional cultural uses.

### Guideline (TERR-BLCK-GDL)

- 01 Where possible and appropriate to enhance forest structural heterogeneity or an underrepresented hardwood component, projects should create crown space around existing medium- to large-diameter California black oak and canyon live oak to allow crown development of the oaks. Where replacement age classes are missing, projects should create openings near mature oaks to stimulate natural regeneration or retain existing oak regeneration consistent with forest type desired conditions.

## Ponderosa Pine

### Desired Conditions (TERR-POND-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, the ponderosa pine vegetation type consists of open forests with a mosaic of varied tree sizes, densities, and understory vegetation (figure 5). They are dominated by ponderosa pine trees and, where black oak is common, co-dominated by black oak. Understory shrubs and plants are common. These areas are highly resilient.

---

<sup>6</sup> As described by North and others (2009) in *An ecosystem management strategy for Sierran mixed-conifer forests*. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-220. Albany, CA: USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station. 49 p.

- 02 At the landscape scale, areas dominated by open-canopied forests of medium- and large-diameter (about 12 to 30 inches diameter at breast height (dbh) and greater than 30 inches dbh, respectively) trees comprise more than 60 percent of the landscape (table 1). Overstory tree canopy cover is variable, generally ranging from 10 to 50 percent at a fine-scale, with some small patches exceeding 50 percent cover. When black oak dominates the overstory, because of their wide crowns, canopy cover can be greater than 50 percent. Trees are denser in some locations such as north-facing slopes and canyon bottoms, but in small patches (less than 10 percent of the landscape). Large and old trees are common in most of the landscape in varying densities (see Old Forest section below). Trees greater than 30 to 40 inches in diameter are common in areas, especially pine and black oak.
- 03 At the mid to fine scale, vegetation within patches is highly variable (table 2 and figure 5). Trees of different sizes and ages are variably spaced and comprise an irregular, uneven-aged forest. Individual trees are variably spaced with some denser groups. Groups mostly vary from 2 to 10 trees. Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable, ranging from 20 to 200 square feet per acre, with most areas having fewer than 150 square feet per acre. Irregularly shaped openings with less than 10 percent tree cover make up from 10 to 50 percent of the area. The opening sizes are varied, mostly ranging from 0.05 to 0.5 acre, occasionally greater than 0.5 acre, and contain a mix of grasses, herbaceous plants, shrubs, and young trees. Vigorous shrubs cover 10 to 60 percent of the area. Less than 30 percent of shrubs are decadent with many dead branches. Numbers of seedlings and saplings are sufficient to replace mature and old trees over time, with ponderosa pine regeneration patchy in distribution and occurring in canopy gaps of variable sizes and shapes.



Figure 5. Examples of ponderosa pine patches



**Table 2. Structure within forested patches (10s to 100s of acre areas with similar forest)\***

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Basal area (square feet per acre)</b>	<b>Tree canopy cover (percent cover overhead)</b>	<b>Shrubs</b>
Black oak/ ponderosa pine	20–200; mostly less than 150	10–50; may exceed 50 in small patches	10–60% cover; highly variable; mixed ages
Ponderosa pine dry mixed conifer**	20–200; mostly less than 150	10–50; may exceed 50 in small patches	10–60% cover; highly variable; mixed ages
Moist mixed conifer**	50–300; mostly less than 200	20–75; may exceed 75 in small patches	10–60% cover; highly variable; mixed ages

\*Ranges are provided to address the broad range of environmental conditions typical of heterogeneous forest landscapes and dependent on local site conditions such as site productivity.

\*\* Mapping of moist and dry mixed conifer is further described in appendix H.

- 04 At the mid to fine scale, litter and surface fuel is patchy with fewer than 3 to 10 tons per acre in fuel loading on average over 30 to 70 percent of the area. There are some small areas of up to 30 tons per acre and others with fewer than 5 tons per acre.
- 05 At the mid to fine scale, snags greater than 20 inches in diameter are patchily distributed and highly irregular in spacing, with 2 to 40 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 3) providing for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is patchily distributed and ranges from 1 to 10 tons per acre at the landscape scale (table 3).

**Table 3. Snags and large logs in unburned and low to moderate severity burn patches at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres)\***

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Snags larger than 20 inches diameter (per 10 acres)</b>	<b>Logs larger than 15 inches diameter and more than 8 feet long (tons per acre)</b>	<b>Litter and understory dead wood (tons per acre)</b>
Black oak/ponderosa pine ponderosa pine dry mixed conifer**	2–40	1–10; all decay classes	3–10; patchy
Moist mixed conifer**	5–40	1–10; all decay classes	3–15; patchy

\*Snag and large log densities and surface fuels may exceed the upper limit in small patches especially following moderate severity fire. Ranges are provided to address the broad range of environmental conditions typical of heterogeneous forest landscapes and dependent on local site conditions such as site productivity.

\*\* Mapping of moist and dry mixed conifer is further described in appendix H.

## Dry Mixed Conifer

The dry mixed conifer type occurs primarily on the south and west aspects, ridges, and upper slopes. For further information on mapping of moist and dry mixed conifer, see appendix H.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-DMC-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, the dry mixed conifer vegetation type has a mosaic of patches of trees of varied sizes and ages. It is dominated by ponderosa pine or Jeffrey pine, with varying amounts of sugar pine, white fir, incense cedar, or hardwood trees (figure 6).



**Figure 6. Dry mixed conifer forest**

- 02 At the landscape scale, areas dominated by medium and large-diameter trees comprise more than 60 percent of the landscape. Overstory tree canopy cover is variable and ranges from 10 to 50 percent at a fine scale, with some small patches exceeding 50 percent cover. Trees are denser in some locations, such as north-facing slopes and canyon bottoms, but in small patches in limited areas (less than 20 percent of the area). Vigorous shrubs cover 10 percent or more of the area, with density varying by aspect, slope, and soil type.
- 03 At the mid to fine scale, vegetation structure is highly variable. Trees of different sizes and ages are variably spaced and comprise an irregular, uneven-aged forest. Individual trees are variably spaced and interspersed with some denser tree clusters and canopy gaps typically less than 0.2 to 0.5 acre. Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable, ranging from 20 to 200 square feet per acre, with most areas having fewer than 150 square feet per acre. Numbers of seedlings and saplings are sufficient to replace mature and old trees over time, and pine regeneration is patchy in distribution and occurs in canopy gaps of variable shapes and sizes.
- 04 At the mid to fine scale, small irregularly shaped openings with less than 10 percent tree cover make up from 10 to 50 percent of the area, and contain a mix of grasses, herbaceous plants, and shrubs.
- 05 At the mid to fine scale, snags greater than 20 inches in diameter are well distributed and highly irregular in spacing, with densities between 2 to 40 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 3) providing for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is irregularly distributed and ranges from 1 to 10 tons per acre at the landscape scale. Litter and surface fuel is patchy with fewer than 3 to 10 tons per acre in fuel loading on average over 30 to 70 percent of the area. There are some small areas of up to 30 tons per acre and others with fewer than 3 tons per acre.



## Moist Mixed Conifer

Moist mixed conifer forests are found where soil moisture is higher, such as lower slopes, drainages, north and east aspects or where water tables are closer to the surface. For further information on mapping moist and dry mixed conifer, see appendix H.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-MMC-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, varying mixtures of Jeffrey or ponderosa pine, white fir, red fir, incense cedar and sugar pine trees occur. Native shrubs and plants are common in the understory (figure 7).



**Figure 7. Examples of moist mixed conifer forest**

- 02 At the landscape scale, the moist mixed conifer type occurs as a mosaic of forest patches of varied sizes and ages, with a greater proportion of moderate and high canopy cover patches than in drier parts of the landscape. Areas dominated by medium and large diameter trees comprise more than 50 percent of the landscape. Overstory tree canopy cover is highly variable, ranging from 20 to 75 percent, with some small patches exceeding 75 percent cover.
- 03 At the landscape scale, closed-canopied patches are resilient to high intensity fire when they are embedded in larger areas dominated by highly resilient, open forests. These close-canopied patches consist of a combination of mid-story and understory tree and shrub density, and patchy, light to moderate surface fuels. Early seral vegetation, shrubs, grasses, herbs, tree seedlings or saplings mostly occur in very small areas, intermixed within forest stands or patches. Large and old trees are common in much of the landscape in varying densities (see Old Forest section) in all seral stages. Some trees exceeding 40 to 50 inches in diameter occur on more productive sites.
- 04 At the mid to fine scale, moist mixed conifer forest structure is diverse, with high variation in density and spacing. Trees of different sizes and ages, variably spaced, comprise an irregular, uneven-aged forest with all seral stages present, including old forest. Individual trees are

variably spaced and interspersed with some denser tree clusters and canopy gaps typically less than 0.2 to 0.5 acre. Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable, ranging from 50 to 300 square feet per acre (table 2) with most areas having fewer than 200 square feet per acre. Seedlings and saplings are sufficient to replace mature and old trees over time but are not uniformly distributed in stands.

- 05 At the mid to fine- scale, large snags greater than 20 inches in diameter are patchily distributed, averaging 5 to 40 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 3) providing for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is patchily distributed and averages fewer than 5 tons per acre at the landscape scale. In patches centered on areas of past tree mortality, coarse woody debris can be up to 10 tons per acre. Litter and surface fuel is patchy, with fewer than 3 to 15 tons per acre in fuel loading on average over 30 to 70 percent of the area.
- 06 At the fine scale, irregularly shaped groups of trees and widely spaced trees are variably spaced with some tight clumps. Vigorous shrub cover varies from 10 to 60 percent of the area. Openings with less than 10 percent tree cover are in various shapes and intermixed with groups of trees. These openings make up 10 to 30 percent of the area, are typically less 0.5 acre, and contain a mix of grasses, forbs, and shrubs.

## All Upper Montane Vegetation Types

### Desired Conditions (TERR-UPPR-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, fire is a key ecological process in upper montane landscapes, restoring and maintaining patchy fuel loads, and increasing heterogeneity and understory plant vigor. Fires occur regularly to irregularly, depending on vegetation type. Fires in this zone burn with low, moderate, or mixed severity, with dispersed patches of high severity (greater than 75 percent basal area mortality) generally less than 10 acres and rarely greater than 200 to 250 acres. The proportion of areas burned at high severity within a fire is generally less than 10 to 15 percent.

## Red Fir

### Desired Conditions (TERR-RFIR-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, the red fir forest type is part of a heterogeneous mosaic of tree species and vegetation structures (tree density, size, age, and shrub cover), with patches of Jeffrey pine, lodgepole, other forest types, and meadows. It is dominated by red fir trees, with varying amounts of white fir, Jeffrey pine, western white pine, lodgepole pine and sometimes mountain hemlock (figure 8).
- 02 Fires occur every 25 to 80 years as a key ecological process in red fir forests. Fire as an ecological process creates, restores, and maintains ecosystem resilience and increases understory plant vigor, heterogeneity, and habitat diversity.





**Figure 8. Photos of red fir forest heterogeneity**

- 03 At the landscape scale, areas dominated by medium- and large-diameter trees and low to moderate canopy cover (between 10 and 60 percent) comprise most of the landscape (table 4). Trees are denser in some locations such as north-facing slopes and canyon bottoms, near meadows, or where snow accumulates. Early seral vegetation, shrubs, grasses, herbaceous plants, tree seedlings or saplings, mostly occur in very small areas, intermixed within forest stands or patches.

**Table 4. Percentage of upper montane forest landscape in different seral stage patches by vegetation type at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres) <sup>1</sup>**

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Early seral<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Small tree<sup>3</sup></b>	<b>Open mature forest<sup>4</sup></b>	<b>Intermediate mature forest<sup>5</sup></b>	<b>Dense mature forest<sup>6</sup></b>
Jeffrey pine	5–20%	1–10%	60–90%	10–20%	0–10%
Red fir	5–20%	2–15%	20–70%	20–70%	10–40%
Wet lodgepole pine	5–20%	2–15%	5–20%	20–70%	20–70%
Dry lodgepole pine	5–20%	2–15%	50–80%	10–30%	0–30%

1. Complex early seral forests are not included in this table because they are a habitat type that is managed on the scale of individual stand-replacing events, not at the landscape scale. Mature forest types includes old forests.

2. Shrub, grass/herb, tree seedling/sapling.

3. California Wildlife Habitat Relationship system (CWHR) tree size classes 2 & 3.

4. CWHR 4 & 5; 10–40 percent tree cover.

5. CWHR 4 & 5; 40–60 percent tree cover.

6. CWHR 4, 5, & 6, greater than 60 percent tree cover.

- 04 At the landscape scale, shrubs, grasses, and young trees grow in patches of dead and dying trees with abundant snags and large logs.
- 05 At the mid to fine scale, trees of different sizes and ages are variably spaced and comprise an irregular, uneven-aged forest. Individual trees are variably spaced and interspersed with some denser tree clusters and open canopy gaps. Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable, ranging from 50 to 350 square feet per acre with most areas having fewer than 250 square feet per acre (table 5). Numbers of seedlings and saplings are sufficient to replace mature and old trees as they die but are very patchy in distribution.

**Table 5. Structure within forested patches (areas of tens to hundreds of acres with similar forest)\***

Vegetation type or zone	Basal area (square feet per acre)	Tree canopy cover (percent cover overhead)	Shrubs
Jeffrey pine	20–200; mostly less than 150	10–40; may exceed 40% in small patches	0–70% cover; variable, mixed ages
Red fir	50–350; mostly less than 250	20–75, median 40; highly variable	0–70% cover, variable, mixed ages
Wet lodgepole pine	50–280 mostly less than 150	20–70; generally 40–60%	0–70% cover, variable, mixed ages
Dry lodgepole pine	20–200; mostly around 120	10–40; may exceed 40% in small patches	0–70% cover, variable, mixed ages

\*Ranges are provided to address the broad range of environmental conditions typical of heterogeneous forest landscapes and dependent on local site conditions such as site productivity.

- 06 At the mid to fine scale, small openings mostly less than 0.1 to 0.5 acre are intermixed within stands of trees; they make up 5 to 20 percent of the area within tree stands, have less than 10 percent tree cover, are irregularly shaped, and often contain herbaceous plants, shrubs, and tree seedlings and saplings. Some openings and the understory of some red fir patches have little to no understory plants but instead have a high diversity of mushrooms and other fungi.
- 07 At the mid to fine scale, snags greater than 20 inches in diameter are distributed in patches. An average of 5 to 40 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 6) provide for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is distributed in patches and ranges from 1 to 10 tons per acre at the landscape scale. Litter and surface fuel is patchy with fewer than 5 to 20 tons per acre in fuel loading on average. There may be areas with no fuels and pockets of high fuel accumulation scattered irregularly.

**Table 6. Snags and large logs in unburned and low to moderate severity burn patches at the landscape scale (tens of thousands of acres)\***

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Snags larger than 20 inches diameter per 10 acres</b>	<b>Snags larger than 30 inches diameter per 10 acres</b>	<b>Logs larger than 15 inches diameter and more than 8 feet long (tons per acre)</b>	<b>Litter and understory dead wood (tons per acre)</b>
Jeffrey pine	2–40	NA	1–10, all decay classes	3–10; patchy
Red fir	5–40	1–10	1–10; all decay classes	5–20, patchy
Wet lodgepole pine	5–40	NA	1–20; all decay classes	5–30, patchy
Dry lodgepole pine	2–25	NA	1–10; all decay classes	2–10; patchy

NA = not applicable. Trees of this size class are considered rare and variable in distribution, so there is no numeric range that applies to these types.

\*Snag and large log densities and surface fuels may exceed the upper limit in small patches especially following moderate severity fire. Ranges are provided to address the broad range of environmental conditions typical of heterogeneous forest landscapes and dependent on local site conditions such as site productivity.

## Lodgepole Pine

This vegetation type is further divided into dry and wet lodgepole pine. Dry lodgepole pine dominates on upper montane dry sites generally above 8,500 feet elevation, often located on benches, upper topographic positions,<sup>7</sup> and moderate slopes. Stands are typically in broken terrain and shallow, drier, and nutrient-poor soils. Western white pine may be present, but mesic tree species (such as red fir, mountain hemlock) are generally absent or infrequent. Understory herbaceous plant cover is generally less than 30 percent and bare ground and rock cover is generally more than 30 percent. Either wet or dry lodgepole may border some meadow ecosystems, depending upon the ecological setting.

Wet lodgepole pine dominates on upper montane wet sites generally above 7,500 feet elevation, often located on gently rolling lower slopes and drainage bottoms. Stands are located on relatively productive, moister, and deeper soils in the upper montane zone. Red fir or mountain hemlock may be present in wet lodgepole pine stands. Understory herbaceous plant cover is generally more than 30 percent and bare ground and rock cover is generally less than 30 percent. Either wet or dry lodgepole may border some meadow ecosystems, depending upon the ecological setting.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-LDGP-DC)

- 01 Lodgepole pine forests are highly variable throughout the landscape, occurring as open forests on dry sites at higher elevations, and as denser stands in pockets around meadows, lakes or where cold air accumulates. The lodgepole pine type is part of a heterogeneous mosaic of tree species with diverse structural conditions. It is dominated by lodgepole pine, with varying amounts of red fir, white fir, aspen, and sometimes white pines (such as western white pine).

<sup>7</sup> Area near the top of a slope or ridgetop.

- 02 Fires occur every 30 to 100 years as a key ecological process in lodgepole pine forest. Fire as an ecological process creates, restores, and maintains ecosystem resilience and increases understory plant vigor, heterogeneity, and habitat diversity.
- 03 The distribution and structure of wet lodgepole pine forests are variable, ranging from small patches of even-aged trees, with both closed and open canopies, to uneven-aged, irregular patches. Size and age class diversity is high within wet lodgepole pine stands. Individual trees are variably spaced with some tight groups. Irregularly shaped groups of large and intermediate trees are variably sized, with some overlapping tree crowns. Smaller trees are randomly distributed.
- 04 In wet lodgepole pine forests, areas dominated by medium- and large-diameter trees comprise more than 45 percent of the landscape (table 4). Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable, ranging from 50 to 280 square feet per acre, with most less than 150 square feet per acre (table 5). Canopy cover ranges from 20 to 70 percent but is generally 50 percent. Small openings with less than 10 percent tree cover are irregular in shape and make up from 5 to 20 percent of the area and contain a mix of grasses, herbaceous plants, and shrubs. Sufficient tree regeneration in openings provides for stand replacement.
- 05 In wet lodgepole pine forests, large snag densities are between 5 and 40 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 6). Snags are well distributed, highly irregular in spacing, and provide for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is well distributed but irregular in spacing and ranges from 1 to 20 tons per acre at the landscape scale. Some small areas contain very high fuel loading of up to 30 tons per acre and other areas have fewer than 5 tons per acre.
- 06 The distribution and structure of dry lodgepole pine forests are variable but typically open, with irregular patches of trees of different ages and generally few overlapping tree crowns. Smaller trees are randomly distributed. Tree groups may contain other tree species such as western white pine. Regenerating trees in suitable but irregularly distributed sites eventually create new stands.
- 07 In dry lodgepole pine forests, areas dominated by medium- and large-diameter trees comprise more than 60 percent of the landscape (table 4). Canopy cover is generally 10 to 40 percent but may exceed 40 percent in small patches and moist microsites (table 5).
- 08 Within dry lodgepole pine patches, individual trees are variably and often widely spaced. Tree stocking (basal area) is highly variable with most stands having around 120 square feet per acre but ranging from 20 to 200 square feet per acre. Small openings with less than 10 percent tree cover are irregular in shape and make up from 10 to 50 percent of the area and contain a mix of bare ground, rock, grasses, herbaceous plants, and shrubs.
- 09 In dry lodgepole stands, the understory can contain between 0 to 40 percent shrub cover and on very dry, cold rocky sites there may be no shrub cover.
- 10 In dry lodgepole pine forests, large snag densities are between 2 to 25 snags per 10 acres at the landscape scale (table 6). Snags are well distributed, highly irregular in spacing, and provide for future downed logs. Coarse woody debris, including large downed logs in varying states of decay, is well distributed but highly irregular in spacing, ranging from 1 to 10 tons per acre at the landscape scale. Surface fuel loads are highly variable and patchy. Some small



areas contain higher fuel loading of up to 15 tons per acre and most areas have fewer than 8 tons per acre.

## Upper Montane Jeffrey Pine

### Desired Conditions (TERR-JEFF-DC)

- 01 At the landscape scale, the Jeffrey pine type is part of a heterogeneous mosaic of upper montane forests, shrublands, and other vegetation types. Forests are dominated by Jeffrey pine trees and are generally open. Open-canopied stands dominate the landscape, with generally less than 10 percent of the area having more than 40 percent canopy cover. Open canopies allow shade-intolerant Jeffrey pine tree regeneration (figure 9).



**Figure 9. Examples of a Jeffrey pine patch**

- 02 Fire is a key ecological process, creating a diversity of vegetation types, maintaining understory plant diversity, and lowering surface fuels. Fires occur frequently, every 10 to 15 years, with mostly low and moderate vegetation burn severity.
- 03 At the mid to fine scale, Jeffrey pine forests are primarily composed of mostly open canopies, with variable patches of trees, scattered individual trees, and open canopy gaps.
- 04 At the mid to fine scale, Jeffrey pine forest is composed predominantly of vigorous trees, but declining trees are an important component, providing wildlife nesting and denning habitat, future production of snags, down logs, and other coarse woody debris.
- 05 At the mid to fine scale, insects and pathogens like dwarf mistletoe, *Annosus* and *Armillaria* root diseases, and Jeffrey pine beetle, occur at background levels and are restricted to individual stands. Witches' brooms provide habitat for wildlife species.
- 06 At the fine scale, size and age class diversity is high within Jeffrey pine stands. Individual large trees or tree groups provide nesting and denning habitat for wildlife.

- 07 At the fine scale, openings of various shapes surround and are intermixed with trees. These gaps make up from 10 to 70 percent of the area, are typically less than 0.2 to 0.5 acre, and contain herbaceous plants, shrubs, and tree regeneration.

## Montane Chaparral

### Desired Conditions (TERR-MCHP-DC)

- 01 Chaparral consists of native shrub and understory species that reflect the natural range of variation for the site. The chaparral vegetation type is composed of varying age classes and densities that protect against accelerated erosion, with 2 to 20 percent of the type in early seral grass and herbaceous cover, 5 to 20 percent in native herbs and shrubs, and 70 to 95 percent in dense shrubs.
- 02 Chaparral is in a constant state of transition from young to older stages and back again, with fire as the primary disturbance. High-severity fires that kill most aboveground stems occur on average every 35 to 100 years. The fire return interval is long enough to allow the soil seed bank of uniquely adapted plants that follow fire to be maintained over short and long terms. Fuels are able to accumulate sufficiently in areas to carry fire in the areas of fire-adapted plants. Invasive nonnative plants do not dominate between fires.

## Aspen

### Desired Conditions (TERR-ASP-DC)

- 01 The structure, function, and composition of aspen stands are within the natural range of variation; there is a wide age and size class distribution of aspen and it is contributing to habitat and biodiversity. Aspen is successfully regenerating.
- 02 Fire occurs as a key ecological process in aspen stands, maintaining ecosystem resilience and promoting aspen regeneration. Fire or silvicultural activity reduces conifer encroachment and competition. Aspen stands are resilient to and periodically regenerated by moderate to high-severity fires or other disturbances, allowing for potential expansion.
- 03 Aspen groves contribute to social and economic sustainability by supporting recreational, cultural, and economic opportunities. Aspen groves add visual interest, variety, and contrasts in the landscape, providing spiritual respite and enjoyment.

### Standard (TERR-ASP-STD)

- 01 Reduce browsing pressure in aspen stands where aspen regeneration is not recruiting to larger size classes or aspen regeneration is limited due to browsing impacts.

### Guidelines (TERR-ASP-GDL)

- 01 Where pile burning of material from conifer removal is desired, piles should be removed from overstory aspen tree roots where possible or be kept at least 15 feet away from large aspen trees to limit damage to aspen trunks and roots. Larger piles (more than 10 feet pile width) should be placed at least 20 feet away from aspen trunks to minimize damage to aspen.
- 02 During treatment to manage or restore aspen, aspen trees with historical carvings should be protected or recorded and the historical value appropriately documented.



- 03 Near developed areas, conifer removal (mechanical or hand thinning) should be the primary initial restorative treatment for aspen stands. To manage residual fuel loading where cut material cannot be removed from the stand, pile burning may be used.
- 04 The number and size of conifers removed to enhance aspen should be based on the following long-term objectives:
  - a maximize direct and indirect light (this may require treating beyond the existing aspen stand perimeter);
  - b allow aspen expansion;
  - c reduce seed sources of shade-tolerant conifers;
  - d maintain fuel loads, including reduced coarse woody debris, that promote resilient aspen stands to allow future prescribed burning; and
  - e promote wildlife habitat, plant assemblages, and water yields typically found in functioning aspen communities

### **Subalpine and Alpine Zones**

#### **Desired Conditions (TERR-ALPN-DC)**

- 01 Subalpine woodlands are highly variable in structure and composition. Diverse patch types vary from open woodlands with scattered trees to small, dense groves.
- 02 Fires occur infrequently in subalpine woodlands, generally once every 100 years or longer, are mostly very small, and burn with mixed severity. Fire intensity is highly variable, but crown fires are usually limited in size.
- 03 Subalpine woodlands are resilient to insects, diseases, fire, wind, and climate change. High-elevation white pines (whitebark pine, limber pine, and foxtail pine) are healthy and vigorous, with a low incidence of white pine blister rust, and resilient to moisture stress and drought. White pine blister rust-resistant trees are regenerating, and populations of high-elevation white pines have the potential to expand above the tree line.
- 04 Mature cone-bearing whitebark pine trees are spatially well distributed to produce and protect natural regeneration and conserve genetic diversity.
- 05 Alpine ecosystems are resilient to climate change, and fires are small and occur infrequently.

### **Sagebrush**

#### **Desired Conditions (TERR-SAGE-DC)**

- 01 The sagebrush type has a diversity of age classes, stand structure, cover classes and understory composition.
- 02 Sagebrush ecosystems are resilient to fire, disturbances (such as grazing, recreation), invasive species (including cheatgrass) and climate change.
- 03 Grazed areas have or are trending toward satisfactory soils condition, functional hydrology, and biotic integrity. Sagebrush ecosystems contain all key elements and conditions, including sagebrush regeneration and recruitment, ecosystem productivity, perennial grass cover, biological soil crusts and symbiotic fungal associations.

- 04 Fire occurs as a natural process within the natural range of variation, generally burning in small extents. Fires occur infrequently, generally every 40 to 80 years or longer.
- 05 Where nonnative annual grasses exist in sagebrush vegetation communities, the native species persist with adequate structural and functional diversity including shrubs, perennial bunchgrasses, and forbs.

### **Pinyon-Juniper**

#### **Desired Conditions (TERR-PINY-DC)**

- 01 Pinyon-juniper types have a mosaic of trees and open areas that provide wildlife habitat, contribute to functional soils, and are resilient to disturbances such as fire, invasive species, insects, disease, and climate change.
- 02 Fire frequency and severity is within the natural range of variation.
- 03 Plant litter and coarse woody debris are present in sufficient quantities to resist accelerated soil erosion and promote nutrient cycling, water retention, and the microclimate conditions necessary for pinyon seed germination. Biological soil crusts are present to improve nutrient cycling and stabilize soils, especially in sandier soils.
- 04 Pinyon pine regeneration and recruitment ensure persistence of this vegetation type.
- 05 Mature pinyon pines provide opportunities for traditional collecting of pinyon nuts.

#### **Guideline (TERR-PINY-GDL)**

- 01 Appropriately sized patches of undisturbed vegetation should be included in project designs to minimize nonnative species spread and maximize native species regeneration.

### **Xeric Shrub/Blackbrush**

#### **Desired Conditions (TERR-XER-DC)**

- 01 Xeric shrub vegetation is a mosaic of diverse ecological types with native shrubs and grasses, commonly sagebrush, saltbush, and goldenbush in various age classes and patch sizes.
- 02 Vegetation conditions are resilient to natural and human disturbances, such as grazing, flooding, fire, invasive species, and climate change.
- 03 Fires are within the natural range of variation.
- 04 Flooding event frequency and severity is within the natural range of variation.

#### **Standard (TERR-XER-STD)**

- 01 Restoration projects in xeric shrub must include design measures to minimize damage to biological soil crusts with the purpose of maintaining areas resistant to non-native plant invasions.

#### **Guideline (TERR-XER-GDL)**

- 01 Restoration projects in desert shrub and blackbrush should include islands of untreated vegetation in project design to speed native species regeneration.

## Old Forest

Old forests are characterized by the presence of large and old trees for the given species and site productivity. Old forests vary widely based on forest type, soil condition, topography, and fire history. For ponderosa pine, mixed conifer, Jeffrey pine, and red fir forests, trees greater than 20, 30, or 40 inches in diameter contribute to old-forest structure (table 7). Large trees are generally considered greater than 30 inches in diameter within these forest types. Trees that are greater than 50 inches in diameter are also part of the desired condition, their densities are not included in table 7 because they were heavily harvested in the late 1800s and the earlier 1900s and information is lacking on their historic densities. Desired densities of trees greater than 20 inches in diameter are included to recognize the importance of future cohorts of large and old trees (intermediate sized trees) and for tree species that are often more limited in size when older, such as oaks and lodgepole pine. The old-forest management direction below focuses on old forests in the montane and upper montane ecological zones where most vegetation management has occurred in the past and continues to occur.

Old forests often contain large snags and logs in addition to large live trees. The density of these old-forest components varies widely. Old forests within montane mixed conifer and pine vegetation types are more uniformly dense than they were in the past, resulting in increased rates of old growth tree mortality from competition with younger trees, climate change, insect-related mortality, and uncharacteristic wildfire. At the same time, the denser forests with old-growth trees are favored habitat of the California spotted owl, fisher, and Sierra marten.

**Table 7. Large and old trees at landscape scale, except where high-severity fires have occurred (greater than 75 percent basal area mortality)**

<b>Vegetation type or zone</b>	<b>Larger than 20 inches diameter trees per acre</b>	<b>Larger than 30 inches diameter trees per acre</b>	<b>Larger than 40 inches diameter trees per acre</b>	<b>Proportion of the landscape with large and old trees</b>
Ponderosa pine/dry mixed conifer*	4–32	3–20	2–7	40–80%
Moist mixed conifer*	4–40	4–20	4–12	40–80%
Jeffrey pine	2–16	1–8	1–4	40–80%
Red fir	4–45	4–25	4–15	40–80%
Wet lodgepole pine	4–12	4–12	not applicable**	40–80%
Dry lodgepole pine	2–6	2–6	not applicable**	40–80%

\* Mapping of moist and dry mixed conifer is further described in appendix H.

\*\* Trees of this size class are considered rare and variable in distribution, so there is no numeric range that applies to these types.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-OLD-DC)

- 01 The composition, structure, and functions of old forests and surrounding landscapes are resilient to fire, drought, insects, pathogens, and climate change. Fire occurs as a key ecological process in forest types that are adapted to fire, creating, restoring, and maintaining ecosystem resilience and fire-related composition and structure.
- 02 The landscape contains a mosaic of vegetation types and structures that provide foraging and breeding habitat, movement, and connectivity for a variety of old-forest-associated species. Areas of moderate (40 to 60 percent) to high (greater than 60 percent) canopy cover

comprised primarily of large trees provide habitat connectivity for old-forest-associated species in key habitat corridors such as canyon bottoms and drainages.

- 03 Between 40 and 80 percent of the forested landscape contains old-forest areas. Old-forest areas are clumps and patches of old-forest components such as old trees, snags, and large downed logs. These areas are irregularly distributed across the landscape and interspersed with stands of younger trees, shrubs, meadows, other herbaceous vegetation, and unvegetated patches.
- 04 The number and density of old trees vary by topographic position and soil moisture. In general, more large and old trees are found on moister sites; on lower slopes, bottoms, and north and east aspects, especially where soils are deeper. Large trees are well distributed but are often clumpy. The densities vary by forest type as shown in table 7. Trees greater than 40 inches in diameter, generally over 150 years old, represent the oldest trees, and comprise a significant proportion of large and old trees. In many areas of high soil productivity, trees grow to large sizes (around 30 inches in diameter) in fewer than 100 years. On low and very low soil productivity sites, the oldest trees may be smaller in diameter. Enough younger trees are present to provide for recruitment of old trees over time.
- 05 Old forests are composed of both vigorous trees and decadent trees. Clumps of large trees, snags, large logs, and decadent older trees are maintained on the landscape in sufficient numbers to benefit wildlife and are distributed throughout the planning area, considering constraints imposed by climate change, fire, insects, disease, and drought.
- 06 Large snags are scattered across the landscape, generally occurring in clumps rather than uniformly and evenly distributed, meeting the needs of species that use snags and providing for future downed logs.
- 07 Coarse woody debris is distributed in patches and the density of large downed logs varies by vegetation type. Surface dead wood levels are sufficient to provide for wildlife and legacy soil microbial populations.

#### Guidelines (TERR-OLD-GDL)

- 01 To achieve desired conditions for large tree density based on the vegetation type (see table 7), and to promote high-quality nesting and denning habitat for old-forest-associated species, thinning to increase heterogeneity and resilience should retain the oldest and largest trees and large trees with habitat features (such as trees with deformities, broken tops, large branches, and cavities) that benefit these wildlife species.
- 02 Firing patterns, burn unit layout, and other firing and holding methods during burning should limit the killing of large old trees and loss of very large snags. Consider preventing delayed tree mortality caused by smoldering at the base of large old trees and consider constructing fireline around large old trees and very large snags to reduce the risk of tree ignition while addressing firefighter safety. Limit fire intensity in areas with large old trees and very large snags where possible.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

## Complex Early Seral Habitats

Complex early seral management direction below applies to actively managed montane and upper montane forests, including ponderosa pine, mixed conifer, Jeffery pine, red fir and lodgepole pine forest types. Complex early seral habitat is the stage of forest development that follows a significant tree mortality event in a mature forest (where the loss is greater than 75 percent of the basal area) and contains structural, compositional, or functional elements of complexity. Major disturbance events include high-severity fire and large-scale insect outbreaks. The death of overstory trees creates canopy openings that allow other plants and tree seedlings to reoccupy the site. Complex early seral habitat is often characterized by higher and variable densities of snags and logs, sufficient tree regeneration for forest succession, spatial heterogeneity in vegetation structure and composition, and variability in the timing of functional processes during post-disturbance recovery.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-CES-DC)

- 01 Complex early seral habitat contains a sufficient abundance and distribution of snags (especially large-diameter snags) for cavity-nesting wildlife, variable densities of native shrubs and herbaceous plants, and resprouting oak and aspen where they occur.

#### **Exceptions:**

**Does not apply in community buffers where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zones where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

- 02 Snags, logs, and live trees are widely and variably distributed where vegetation has been severely burned (greater than 75 percent mortality) in large patches (greater than 100 acres) to provide habitat while also considering the need for other resource objectives. Such resource objectives could include removal of hazard or salvage trees, reforestation to contribute to future forested conditions and carbon carrying capacity, and strategic fuel treatment, including management of fuels in and adjacent to community wildfire protection zones.

#### **Exceptions:**

**Does not apply in community buffers where there is no overlap with wildlife habitat management area.**

**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zones where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

### Guidelines (TERR-CES-GDL)

- 01 Post-disturbance restoration projects should be designed to reduce potential soil erosion and the loss of soil productivity caused by loss of vegetation and ground cover.
- 02 Post-disturbance restoration projects should be designed to protect and restore important wildlife habitat.
- 03 Post-disturbance restoration projects should be designed to manage the development of fuel profiles over time.
- 04 Post-disturbance restoration projects should be designed to recover some of the value of timber killed or severely injured by the disturbance to support ecological restoration objectives.

- 05 Large fires with more than 1,000 acres of contiguous blocks of high vegetation burn severity in forest vegetation types (ponderosa pine, Jeffery pine, dry or mesic mixed conifer, and red fir) should retain at least 10 percent of the high vegetation burn severity area without harvest to provide areas of complex early seral habitat.

**Exceptions:**

**Does not apply in community buffers where there is no overlap with wildlife habitat management area.**

**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zones where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

## Special Habitats

Special habitats are generally small-scale habitat or vegetation types that may support unique assemblages of plants and animals, especially at-risk species. Special habitats typically include uncommon rock types, harsh soils, or rock outcrops. Examples include dry sandy and gravelly soils, limestone or serpentine soils, alkali or acidic soils, metamorphic, volcanic or granitic rocky soils or rock outcrops, caves, and alpine talus or fell fields. Many at-risk plant and animal species are found in rocky or gravelly habitats; the plan area has an abundance of exposed granitic rock, but only some of which is habitat for at-risk species. Given the localized nature of these special habitats, they are challenging to address comprehensively at the national forest scale since they may be uniquely affected by different activities or trends in ecological conditions. For example, restoring the composition and structure of a red fir forest where outcrops are present would not automatically restore desired ecological conditions on the outcrops.

Aquatic and riparian special habitats (desert springs, seeps, and fens) are considered “special aquatic features” and relevant plan components are in the Riparian Conservation Area section.

### Desired Conditions (TERR-SH-DC)

- 01 The integrity of special habitats is maintained or improved from current conditions. Composition, diversity, and structure of unique plant assemblages are maintained in all areas, including those with multiple-use activities.
- 02 Microclimate or smaller-scale habitat elements provide habitat and refugia for species with a specific geographic or restricted distribution.
- 03 Conditions remain suitable for long-term sustainability of the suite of native plants adapted to special habitats and their associated symbiotic associations, such as insect pollinators.

### Standard (TERR-SH-STD)

- 01 At the project scale, evaluate and incorporate maintenance and enhancement needs for special habitats into project design and implementation.

## Animal and Plant Species

This and subsequent sections under this heading include plan direction designed to maintain the diversity of plant and animal communities and support the persistence of native species within the plan area, subject to the extent of Forest Service authority and given changing dynamic conditions, such as drought, fire, climate change, or other factors in the plan area. This includes plan components that address the needs of at-risk species within the plan area. At-risk species include (1) federally listed threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species under the federal Endangered Species Act, and (2) species of conservation concern (appendix F).<sup>8</sup> This section also includes direction that provides for the sustainable use and enjoyment of fish, wildlife, and plants.

For each species or group of species, the forest plan considers the extent that plan components provide for ecosystem integrity and diversity to meet ecological conditions necessary for those species within their range. Species-specific plan components are added as needed. Additional direction is also provided for special habitats under the Terrestrial Ecosystems section to address unique habitats of some at-risk species.

Desired conditions are either forestwide or specific to the habitat of the species in question. For the California spotted owl and fisher, desired conditions are developed based on best available science and on the most current version of their conservation strategies. Some desired conditions are more focused on the short-term risks identified in the current Fisher Conservation Strategy and the Conservation Strategy for the California Spotted Owl in the Sierra Nevada, while others are more dedicated to the long-term sustainability of the species and their habitat.

### Forestwide Components for Animal and Plant Species

#### Desired Conditions (SPEC-FW-DC)

- 01 Persistent populations of native, and desirable nonnative, plant and animal species are supported by healthy ecosystems, essential ecological processes, and land stewardship activities, and reflect the diversity, quantity, quality, and capability of natural habitats on the National Forest. These ecosystems are also resilient to uncharacteristic fire, climate change, and other stressors, and this resilience supports the long-term sustainability of plant and animal communities.
- 02 Ecological conditions for at-risk species support self-sustaining populations within the inherent capabilities of the plan area, including minimizing impacts from threats (such as disease and other site-specific threats). Ecological conditions provide habitat conditions that contribute to the survival, recovery, and delisting of species under the Endangered Species Act; preclude the need for listing new species; and improve conditions for species of conservation concern.
- 03 The structure and function of the vegetation, aquatic and riparian system, and associated microclimate and smaller scale elements of special habitats (like carbonate rock outcrops) exist in adequate quantities within the capability of the plan area to provide habitat and refugia for at-risk species with restricted distributions.

---

<sup>8</sup> The Regional Forester's species of conservation list is dynamic and may be periodically updated. The current Regional Forester's species of conservation concern list for the Sequoia National Forest can be found on the Pacific Southwest Region's SCC website at <https://www.fs.usda.gov/detail/r5/landmanagement/planning/?cid=STELPRD3847418>

- 04 The Sequoia National Forest provides high-quality hunting and fishing opportunities. Habitat for nonnative fish and game species is managed in locations and ways that do not pose substantial risk to native species, while still contributing to economies of local communities.
- 05 Residents and visitors have ample opportunities to experience, appreciate, and learn about the Sequoia National Forest's wildlife, fish, and plant resources.

**Goals (SPEC-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Communicate, collaborate, and cooperate with other agencies, Tribes, partners, and private landowners to encourage resource protection and restoration of ecological conditions that benefit wildlife, fish, and plants across ownership boundaries.
- 02 Collaborate with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife to consider potential disturbance factors to deer and to consider habitat management opportunities.
- 03 Work with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife (following the memoranda of understanding) and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to restore and maintain essential habitat for at-risk species and implement other recovery actions according to species recovery plans.
- 04 Coordinate with State and Federal agencies and other partners to provide education materials and best management practices information for the public and permittees to limit the potential spread of disease to caves and mines used by bats.
- 05 Coordinate with local, State, and Federal law enforcement and other agencies to remove and remediate poisonous substances and pesticides associated with marijuana cultivation in the wildland.
- 06 Coordinate with adjacent landowners to modify open pipes and other potential wildlife traps to reduce wildlife mortality.

**Standard (SPEC-FW-STD)**

- 01 Where pesticide applications are proposed within 500 feet of known occupied sites for at-risk amphibian species, design applications to avoid adverse effects to individuals and their habitats.

**Guidelines (SPEC-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Design features, mitigation, and project timing considerations should be incorporated into projects that may affect habitat for at-risk species where they occur to minimize impacts to ecological conditions that provide for the persistence of at-risk species.
- 02 Known nest, roost, rest, or den trees used by at-risk species, including surrounding trees that provide beneficial thermal or predatory protection, should not be purposefully removed, except for the reasonably unavoidable removal of hazard trees and as required to meet other State or Federal regulatory requirements.
- 03 To minimize disturbance to deer breeding and fawning, vegetation treatments should include minimization actions developed in coordination with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife in key summer range areas from May 15 through July 15, and during rutting season in key winter range areas from November 15 through January 1 (refer to most current California Department of Fish and Wildlife deer range maps).



- 04 Habitat management objectives and nonhabitat recovery actions from approved recovery plans should be incorporated, if appropriate, in the design of projects that will occur within federally listed species habitat to contribute to recovery of the species.
- 05 Habitat management objectives or goals from approved conservation strategies or agreements should be incorporated, if appropriate, in the design of projects that will occur within at-risk species habitat.
- 06 Water developments (such as a diversion or well) should be avoided near streams, seeps, and springs where there is high risk of dewatering aquatic and riparian habitats where at-risk species occur.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Incorporate the conservation of at-risk species into all program areas at appropriate times and scales, including but not limited to recreation, fire and fuels, vegetation management, minerals, range, engineering, facilities, and special uses.
- Consider agency guidance (e.g., interim management direction, conservation assessments, conservation strategies, and species management guides) to minimize adverse impacts to at-risk species during planning and implementation of management activities.
- Work at reducing human-caused mortalities associated with illegal marijuana growing and rodenticide use, road-related mortalities, and mortalities associated with water pipes and tanks.
- Preferentially retain groups and clumps of large trees, snags, and downed logs along forest edges to provide habitat and roost sites for wildlife species, such as small mammals, cavity-nesting birds, and tree-dwelling bats.

### Bats

#### Desired Conditions (SPEC-BAT-DC)

- 01 Caves and cave-like habitats provide the ecological conditions to support at-risk bat populations and are free from human-introduced diseases.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Consider installing bat gates at the entrances of caves and mines or restricting access by other means to protect known bat hibernacula or maternity colonies that may be adversely affected by recreational, management, or other activities.
- Follow best available guidance for white-nose syndrome decontamination protocols to minimize the spread of the fungus known to cause white-nose syndrome, for activities and authorizations with potential to enter subterranean or cave-like habitats. Educate recreational caving users to consider whether caving equipment and clothing has been exposed to the fungus causing white-nose syndrome from other sites and encourage taking appropriate prevention measures.

### Bighorn Sheep

#### Desired Conditions (SPEC-SHP-DC)

- 01 An adequate amount of suitable habitat supports persistent populations of bighorn sheep. These habitat patches include unforested openings supporting productive plant communities

with a variety of forage species in and near adequate steep rocky escape terrain throughout the elevational range of the species. These areas meet different seasonal needs for each sex for feeding, night beds, birthing sites, lamb rearing, and migration routes between suitable habitat patches.

- 02 The risk of disease transmission from domestic sheep and goats to bighorn sheep (based upon the best available risk assessment model) is reduced to the maximum extent practicable.

#### Goal (SPEC-SHP-GOAL)

- 01 Coordinate with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and adjacent national forests to conduct a risk assessment of pack goat use on National Forest System lands and develop mitigation strategies to manage the risk of disease transmission, if needed.

#### Suitability (SPEC-SHP-SUIT)

- 01 Domestic sheep or goats, including pack goats, are not suitable within the high-risk area of disease transmission to Sierra Nevada bighorn sheep, as identified in the most recent bighorn sheep risk assessment, unless the risk can be mitigated.

#### Standards (SPEC-SHP-STD)

- 01 Do not allow domestic sheep or goat grazing or pack goat use adjacent to bighorn sheep populations where relevant bighorn sheep risk assessment models show there is a high risk of contact and spread of disease, unless risks can be adequately mitigated.
- 02 Manage recreation, or other disturbances, where research has found it to cause Sierra Nevada bighorn sheep to avoid important habitat as described in the Sierra Nevada Bighorn Sheep Recovery Plan or other guidance from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

#### Potential Management Approach

- If reintroduced bighorn sheep establish themselves in drainages outside the reintroduction sites, take advantage of opportunities to extend bighorn sheep range, consistent with other resource activities.

### Fisher

The habitat used by fisher has been categorized and defined in the most current version of the Southern Sierra Nevada Fisher Conservation Strategy.<sup>9</sup> This plan tiers to those definitions, with some plan components applying to each habitat category, including fisher linkage or connectivity areas, known fisher den clusters, and categories of fisher habitat as described below.

Fisher are wide-ranging and elusive forest carnivores whose life history and habitat use patterns make them difficult to detect. Identifying denning locations requires intensive efforts such as trapping animals and using radio-collars or other tracking devices; consequently, specific fisher denning locations are most often unknown. This Forest Plan direction focuses primarily on fisher

---

<sup>9</sup> The Southern Sierra Fisher Conservation Strategy is expected to be periodically updated as new information becomes available. For example, in February 2020, Interim Recommendations to the Strategy were released pending an update to the conservation strategy temporarily replacing modeled fisher habitat with habitat defined by California Wildlife Habitat Relationship habitat type, size, and canopy classes. Regional guidance may be issued that further directs implementation of specific recommendations.

habitat conservation and management, both for denning habitat and connectivity of fisher habitat across the landscape.

While there are historic den locations on the Sequoia National Forest from tracking studies over two decades ago, there have been no recent research studies to identify den sites on the plan area of the Sequoia National Forest. As a result, there are no known locations of fisher dens on the Sequoia National Forest at this time. However, non-invasive regional monitoring surveys have identified the presence of female fisher throughout the Sequoia National Forest including the atypical habitat being used by fisher on the Kern Plateau. These surveys indicate that female fisher are using different habitats in that area; therefore, slightly modified habitat definitions have been provided for the Kern Plateau region.

Fisher suitable habitat consists of potential denning habitat and foraging habitat at elevations generally from 3,300 to 8,000 feet, extending up to approximately 9,000 feet on the Kern Plateau, or based on site-specific information. Fisher potential denning habitat is the combination of both high-quality denning habitat and other denning habitat with the potential to support denning either currently or in the future, given continued stand development. Fisher habitat models that include not only predictive vegetation characteristics, but also abiotic factors (like climate) that are closely linked to fisher habitat selection, represent a more refined approach to mapping fisher suitable habitat classes. Where available, more site-specific fisher habitat models may be used to identify fisher habitat, instead of the CWHR habitat descriptions provided below.

High-quality denning habitat is the area most likely to contain den sites and consists of:

- CWHR types: Eastside pine, Jeffrey pine, montane hardwood-conifer, montane hardwood, montane riparian, ponderosa pine, Sierran mixed conifer, or white fir
- CWHR sizes and density classes: 5D and 6

Potential denning habitat consists of all high-quality denning habitat and additional areas (other denning habitat) that have the potential to support denning and fisher reproduction including:

- CWHR types: The same as listed for high-quality denning habitat, PLUS red fir and lodgepole pine only for Kern Plateau Area
- CWHR sizes and density classes: 4D and 5M

Suitable habitat includes all the potential denning habitat (which includes high-quality denning habitat) as well as additional habitat that supports foraging including:

- CWHR types: The same as listed for high-quality denning habitat **PLUS** red fir and lodgepole pine
- CWHR sizes and density classes: 4M (and all size and density classes of potential denning habitat in red fir and lodgepole pine)

Linkage areas represent large areas that connect fisher core areas identified in the Fisher Conservation Strategy. Key connectivity areas represent the existing suitable habitat within the linkage area. Key travel routes are areas that connect patches of high-quality or other denning habitat, especially along riparian corridors and on north-facing slopes.

In addition to fisher habitat management direction, where den locations have been identified, this Plan also provides plan components to manage the areas around known den locations, using den clusters and den buffers. Den clusters represent the core area used by a female fisher during a

single breeding season to move her kits between den trees. Den clusters are the area most sensitive to disturbance and where alteration of habitat elements is most likely to affect breeding behavior and success. Unless better defined in current regional guidance, fisher den clusters are 60 acres in size. Known den clusters are managed as such, as long as habitat meets the criteria for high-quality denning habitat, or for 5 years following known fisher use of a den, whichever is longer.

Den clusters are identified around known fisher den structures and include elements such as:

- Areas of higher stand density and some individual stands with stand density index greater than 400;
- Tree stand quadratic mean diameter greater than 24 inches;
- Greater than 60 percent overstory cover;
- Abundant black oaks, especially large black oaks greater than 24 inches in diameter at breast height; and
- Large snags greater than 35 inches in diameter at breast height.

Den buffers consist of additional potential denning habitat surrounding fisher den clusters where disturbance could affect fisher behavior and reproduction. Den buffers are areas 310 acres surrounding the den cluster (for a total area of 370 acres), unless better defined in current regional guidance.

Because of the need to ensure firefighter safety, many of the management constraints for fisher do not apply within community buffers. These exceptions are explained in the plan components themselves. See the fire section for more information on community buffers and strategic fire management zones.

#### Desired Conditions (SPEC-FSHR-DC)

- 01 Outside of community buffers (see community wildfire protection zone guidelines FIRE-CWPZ-GDL), essential fisher habitat elements, including high-quality denning habitat, are common and well distributed throughout the fisher's range. Elements include large living and dead trees, especially pines and oaks where feasible, and structures used by fishers for resting and denning such as cavities and deformities.
- 02 Black oaks are well distributed within mixed-conifer and conifer-hardwood stands throughout the fisher's range. Most trees are in good condition and the number of large oaks is increasing.
- 03 Fisher potential denning habitat, especially high-quality denning habitat, is well distributed throughout the fishers' range, and occurs in ecologically sustainable and resilient locations. Areas likely to be used by breeding fisher are protected from disturbance that could cause breeding failure.
- 04 High-quality fisher denning habitat is dominated by clumps of trees with greater than 60 percent canopy cover, areas with multi-story canopy conditions, and abundant ground cover and coarse woody debris. The levels of snags and down logs are toward the upper end of the range described in the individual vegetation type desired conditions, distributed in an irregular patchwork. It contains patches with large trees or snags, often in clumps that serve as denning features surrounded by sufficient understory to provide cover for denning females.

Outside of these patches, large trees and understory are distributed in a fine-scale patchwork that provides cover and reduces the risk of widespread high-severity fire.

- 05 Fisher potential denning habitat contains clumps of medium to large trees in drainages and on north slopes that include elements of damage and deformity. The landscape contains many of the features characteristic of high-quality denning habitat but is more resistant to large-scale disturbances.
- 06 Fisher suitable habitat contains many large trees and snags, especially those with structural deformities or decadence. Habitat in drainages, swales, and canyon bottoms and on north- and east-facing slopes contains patches of multi-storied canopy conditions, including some shade-tolerant understory trees. Patches are characterized by large tree clumps with gaps between clumps. Stand densities are variable, supporting multiple-age and size classes in forested habitats that are heterogeneous across the landscape and resilient to stressors like fire and climate. Fine-scale patches of shrubs, understory vegetation, and open areas provide habitat heterogeneity, increase landscape resilience, support fisher prey, and fisher hiding cover. These fine-scale patch sizes average less than 0.5 acre and are consistent with individual vegetation type desired conditions at the landscape scale.
- 07 Fisher linkage and key connectivity areas provide connectivity between remaining large patches of suitable habitat. Fisher linkage areas support patchy vegetation with some moderate to dense tree canopy cover (greater than 40 percent; 60 percent preferred) where site conditions allow, such as along riparian corridors, or shrub cover where forest cover is inadequate. Fisher linkage areas have minimal impediments or barriers to fisher movement, allowing fishers to disperse and maintain genetic diversity within and among subpopulations.
- 08 Fisher mortality occurs at natural rates with natural seasonal patterns, is not inflated by human activities in the forest, and does not prevent fisher population growth.

#### Goal (SPEC-FSHR-GOAL)

- 01 Coordinate with the county roads departments, California Department of Transportation (CalTrans), and other agencies to evaluate opportunities to reduce the rate of fishers hit by vehicles.
- 02 Work cooperatively with researchers and other partners to design fuelbreak systems that provide sufficient habitat connectivity for fisher, while ensuring fuelbreak effectiveness for minimizing the spread rate and intensity of wildfires.

#### Standard (SPEC-FSHR-STD)

- 01 Within known fisher den clusters, retain habitat quality in suitable fisher habitat:
  - a When treatment is necessary, focus on reducing surface and ladder fuels in a patchy pattern, through hand treatments and prescribed fire.
  - b Within treated units that are CWHR 4M, 4D, 5M, 5D, or 6, do not decrease the existing CWHR size or canopy class.
  - c Retain conifer snags greater than 35 inches dbh, and hardwood snags greater than 27 inches dbh and those that have den tree characteristics described in regional guidance documents.

- d Where present, retain multistory conditions in stands with canopy greater than 60 percent.
- e Construct no new permanent or temporary roads.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers**

**Guidelines (SPEC-FSHR-GDL)**

- 01 To increase habitat sustainability while minimizing short-term habitat impacts, vegetation management activities in fisher potential denning habitat should be designed to maintain habitat quality in larger blocks (greater than 25 acres), especially in high-quality denning habitat; while achieving fuels objectives, increasing habitat resiliency, and increasing average tree size.
- a Within high-quality denning habitat, where possible limit vegetation management to patchy treatment of surface and ladder fuels to achieve fuels objectives and reduce fuel continuity, while still meeting high-quality denning habitat classification criteria and:
    - i. Do not decrease the existing CWHR size or canopy class.
    - ii. Retain conifer snags greater than 35 inches dbh, and hardwood snags greater than 27 inches dbh and those that have den tree characteristics described in regional guidance documents (except where a safety hazard).
    - iii. Where present, retain multistory conditions in stands with canopy greater than 60 percent.
  - b Within potential denning habitat (which includes high-quality denning habitat and other denning habitat), if habitat quality reduction is necessary while achieving fuels objectives, increasing habitat resilience and average tree size:
    - i. High-quality denning habitat must still meet potential denning habitat criteria post treatment; similarly, other denning habitat must still meet suitable habitat criteria post treatment.
    - ii. Habitat quality reduction is limited to no more than 50 percent of the potential denning habitat available within the immediate fisher home-range-sized area.<sup>10</sup>
    - iii. Avoid reducing habitat quality in the largest patches of potential denning habitat within the home-range-sized area.

**Exceptions:**

**In community buffers, this guideline may be modified as necessary to meet safety objectives.**

**This guideline may be modified as specified in SPEC-FSHR-GDL 02 when constructing a fuelbreak where overlap with suitable fisher habitat is unavoidable.**

---

<sup>10</sup> Defined as approximately 2,500 acres that is delineated at the project level in consultation with U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to estimate a potential fisher home range, taking topography and surrounding vegetation structure into account.

- 02 When creating fuelbreaks and permanent linear features devoid of surface vegetation within suitable fisher habitat, to limit fragmentation of habitat, facilitate connectivity, and reduce the impact of predation on fisher, include the following design features, as feasible.
- a Do not create permanent linear features devoid of surface vegetation or screening cover in known den clusters, den buffers, or high-quality denning habitat, especially where they bisect patches of high-quality denning habitat greater than 25 acres, unless no feasible alternative exists.
  - b Do not create fuelbreaks in known den clusters or that would bisect patches of high-quality denning habitat greater than 25 acres. If fuelbreaks must intersect potential denning habitat, maintain at least 40 percent canopy cover in high-quality denning habitat, and at least 30 percent canopy cover in other denning habitat.
  - c Create crossing opportunities in saddles, drainages, and other areas of high likelihood of fisher crossing, at intervals and using techniques as recommended by best available science. Consider predator sight lines and nonflammable escape cover; apply mitigation techniques as recommended by best available science.
- 03 To minimize disturbance that may lead to breeding failure, assess all disturbance-producing management activities for the potential to disturb breeding fisher in the area. Apply a limited operating period prohibiting activities as listed below, to any known den clusters and buffers, and other appropriate areas of potential denning habitat determined by site-specific analysis and consultation with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (unless updated in regional guidance):
- a Prescribed burning from March 1 to May 1.
  - b Disturbance-producing vegetation management:
    - i. In den clusters and other appropriate areas of high-quality denning habitat from March 1 to July 1;
    - ii. In den buffers, outside of den clusters, and other appropriate areas of other denning habitat from March 1 to June 1.
  - c Other disturbance-producing management:
    - i. In den buffers, including den clusters, and other appropriate areas of potential denning habitat from March 1 to June 1.

The limited operating period may be modified or waived by the responsible official under the following circumstances:

1. For activities addressing public safety issues.
2. In community buffers, may be waived or modified for activities addressing public safety issues, or for planned fuels reduction activities.
3. May be waived if research, monitoring, or pre-project surveys document absence of denning fisher in that year.
4. If the waived action is unlikely to result in breeding disturbance considering the intensity, duration, timing, and specific location, with the following stipulations, as applicable, or in consultation with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service:

- a Minimize the number of disturbance-producing activities in potential denning habitat from March 15 to June 1 by, for example, focusing work only along primary roads or high traffic roads or near occupied human structures.
  - b In den buffers and other appropriate areas of potential denning habitat, for projects of limited scope or duration, disturbance-producing activities will not occur before May 1.
- 5. Waived or modified for prescribed burning in up to 10 percent of potential denning habitat per year per national forest where necessary to facilitate the benefits of using early season prescribed fire.
- 04 To reduce the risk of population-level fragmentation, when working in fisher key connectivity areas and/or fisher travel routes:
  - a Retain higher canopy cover in drainages, north-facing slopes, and riparian corridors where conditions permit.
  - b Avoid creating areas with less than 30 percent tree or shrub cover and devoid of other hiding structures that would completely sever a potential corridor.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Consider improving fisher connectivity where cover is lacking by retaining some brush piles or slash piles with characteristics such as:
  - a Large enough for fisher use, generally 10 feet by 15 feet in size.
  - b Containing at least two large-diameter logs.
  - c Containing large enough interstitial spaces for fisher to move and hide within the pile.
- Following large severe disturbances and in other deforested areas, consider identifying and managing some areas to serve as short-term corridors between existing habitat patches. Manage conifer restoration or reforestation on other areas to recover lost mature forest habitat:

#### *For short-term corridors that facilitate fisher movement across disturbed areas:*

- a Look for areas that can provide 40 to 60 percent total canopy (understory and overstory).
- b Consider managing shrub patches and leaving down logs to create corridors to allow movement between steppingstone patches such as unburned patches.
- c Consider leaving untreated areas greater than 100 yards wide where shrubs can grow, and snags can naturally fall to create complex cover to support fisher movement and hiding.

#### *For long-term corridors and restoration of mature forest conditions:*

- a Consider reforestation and recovery to provide potential habitat in shorter timeframes by restoring and managing conifers and hardwoods to develop future structure and composition consistent with natural range of variation.



- When conducting hazard tree removal near secondary roads and unpaved roads in fisher other denning habitat, where down logs or hiding cover is deficient, consider leaving all or portions of large-diameter logs for hiding cover in places where they are unlikely to be removed by fuelwood gatherers and where they won't impede planned prescribed burns or create excessive fuels near the road.
- Within fisher suitable habitat, consider remediating unneeded roads, off-highway vehicle trails, skid trails, and other linear openings with vegetation cover consistent with the vegetation type natural range of variation to recover lost vegetation cover connectivity and reduce pathways for fisher predators.
- To reduce the risk of disturbance to potentially breeding fisher, where possible, maintain activity noise comparable to existing ambient levels, especially before May 1, and do not generate noise at night.
- When treatments occur within fisher potential denning habitat, attempt to complete all adjacent and all associated mechanical activities in approximately 1-square-mile blocks within 5 years to reduce cumulative disturbance impacts. This excludes prescribed fire follow up treatments, which can occur later.

## Sierra Marten

### Desired Conditions (SPEC-SM-DC)

- 01 Risk of large high-severity fire is reduced from current conditions in marten suitable habitat.
- 02 Within marten suitable habitat, areas of moderate (40 to 60 percent) to high (greater than 60 percent) canopy cover composed primarily of large trees provide habitat connectivity in key habitat corridors such as canyon bottoms and drainages to facilitate movement between patches of dense forest at the landscape scale.
- 03 Marten habitat is well-distributed throughout the marten's range, providing for foraging, denning, and resting habitat, and movement across large landscapes.

### Guideline (SPEC-SM-GDL)

- 01 To provide essential habitat features for marten persistence, within suitable habitat, strategically retain overtopping and multi-storied canopy conditions including understory trees, especially in drainages, swales, and canyon bottoms and on north- and east-facing slopes.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

### Potential Management Approach

- Where appropriate, consider maintaining or increasing understory heterogeneity in marten denning habitat to promote hiding cover such as shrub patches, coarse woody debris, and slash piles following vegetation treatments. Design projects to have non-linear edges.

## California Spotted Owl

A central goal of this plan is to improve the overall resilience of forest vegetation types relative to stressors including altered fire regimes and drought, for the long-term benefit of the ecosystems and the species found therein. Refer to relevant desired conditions and other plan content in TERR-FW, TERR-MONT, TERR-DMC, TERR-MMC (or relevant forest type), TERR-OLD, SPEC-FW, MA-WHMA, and specifically TERR-MONT-DC 01, all of which apply within California spotted owl territories. In some cases, territories may span both TERR-MMC (moist mixed conifer) and TERR-DMC (dry mixed conifer). Where territories comprise a mixture of dry and moist mixed conifer, the predominant vegetation type will be determined for each territory using criteria in appendix H.

Regarding habitat for California spotted owl, the goal is to move Sierra Nevada forests as a whole toward the natural range of variation where there would be an abundance of resilient and dynamic owl nesting, roosting, and foraging habitat distributed across the landscape, and having specific management constraints in spotted owl territories would no longer be necessary. In the interim, however, management constraints within protected activity centers and territories are an important component of a comprehensive approach that considers both near- and long-term needs of the species.

Plan components for California spotted owl apply either to protected activity centers or territories. Protected activity centers are intended to meet the specific habitat needs that support successful reproduction of breeding owls. Territories, which contain protected activity centers, are areas defended by the resident pair of owls from other owls of the same species and include foraging and other important habitat. Desired conditions for protected activity centers and territories align with both the near-term need for high-quality nesting and roosting habitat, and increased resilience and sustainability of this habitat into the future. Given the role vegetation management plays in increasing forest resilience at the landscape scale, vegetation management that does not reduce spotted owl habitat quality is encouraged within and around owl territories and, if necessary, in protected activity centers. In some instances, vegetation management that may reduce spotted owl habitat quality in the near term may be necessary to preserve long-term sustainability of spotted owl habitat.

Because of the need to protect human safety, some plan components include exceptions to allow the constraints to be modified to meet safety objectives within community buffers. Some plan components also include exceptions to allow the constraints to be modified to meet safety objectives within the community wildfire protection zone, where fire risk is greatest and there is a need for fuel treatments within and near communities. In some cases, these exceptions apply to the overlap of the territory inclusive of the protected activity center and in other cases the exceptions apply only to the portion of the territory outside of the protected activity center. Plan components specify when and where exceptions apply. See the fire section for more on community buffers and strategic fire management zones.

### **Terminology used in California spotted owl plan content<sup>11</sup>**

**Large Trees** are defined as those equal to or greater than 30 inches diameter at breast height.

---

<sup>11</sup> Definitions set forth here are solely for the purposes of interpreting this section of this land management plan and should not be considered standard agency definitions in other contexts.

**Very Large Trees** are defined as those equal to or greater than 36 inches diameter at breast height.

**Gaps** are defined as forest openings created by mechanical treatments with less than 10 percent tree cover, in various shapes and intermixed with groups of trees.

**Small gaps** are less than 0.25 acre in size, and

**Medium gaps** range between 0.25 and 1.25 acres.

**Nesting and roosting habitat** is defined in this plan based largely on the CWHR classification system, which is currently the best and only consistent vegetation information available across the range of California spotted owl. At the project level, and where available, site-specific vegetation data and other finer scale information such as abiotic parameters will be considered. Where better site-specific information and/or updated habitat models are available, those datasets should be used, and the habitat definitions below may be modified.

**Nest or roost habitat of unknown occupancy** is a contiguous patch of at least 300 acres of highest quality or best available nesting and roosting habitat not overlapping with known territories and not surveyed during the prior three years.

**Highest quality nesting and roosting habitat** for California spotted owl is defined by areas including all of the following:

- Forests within CWHR classes 6, 5D, 5M;
- Trees in the dominant and co-dominant crown classes averaging 24 inches dbh or greater and including many large/tall trees (greater than 30 inches dbh and/or 150 feet tall) and some very large trees;
- High (greater than 60 percent) or moderately high (50 to 59 percent) canopy cover with areas greater than 70 percent, including hardwoods;
- Two or more tree canopy layers; and
- Contains some very large snags greater than 45 inches in diameter and snags and down woody material levels on the high end of the range described in terrestrial vegetation desired conditions for the forest type.

**Best available nesting and roosting habitat** may be important where highest quality nesting and roosting habitat is unavailable or scarce because the best available habitat may be providing conditions that support current spotted owl reproduction, in the absence of higher quality habitat. Components a through c are the most critical components, particularly the very large remnant trees described in a.

- a. If there are limited areas of CWHR classes 6, 5D, 5M, include best available areas of 4D or 4M with very large remnant trees (prioritize retention of 4D ahead of 4M);
- b. Trees in the dominant and co-dominant crown classes averaging 24 inches diameter or greater and including some large trees;
- c. High (greater than 60 percent) or moderately high (50 to 59 percent) canopy cover, including hardwoods, or moderate canopy cover (40 to 49 percent) in trees greater than 24 inches dbh where higher canopy cover is not available;
- d. Two or more tree canopy layers; and

- e. Contains some very large snags greater than 45 inches in diameter and medium to large snags and down woody materials levels on the moderate to high end of the range described in terrestrial vegetation desired conditions for the forest type.

**Management activities that maintain or improve habitat quality in the highest quality and best available nesting and roosting habitat would:**

- Retain existing CWHR canopy cover class (e.g., do not reduce 5D to 5M);
- Retain clumps of the largest available trees greater than 24 inches dbh; and
- Retain at least two canopy layers at the stand/patch scale in areas where large trees occur.

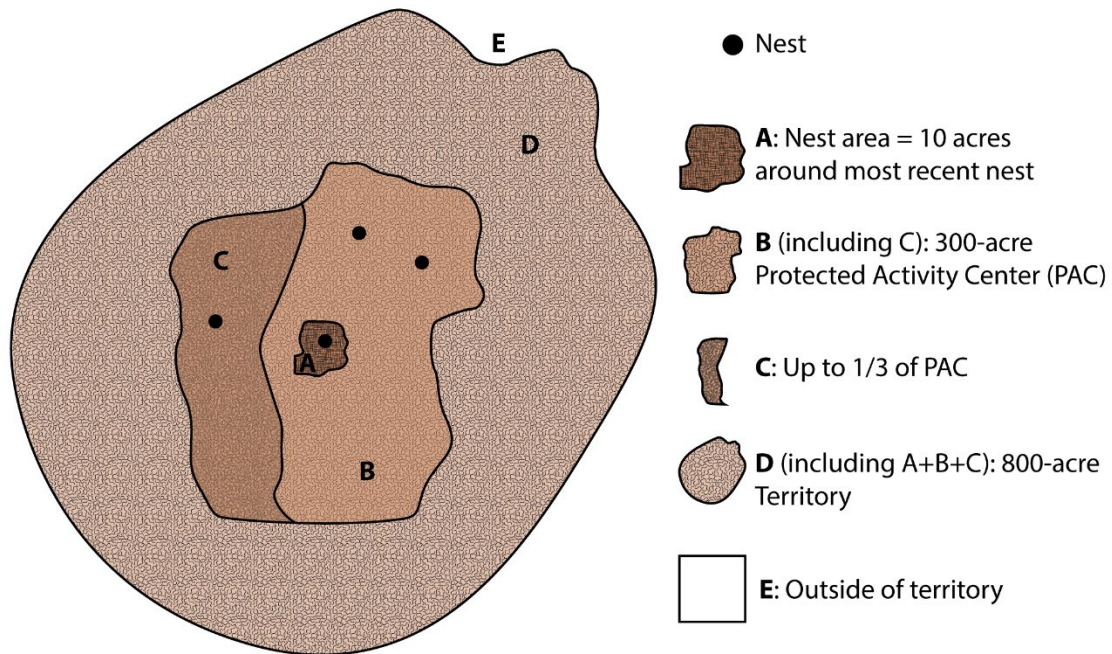
**California spotted owl protected activity centers** are defined by the following characteristics:

- National Forest System lands surrounding territorial owl pairs based on a documented nest site; recent roost site if nest location is unknown; or central point of repeated daytime detections when neither nest nor roost locations are known.
- 300 acres of nesting and roosting habitat in as compact a unit as possible, including all the elements (a through e) described above under highest quality nesting and roosting habitat (preferred) or, if necessary, areas including at least the elements a through c listed above under best available nesting and roosting habitat.
- Includes the most sustainable high-quality nesting and roosting habitat but may also include some patches of high-quality habitat outside the natural range of variation that is unsustainable in the long term but currently meeting near-term habitat needs to support reproductive success and/or the most sustainable best available habitat.

**California spotted owl territories** are defined by the following characteristics:

- An 800-acre circle, which includes the 300-acre protected activity center, surrounding territorial owls based on a documented nest site or roost site if nest location is unknown or central point of repeated daytime detections when neither nest nor roost locations are known.
  - ♦ Territory boundaries may be adjusted to be non-circular, as needed, to include the most sustainable areas of high-quality habitat and exclude areas less likely to support suitable habitat.
- Contains diverse structural and seral conditions to facilitate nesting, roosting, and foraging.
- May overlap adjacent territories.
- Territories are established and retired together with protected activity centers.

## California Spotted Owl Territories



**Figure 10. Example of mapped California spotted owl protected activity center (PAC) and territory. Letters in the figure also appear below in table 8, which summarizes key constraints from plan components relevant to vegetation management in California spotted owl protected activity centers and territories.**

**Table 8. Key constraints from plan components relevant to vegetation management, within and outside California spotted owl territories.**  
**Letters corresponding to locations in figure 10 (e.g., A, B+C) are noted in parentheses.**

Location (from figure 10)	Mechanical treatments must maintain or improve habitat quality within: <u>Highest quality nesting and roosting habitat</u>	Mechanical treatments must maintain or improve habitat quality within: <u>Best available nesting and roosting habitat</u>	Creation of small and medium gaps allowed?	Retain connected areas of moderate and high canopy cover with most recent nest
10-acre nest (A)	Yes SPEC-CSO-STD 02, SPEC-FW-GDL 02	Yes SPEC-CSO-STD 02, SPEC-FW-GDL 02	No SPEC-CSO-STD 02, SPEC-FW-GDL 02	Yes SPEC-CSO-STD 02 and SPEC-CSO-GDL-02, SPEC-FW-GDL 02
300-acre PAC (B & C)	Yes SPEC-CSO-STD 02	Yes, in at least 2/3 of PAC, treatments needed to improve resilience objectives may reduce near-term habitat quality in up to 1/3 of PAC <i>outside of</i> highest quality nesting and roosting habitat. (C) SPEC-CSO-STD 02	Small gaps: rare (no more than 5% of a stand)  Medium gaps: No SPEC-CSO-STD 02	Yes, exceptions allow modification as needed to meet safety objectives in community buffers and fuel breaks. SPEC-CSO-STD 02 and SPEC-CSO-GDL-01
500-acre portion of territory - outside of PAC (D)	Depends on whether desired condition (SPEC-CSO-DC-02) has been met. Within territories but outside of PACs, treatments that reduce habitat quality in nesting and roosting habitat are allowed if this desired condition for territory has been met. If the desired condition has not been met, all highest quality nesting and roosting habitat shall be maintained wherever it exists in territory. Treatments are designed to support achievement of SPEC-CSO-DC-02. And SPEC-CSO-STD 03	Depends on pair occupancy. If there is no pair, then there is no requirement to maintain habitat quality outside of highest quality nesting and roosting habitat. If a pair is occupying the territory <b>and</b> there is not sufficient highest quality nesting and roosting habitat to meet desired condition SPEC-CSO-DC 02, maintain habitat quality in the best available nesting and roosting habitat to support its attainment. SPEC-CSO-DC-02. And SPEC-CSO-STD 03	Yes. Desired Conditions for openings at the territory scale are about the same as at the landscape scale. The proportion of the territory outside of the PAC with canopy gaps would be about 20-30%, with higher percentages of openings on drier sites. SPEC-CSO-STD 04	Retention of connected areas with moderate and high canopy cover should target key habitat corridors such as canyon bottoms and drainages. TERR-OLD-DC-02, SPEC-CSO-STD-03 and 04, SPEC-CSO-GDL-04
Outside territory (E)	No. Treatments are guided by desired conditions and constrained by standards and guidelines for terrestrial vegetation SPEC-CSO-DC 03. TERR-FW-STD-01, All TERR-FW content, relevant forest type content, and WHMA content for areas in WHMA	No. Treatments are guided by desired conditions and constrained by standards and guidelines for terrestrial vegetation. SPEC-CSO-DC 03. TERR-FW-STD-01, All TERR-FW content, relevant forest type content, and WHMA content for areas in WHMA	Yes. Treatments are guided by desired conditions for terrestrial vegetation. SPEC-CSO-DC 03. All TERR-FW content, relevant forest type content, and WHMA content for areas in WHMA	Treatments guided by desired conditions. Retention of connected areas with moderate and high canopy cover should target key habitat corridors such as canyon bottoms and drainages SPEC-CSO-DC 03. TERR-OLD-DC-02, TERR-OLD-GDL-01, TERR-MONT-DC 01, TERR-MMC-DC 02 in Moist Mixed Conifer Forests

### Desired Conditions (SPEC-CSO-DC)

- 01 Protected activity centers provide high-quality nesting and roosting habitat that contributes to successful reproduction of California spotted owls. Protected activity centers encompass habitat that is essential for nesting and roosting, as defined by the following characteristics: The habitat has a high canopy cover (including large clumps of more than 70 percent canopy cover), with multiple layers of tree canopy, and many large trees, very large trees, and snags (including some greater than 45 inches in diameter). Basal area and tree density tend toward the upper end of the range of desired conditions for the relevant forest vegetation type. Large tree density, snag density, and coarse woody debris align with the old-forest desired conditions for the relevant forest vegetation type.
- 02 At least 40 percent (for dry vegetation type and site conditions) or at least 60 percent (for moist vegetation type and site conditions) of each California spotted owl territory consists of the highest quality nesting and roosting habitat (see definition above) in large enough patches to provide interior stand conditions, generally 1 to 2 tree heights from an edge. The remainder of the territory consists of a diversity of many different structure and canopy classes (aligned with desired conditions for terrestrial vegetation type). For areas where multiple territories comprise over 75 percent of a watershed (typically a HUC 8 unit and greater than 10,000 acres in size), at least 30 to 50 percent (depending on the vegetation type and site conditions) of the watershed consists of the highest quality nesting and roosting habitat and the remainder of the territory consists of a diversity of many different structure and canopy classes (aligned with desired conditions for terrestrial vegetation type).
- 03 The Sequoia National Forest supports conditions for a sustainable network of dynamic, resilient, and widely distributed California spotted owl nest or roost sites across heterogeneous landscapes.

### Suitability (SPEC-CSO-SUIT)

- 01 California spotted owl protected activity centers are not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest may be authorized for safety and restoration toward desired conditions.

### Standards (SPEC-CSO-STD)

- 01 For vegetation treatments that maintain or improve habitat quality in California spotted owl nesting and roosting habitat outside of protected activity centers, pre-implementation surveys are not required. Before authorizing mechanical vegetation treatments within existing protected activity centers or vegetation treatments that may reduce near-term habitat quality in California spotted owl nest or roost habitat of unknown occupancy, follow current guidance for the Pacific Southwest Region to:
  - determine occupancy status;
  - identify owl nest sites (where nest location is not known, the most recent daytime roost); and
  - delineate new or modify existing protected activity centers and territories, as necessary, within the project area.
- 02 In California spotted owl protected activity centers, all management activities must maintain or improve habitat quality in the highest quality nesting and roosting habitat. Where necessary to increase long-term resilience, vegetation treatments that may reduce near-term habitat quality may be authorized in up to 100 acres outside of the highest quality nesting and roosting habitat. Throughout protected activity centers all vegetation treatments must:



- retain the largest and oldest trees; known nest trees; and other large trees and snags with cavities, deformities, broken tops, or other habitat features of value to old-forest species;
- retain connected areas of moderate (at least 40 percent) and high (at least 60 percent) canopy cover between the known nest site (if nest site is not known, use the most recent known roost site) and areas in the remainder of the protected activity center;
- avoid mechanical treatments within a 10-acre area surrounding the most recent known nest;
- avoid creating new landings, new temporary roads, or canopy gaps larger than 0.25 acre;
- increase the quadratic mean diameter of trees at the protected activity center scale; and
- maintain the average canopy cover of the protected activity center above 50 percent.

**Exceptions:**

**In community buffers, this standard may be modified as necessary to meet safety objectives.**

**This standard may be modified as specified in SPEC-CSO-GDL 02 when constructing a fuelbreak where avoiding overlap with a protected activity center is not feasible.**

- 03 In California spotted owl territories that do not currently meet the territory desired condition (SPEC-CSO-DC-02), retain habitat quality in the highest quality nesting habitat wherever it exists throughout the territory. If this desired condition has been met, vegetation treatments to improve resilience and increase heterogeneity should maintain highest quality nesting and roosting habitat as identified in SPEC-CSO-DC-02. In territories where survey data indicate pair occupancy and DC-02 is not met, if retaining habitat quality in the highest quality nesting habitat is insufficient to achieve the desired condition, also retain habitat quality in the best available nesting and roosting habitat to the level described in the DC-02. Prioritize retention of best available nesting and roosting habitat in CWHR class 4D ahead of 4M.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

- 04 When mechanical treatments create canopy gaps within California spotted owl territories, but outside of protected activity centers, individual openings shall not exceed 1.25 acres (and should generally not exceed 0.5 acre) and shall not comprise more than 20 to 30 percent (as appropriate depending on the desired conditions for the terrestrial vegetation type and existing site conditions) of the total area in the territory. This includes openings created for the construction of landings or temporary roads (restricted to 0.57 mile or less).

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

- 05 Before authorizing vegetation treatments in California spotted owl territories affected by a large-scale, high-severity disturbance event, assess habitat conditions within a 1.5-mile radius of the most recent nest (where the nest is not known, the most recent daytime roost) to determine whether to modify or retire existing protected activity centers and territories following the 2019 Conservation Strategy for the California Spotted Owl in the Sierra Nevada, or more current guidance from the Pacific Southwest Region. If adequate suitable habitat remains, modify the boundary of the protected activity center to encompass the best remaining 300 acres of highest quality nesting and roosting habitat.

- 06 Existing protected activity centers and territories may not be retired unless loss of suitable habitat or long-term occupancy criteria are met as defined in the 2019 Conservation Strategy for the California Spotted Owl in the Sierra Nevada, or more current guidance for the Pacific Southwest Region.

**Guidelines (SPEC-CSO-GDL)**

- 01 To minimize potential impacts to California spotted owl reproductive success, vegetation treatments that may reduce habitat quality in the near term should be avoided in protected activity centers with the highest likely contribution to reproductive success, and otherwise prioritized as follows (from highest to lowest priority for treatment):

1. Currently unoccupied and historically occupied by territorial singles only.
2. Currently unoccupied and historically occupied by pairs.
3. Currently occupied by territorial singles.
4. Currently occupied by pairs.
5. Currently occupied by pairs and currently or recently reproductive.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

- 02 To limit fragmentation and maintain connectivity of nesting, roosting, and foraging habitat, construction of fuelbreaks should avoid intersecting with California spotted owl protected activity centers. Where avoiding overlap with a protected activity center is not feasible, creation of a fuelbreak should:
- avoid the 10 acres surrounding the most recent known nest site;
  - avoid existing highest quality nesting and roosting habitat unless on a ridgetop; and
  - maintain at least 40 percent overstory canopy cover and 10 percent understory cover in shaded fuelbreaks, whenever fuels and fire behavior objectives can be met with this level of vegetation retention.
- 03 To facilitate development of future nest sites, when conducting vegetation treatments in California spotted owl territories:
- promote growth of trees greater than 24 inches diameter at breast height and especially large trees greater than 30 inches in diameter, and
  - retain clumps or groups of trees greater than 24 inches diameter at breast height/100 feet tall, and especially trees greater than 30 inches diameter at breast height/150 feet tall, with canopy cover greater than 60 to 70 percent.
- 04 To promote habitat connectivity at the watershed scale, when conducting vegetation treatments in California spotted owl territories, retain connected areas of moderate (at least 40 percent) and high canopy cover (at least 60 percent) in large/tall trees.
- 05 To minimize loss or damage to known nest and roost trees, include mitigation measures when conducting prescribed fire in protected activity centers.
- 06 To minimize impacts to overstory canopy and provide conditions for continued use for nesting and roosting within protected activity centers, reduce fuel loads with thinning and/or prescribed burning to minimize the risk of high-severity fire and promote conditions that lead to lower intensity predicted fire effects (generally flame lengths averaging 4 to 6 feet).
- 07 To minimize the spatial extent of high-severity fire impacts on habitat in California spotted owl territories, when implementing prescribed fire in the portion of the territory outside of the protected activity center, limit the size of high-severity burn patches to generally not exceed 10 acres and to avoid exceeding 100 acres.

- 08 To minimize disturbance that may lead to breeding failure, during the breeding season (March 1 to August 15 or following current Pacific Southwest regional guidance) apply a limited operating period prohibiting:

- mechanical harvest within approximately 0.25 mile of the nest or known roost site;
- prescribed burning within 500 feet of the nest;
- discretionary low-level helicopter flights or hovering over nests; and
- discretionary landing of helicopters within 0.25 mile of the nest.

Where the location of a nest site within a protected activity center is unknown, apply the limited operating period to the entire protected activity center or determine the nest site location.

**Exceptions:**

**Does not apply in community buffers where they do not overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

**The limited operating period may be modified or waived by the responsible official under the following circumstances:**

- a) Waived if monitoring or surveys indicate that nesting owls are absent (refer to current Pacific Southwest regional guidance).
- b) Waived or modified for activities addressing imminent threats to life and property.
- c) Waived or modified for activities of limited scope and duration, if a biologist determines that such activity is unlikely to result in breeding disturbance based on the intensity, duration, timing, and specific location.
- d) The limited operating period buffer distance may be modified based upon a biologist's evaluation of the area needed to shield a nest site from disturbance considering topographic features, vegetation, or other screening.
- e) Waived or modified where necessary to facilitate mechanical treatments with high benefits to landscape resilience and where the disturbance risk to breeding owl pairs is relatively low. Limited to no more than 10 percent of protected activity centers treated on the Forest per year.
- f) Waived or modified for prescribed burning in up to 10 percent of protected activity centers per year per national forest where necessary to facilitate the benefits of using early season prescribed fire.

**Potential Management Approaches**

- If surveys indicate a protected activity center is occupied by a pair, treatment is necessary to promote resilience, and highest quality nesting and roosting habitat is lacking, design treatments to also maintain or improve best available nesting and roosting habitat within the protected activity center.
- When vegetation treatment is deemed necessary to improve resilience in a protected activity center occupied by a California spotted owl pair, monitor the effects of the treatment on vegetation attributes relative to desired conditions and on owl occupancy and reproduction. Seek collaboration with researchers to expand capacity and to provide for wider application of the results.

- Consider prioritizing treating protected activity centers with the highest wildfire risk in the community wildfire protection zones, such as on upper slopes or ridge tops or in canyons with large areas of chaparral below. Consider the risk of large high-intensity wildfire to clustered protected activity centers, degree of departure from desired conditions, and treatments that would increase overall resilience at the landscape scale.
- When practical based on existing conditions, use prescribed fire, alone or in combination with mechanical thinning, to restore forest vegetation within California spotted owl protected activity centers.

## Great Gray Owl

### Desired Conditions (SPEC-GGO-DC)

- 01 Habitat within great gray owl protected activity centers provide high-quality habitat for nesting and roosting that contributes to their successful reproduction. The habitat has forested areas with dense canopy cover, multiple layers, and many large trees and snags. Meadow habitat in protected activity centers supports a sufficient prey species population to provide a food source for great gray owls through the reproductive period and natural structures at the edges of meadows to provide opportunities for hunting perches.
- 02 Great gray owl territory habitat includes forested areas with upper natural range of variation target of large conifer snags or large live oaks.

### Guidelines (SPEC-GGO-GDL)

- 01 In meadow areas of great gray owl protected activity centers, manage to enhance habitat for prey species.
- 02 To minimize disturbance that may lead to breeding failure, during the nesting and breeding season (February 15 to August 15, or follow current Pacific Southwest regional guidance), apply a limited operating period of an active great gray owl nest stand (i.e., not during an inactive nesting year) prohibiting:
  - road construction or extensive heavy mechanized equipment within approximately 0.25 mile of the nest or known roost site;
  - power equipment such as chainsaws or pole pruners within 300 feet of the nest site or known roost site;
  - discretionary low-level helicopter flights over nests;
  - discretionary landing of helicopters within 0.25 mile of the nest; or
  - extensive hand tool activities, such as fire line construction for prescribed burning or trail construction, maintenance, or repair, within 300 feet of the nest site.

When the location of an active nest site within a protected activity center is unknown, apply the limited operating period to the protected activity center, or determine the nest stand location.

The limited operating period may be waived for projects of limited scope and duration, if a biologist determines chicks have fledged or that such projects are unlikely to result in breeding disturbance considering the intensity, duration, timing, and specific location of the project. If a biologist concludes that a nest site would be shielded from planned activities by topographic features that would minimize disturbance, the limited operating period buffer

distance may be reduced.

**Exception: Does not apply to community buffers where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

- 03 To provide habitat used by fledglings, retain or recruit pockets of dense canopy cover (greater than 65 percent) around nests and retain some low-hanging limbs, within 650 feet (200 meters) of a nest tree or activity center.

**Exceptions:**

**Does not apply to community buffers.**

**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zones where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

#### Potential Management Approaches

- When managing for and restoring meadow habitat, remove encroaching trees and create both hard edges (abrupt transition between forest and meadow), and soft edges (areas with a few scattered trees that soften the transition between meadow and forested stands), and provide for potential hunting perches along the edges.
- Vegetation treatments in great gray owl protected activity centers may include mechanical, prescribed fire, and hand treatments.
- To reduce the risk of great grey owl vehicle strikes, reduce low perching opportunities (less than 16 feet high) such as fence and snow posts along roadways adjacent to meadows likely to provide foraging habitat. Potential strategies to deter perching may include removing the low perch sites, installing perch deterring spikes, or increasing the height of perches to greater than 16 feet high. Prioritize efforts in areas with known great grey owl occupancy and meadows most likely to provide foraging habitat for great grey owls.

#### Northern Goshawk

##### Desired Conditions (SPEC-NG-DC)

- 01 Northern goshawk protected activity centers provide habitat conditions that support nesting and successful reproduction, including dense canopy cover with large trees and old-forest characteristics.

##### Guidelines (SPEC-NG-GDL)

- 01 To minimize disturbance that may lead to breeding failure, during the nesting and breeding season (February 15 to September 15 or follow current regional guidance), apply a limited operating period of an active nest site prohibiting:
- road construction or extensive heavy mechanized equipment within approximately 0.25 mile of the nest site, unless northern goshawks are not nesting
  - power equipment such as chainsaws or pole pruners within 300 feet of the nest site or known roost site;
  - discretionary low-level helicopter flights or hovering over nests;
  - discretionary landing of helicopters within 0.25 mile of the nest; or
  - extensive hand tool activities, such as fireline construction for prescribed burning or trail construction, maintenance, or repair, within 300 feet of the nest site.

When the location of an active nest site within a protected activity center is unknown, apply the limited operating period to the protected activity center, or determine the nest stand location.

The limited operating period may be waived for projects of limited scope and duration, if a biologist determines that such projects are unlikely to result in breeding disturbance considering the intensity, duration, timing, and specific location of the project. If a biologist concludes that a nest site would be shielded from planned activities by topographic features that would minimize disturbance, the limited operating period buffer distance may be modified.

Breeding season limited operating period restrictions may be waived, where necessary, to allow for use of early season prescribed fire in up to 5 percent of any northern goshawk protected activity centers per year on a national forest.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers where they do not overlap with wildlife habitat management areas.**

- 02 Use information on occupancy and resiliency (or departure from the natural range of variation) when prioritizing protected activity centers for treatment where treatment is deemed necessary.

Priority based on resilience:

1. Least resilient.
2. Moderately resilient but putting neighboring high-quality areas at risk.
3. Most resilient.

Priority based on occupancy:

1. Currently unoccupied and historically occupied by territorial singles only.
2. Currently unoccupied and historically occupied by pairs.
3. Currently occupied by territorial singles.
4. Currently occupied by pairs.
5. Currently or historically reproductive.

**Exceptions:**

**Does not apply to community buffers.**

**Does not apply to community wildfire protection zones where there is no overlap with the wildlife habitat management area.**

Potential Management Approach

- Vegetation treatments in goshawk protected activity centers may include mechanical, prescribed fire, and hand treatments.

## Willow Flycatcher

Standards (SPEC-WF-STD)

- 01 In willow flycatcher-occupied sites receiving late-season grazing, if habitat conditions are not supporting the willow flycatcher or are trending downward, modify or suspend grazing at those sites.
- 02 During allotment management planning or when authorizing livestock or pack stock use, determine occupancy of willow flycatcher in affected meadows larger than 15 acres that have

standing water on June 1 and a deciduous shrub component capable of providing willow flycatcher habitat, using established protocols.

- 03 In meadows with occupied willow flycatcher sites, allow only late-season grazing (after August 15) in the entire meadow. This standard may be waived if an interdisciplinary team together with the affected grazing permittee has developed and implemented a site-specific meadow management strategy. The strategy must focus on protecting the nest site and associated habitat during the breeding season and the long-term sustainability of suitable habitat at breeding sites. It may use a mix of management tools, including grazing systems, structural improvements, and other exclusion by management techniques to protect willow flycatcher habitat.

#### Potential Management Approach

- Consider pursuing habitat restoration opportunities in willow flycatcher historically occupied meadows.

### Golden Trout

#### Goal (SPEC-GT-GOAL)

- 01 Continue to coordinate and collaborate with California Department of Fish and Wildlife to implement and renew the California Golden Trout Conservation Assessment and Strategy.

#### Potential Management Approach

- Continue to implement and update the California Golden Trout Conservation Assessment and Strategy with cooperating agencies.

### Little Kern Golden Trout

#### Standard (SPEC-LKGT-STD)

- 01 In stream reaches within critical habitat for the Little Kern golden trout, limit stream bank disturbance from livestock to 10 percent of the occupied or essential habitat stream reach. Implement corrective action where stream bank disturbance limits have been exceeded.

### Additional Forestwide Components for At Risk Plant Species

At-risk plant species plan components are intended to mitigate risk to persistence from land management activities, and to provide guidance for addressing existing site-specific threats to these species while balancing their needs with ecological processes and other resource uses.

#### Standards (SPEC-PLANT-STD)

- 01 Design features, mitigation, and project timing considerations are incorporated into projects that may affect occupied habitat for at-risk species.
- 02 Avoid or mitigate impacts on known and unknown occurrences of at-risk plants and lichens that would limit their persistence or recovery in the plan area.
- 03 Use information that is current, accurate, and precise enough to avoid or mitigate impacts on at-risk plants and lichens when designing projects. If such information cannot be obtained, assume occupancy of the project area by one or more at-risk species within suitable habitat and apply resource protection measures to avoid or mitigate impacts throughout the project area.

To promote beneficial effects of fire and other disturbances on some at-risk plants and lichens, this standard does not apply to the following activities:

- The fire itself when conducting a prescribed under-burn.
- Temporary or light disturbance created by use of hand tools, such as construction of fireline with hand tools or hand piling or scattering of residual woody material. Only scatter residual woody materials when neutral or beneficial to at-risk plants and lichens.

#### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Develop and implement a consistent, systematic, biologically sound program for plant species of conservation concern and their habitat so that Federal listing does not occur.
- Incorporate the conservation of at-risk species into all program areas at appropriate times and scales, including but not limited to recreation, fire and fuels, vegetation management, minerals, range, engineering, and special uses.
- Gather necessary information early in the planning process to locate unknown occurrences and confirm known occurrences of at-risk plants and lichen to avoid or mitigate project impacts on these species (see SPEC-FW-GDL 01 and SPEC-PLANT-STD 03). This may include:
  - ♦ Pre-project surveys to locate, map, and record suitable habitat and occurrences of at-risk species.
  - ♦ Information from partners.
  - ♦ High resolution remote sensing data (accurate at the project scale).
  - ♦ High resolution soil, geology, and vegetation surveys (accurate at the project scale).
  - ♦ Existing records of at-risk plants and their habitat in Forest Service and other databases.
- Lower resolution imagery and older survey data may be useful for determining the likelihood of occurrence of at-risk species in the project area but is not adequate for avoidance or mitigation of impacts.
- Carry out pre-project surveys efficiently by combining efforts when possible, such as surveying for at-risk plants or special habitats while surveying for invasive species. Invasive species surveys are an essential element of an integrated pest management approach (see INV-FW-STD 03).
- Use the following example resource protection measures, or others as appropriate, to avoid or mitigate impacts on suitable habitat for at-risk plants and lichens (see SPEC-FW-GDL 01):
  - ♦ Do not construct new facilities in suitable habitat.
  - ♦ Do not construct new roads, landings, parking and equipment staging areas in suitable habitat.
  - ♦ Avoid road and trail maintenance during active growth and reproduction for at-risk species that occur along existing roads and trails.
  - ♦ Do not use meadows for landings, staging areas, or contractor camping.



- ◆ Following temporary disturbance in suitable habitat, seed with genetically appropriate native species.
- ◆ When conducting prescribed burning within suitable habitat, adjust timing and extent so that islands of suitable habitat are left unburned or lightly burned.
- ◆ When operating in suitable habitat, fell trees that present an imminent hazard to service workers or road traffic, but leave them in place. Lop and scatter branches if recommended by a fuels specialist.
- ◆ Time prescribed burns to avoid active growth and reproduction of at-risk plants unless the species is known to be resilient to in-season burning.

## **Invasive Species**

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading address reducing populations of invasive species and minimizing their impacts on native species and ecosystems. Invasive species on the Sequoia National Forest comprise all life forms including plants, animals, invertebrates, and fungi.

### **Desired Conditions (INV-FW-DC)**

- 01 Terrestrial and aquatic invasive species are controlled or eradicated when possible, and establishment of new populations is prevented.
- 02 The area affected by invasive species and introduction of new invasive species is minimized.

### **Objective (INV-FW-OBJ)**

- 01 Within 15 years of plan approval, take action to control nonnative invasive plant species on at least 800 acres.

### **Goals (INV-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Coordinate and cooperate with local, State, and Federal agencies and Tribes, and public utilities, to manage and control invasive and nonnative species.
- 02 Work with Tribes and public utilities to determine priority areas for weed prevention and control, especially focused on traditional gathering areas that are threatened by weed infestations. Consult with Tribes before using pesticides or herbicides that may affect traditional gathering.
- 03 Coordinate with research and other organizations to evaluate the potential effects of climate change on the spread of invasive and nonnative species.

### **Standards (INV-FW-STD)**

- 01 When working in waterbodies with known aquatic invasive species, clean equipment and vehicles before moving to other waterbodies, or follow procedures described in a Forest-approved invasive species management plan.
- 02 Hay, straw, and other crop-related forage or mulch products used for animal feed or bedding, soil stabilization land rehabilitation, or other purposes must be certified by California or Nevada and/or to the North American Invasive Species Management Association standards as being weed-free to prevent unintentional introduction of invasive species. If certified weed-

free products are not available, a local botanist will advise regarding sourcing of materials as well as approve materials prior to use.

- 03 Use an integrated pest management approach in planning and implementing all projects and activities.
- 04 When entering or exiting project sites, wash heavy equipment to prevent the spread of invasive species.

### **Guidelines (INV-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Projects should be designed to minimize invasive species spread by incorporating prevention and control measures into ongoing management or maintenance activities that involve ground disturbance, terrestrial or aquatic habitat alteration, or the possibility of spreading invasive species. When feasible, projects should include measures to use invasive species-free gravel, fill, and topsoil; and include follow-up inspections as needed and specified in regional or national strategies.
- 02 To the extent feasible, plant and seed materials used for revegetation, restoration, and rehabilitation projects should be native, genetically appropriate to the site, disease free, and capable of becoming established to restore natural species composition and ecosystem function.
- 03 Weed control and prevention measures should be included as necessary when issuing, amending, or reissuing permits, including but not limited to livestock grazing, special uses, and pack stock operator permits.
- 04 Vegetation management projects on lands outside of wilderness should include measures to minimize the risk of introducing nonnative invasive species into wilderness.

### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Work with Tribes to determine priority areas for weed prevention and control, especially focused on traditional gathering areas that are threatened by weed infestations.
- Develop a forestwide invasive plant management strategy, as conditions allow, that includes:
  - ♦ a treatment prioritization strategy for invasive plant species considering ecological impact, extent and location of populations, and effectiveness of available treatment methods;
  - ♦ management objectives for individual species or populations of species; and
  - ♦ other approaches such as public education and direct management.
- Focus treatment efforts on high-priority invasive species and infestations, while developing management goals for lower priority species and infestations. Prioritize areas such as wilderness, research natural areas, botanical areas, wild and scenic areas, and aquatic and riparian areas to maintain the integrity of native species and ecosystems. Prepare control and prevention plans for high-priority invasive species, which promote early detection of new populations and rapid management response as an effective approach to minimize spread.

## Fire

This section begins with general fire management direction that applies forestwide. It is followed by direction for four different strategic fire management zones that are based on wildfire risk across the Sequoia National Forest. Within all zones, active management through fuel reduction treatments such as thinning and prescribed fire reduces fuels and fire hazard while mitigating safety hazards for firefighters within all zones. Forest plan guidance aids wildland fire management decisions to meet the full range of forest plan objectives and use the most appropriate wildfire response within all the zones.

### Forestwide Components for Fire

#### Desired Conditions (FIRE-FW-DC)

- 01 Fire management activities minimize the risk of loss of life and damage to property or ecosystem function. Firefighter and public safety is the first priority in every fire management activity.
- 02 Fire management activities reduce fuel buildup, help maintain and protect habitat for a variety of species, reduce smoke from larger fires, provide added protection for communities and utility infrastructure, and restore fire on the landscape. These actions are also an integral part of achieving sustainable recreation, particularly by maintaining scenic attractiveness, integrity, and character.
- 03 Fire management uses an all-lands, risk-based approach in planning and decision-making, responsive to the latest fire and social sciences, and adaptable to rapidly changing conditions, including climate change. Wildfire management is coordinated with agencies and partners.
- 04 Wildland fires burn with a range of intensity, severity, and frequency that allow ecosystems to function in a healthy and sustainable manner. Wildland fire is understood as a necessary process, integral to the sustainability of fire-adapted ecosystems and is used as an effective restoration tool (see TERR-FW-DC related to fire).
- 05 The landscape is strategically compartmentalized by treated areas and natural features, which facilitates use of prescribed fire and wildfire to meet resource objectives for protecting values and resources.
- 06 The Sequoia National Forest staff contributes to increased awareness and understanding about wildfire risk among community leaders, service providers, homeowners, permittees, and Tribes who are invested in or adjacent to the Forest. This includes an understanding about the need to adapt communities, properties, and structures to wildfire while also recognizing that wildland fire is a needed ecological process.
- 07 Wildfire threat is reduced in areas where fuel conditions currently pose the highest risk to communities and community assets, such as powerlines, communication towers and developed recreation sites.
- 08 Education and enforcement have reduced the likelihood of wildfire starts from people.

#### Goals (FIRE-FW-GOAL)

- 01 Coordinate wildfire management with relevant State agencies, adjacent Federal agencies, and other partners, and include consideration of the net gains to the public.

- 02 Work with partners to plan restoration and fire management projects for large landscapes (subwatershed or larger) when and where possible to improve economic feasibility of restoration and effectiveness of changing the negative fire effects from large wildfires.
- 03 When wildfires affect identified areas of Tribal importance, communicate, and collaborate with Tribal leadership during fire incident management to identify and, to the extent practical, protect Tribal values and minimize impacts to resources or areas of Tribal importance.
- 04 Restore ecosystems to a more fire-resilient condition and lessen the threat of wildfire to communities.
- 05 Coordinate with other jurisdictions such as communities, Tribes, service providers, and Federal, State, county, and local entities regarding prevention, preparedness, planned activities, and responses to wildland fires. Notify those agencies about upcoming and ongoing fire season and any prescribed fire activity.
- 06 Help communities become more fire-adapted and improve their ability to withstand a fire without loss of life and property.
- 07 Work with partners and adjacent landowners to support or contribute toward defensible space as defined by California Public Resource Code 4291.

#### **Standards (FIRE-FW-STD)**

- 01 Fire management actions within research natural areas must be planned and carried out in consultation with the Sequoia research natural area coordinator and the fire resource advisor. Fire management actions in giant sequoia groves must be carried out in consultation with the fire resource advisor.
- 02 If fire management activities are required within designated wilderness areas, research natural areas, botanical areas, giant sequoia groves, or the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area.
  - Apply minimum impact strategies and tactics to manage wildland fire unless more direct attack is needed to protect life or property.
  - When possible, allow naturally ignited wildfires to function in their natural role.
  - In cases where fire may damage the ecological values for which a research natural area was established, take measures to exclude fire from the research natural area.

#### **Guidelines (FIRE-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Use naturally ignited and prescribed wildland fires to meet multiple resource management objectives where and when conditions permit, and risk is within acceptable limits.
- 02 When managing wildland fire (wildfire and prescribed fire), use a variety of fire management options, including hand and aerial ignitions, to achieve a mix of fire effects. When safe and feasible, limit extensive continuous areas of high-severity fire effects in old-forest habitat.
- 03 When managing wildland fire, allow fire to burn in riparian ecosystems when fire effects are expected to be within the natural range for the ecosystem to improve riparian ecosystem function.

- 04 Where possible during wildland fire management activities, locate incident bases, camps, helibases, staging areas, helispots and other centers for incident activities outside of riparian conservation areas to avoid impacts to aquatic- and riparian-dependent resources.
- 05 During wildfires, avoid fire management activities in special habitats (see Terrestrial section, chapter 2) and along the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail (see Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail section, chapter 3), except when necessary to protect life or property. This includes activities such as line construction, staging areas, safety zones, water drafting, and camps. When conducting fire management activities near special habitats or along the Trail, take extra measures to avoid spread of invasive plants and minimize impacts to the tread.
- 06 When conducting fire management activities, take appropriate measures to prevent the spread of invasive species.
- 07 When safe and feasible, to maintain breeding opportunities, protect highly valued known den and nest trees, snags, or logs used by at-risk species ahead of burn operations using techniques such as targeted burning, removing fuel from the base of trees, and providing direct protection.

#### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Prioritize fuel treatments in areas that pose the greatest threat to communities and highly valued resources and assets.
- Emphasize fuel reduction treatments in operationally strategic locations across the landscape.
- Where feasible and suitable, consider all available tools and methods to reduce vegetation buildup to lower the risk of unwanted wildfire, including grazing, mechanical treatment, prescribed fire, or wildfires managed to meet resource objectives.
- Integrate terrestrial ecosystem desired conditions into spatial patterns for fuel reduction treatments. Incorporate heterogeneity by increasing variation in tree spacing, enhancing tree clumps, creating canopy gaps, promoting fire-resilient tree species, increasing the ratio of large to small trees, and using topographic variation (such as slope, aspect, and position) to guide treatment prescriptions.
- Prior to and during the fire season, assess conditional thresholds under which desired conditions can be met for the strategic fire management zones. Work with Tribes and adjacent landowners to identify areas and resources of value considered in the assessments.
- When determining the appropriate wildfire management strategy, use spatial support tools such as wildfire risk assessments, fire management operating plans, and the current Forest Service decision support system for wildfire management. Locations of special habitats, old-forest patches, and key habitat areas for at-risk species should be readily available in the current Forest Service decision support system for wildfire management ahead of fire season.
- Work with adjacent land management agencies and other landowners to treat fuels, to reduce costs and increase effectiveness in restoring fire to the landscape.
- Consider maintaining, re-routing, or re-aligning existing system trails to provide for better fire management solutions.

- Assess human-caused ignitions and implement prevention activities that reduce the likelihood of the most common human-caused ignition sources.
- Prioritize for treatment of areas that historically supported more frequent fire, like ponderosa pine and Jeffrey pine-dominated forests, and areas with high existing levels of understory fuels.

## **Strategic Fire Management Zones**

The purpose of strategic fire management zones is to support decision-making before a fire ignition occurs, by pre-assessing the risk and benefits from wildland fire (both wildfire and prescribed fire) to areas on the landscape. Wildfire responses include a spectrum of strategies that include full suppression, confine and contain, monitoring, and management to meet resource objectives. The entire spectrum of strategies is available in all the zones, and all wildland fires will be actively managed using a strategy, or combination of strategies, from this spectrum. The boundaries of the fire management zones are determined by conditions on the ground and have the potential to be influenced as the result of development or natural disturbances. The zones are mapped based on current conditions and are displayed in appendix A, figure 12. Adjustments to the fire management zone maps may be made with an administrative change to the plan to reflect changes on the ground. Within all zones, active management through fuel reduction treatments such as thinning and prescribed fire reduces fuels and fire hazard while mitigating safety hazards for firefighters within all zones.

### **Community Wildfire Protection Zone**

The community wildfire protection zone encompasses locations where communities, community assets, and private land could be at a very high risk of damage from wildfire where high fuel loadings exist. Wildfires that start in this zone contribute more to potential loss of community assets than any other strategic fire management zone.

Although some wildfires that burn in this zone can potentially benefit natural resources and help decrease fuels and threats from future wildfires, these potential benefits are less likely under most weather, fuel moisture, and other environmental conditions due to the very high risk to community assets during the fire season. The long-term focus is to create fire-adapted communities that are less reliant on aggressive wildfire protection. Under most weather and fuel conditions, wildfire mitigation, fuel reduction treatments, and fire protection is needed in the community wildfire protection zone to prevent direct threats to life or property. Wildfire is suppressed under most weather and fuel conditions due to the very significant risk of potential economic loss and public safety concerns posed by a wildfire occurring within this zone.

Within this zone, community buffer areas are identified and used to strategically reduce or rearrange fuels or thin vegetation directly adjacent to structures and provide safer conditions for firefighters including by mitigating most or all snags that present a safety hazard. Most forest plan components that restrict various aspects of vegetation treatments include exceptions for community buffers to better provide for firefighter safety. Community buffer widths are measured from the structures in the community. The maximum width is based on potential fire behavior in adjacent areas under extreme fire weather conditions (i.e., 97th percentile weather, probable average momentary wind gusts). The maximum width is sufficient to provide low radiant heat from areas of untreated fuels (i.e., four times the potential maximum flame length in adjacent areas on slopes less than 40 percent and six times the potential maximum flame length in adjacent areas on slopes greater than 40 percent).

Because the community wildfire protection zone is centered on places where fire ignitions have a high probability of negatively impacting community assets, it is expected to remain generally fixed for the plan period but may be adjusted locally for new infrastructure developments and local circumstances.

**Desired Conditions (FIRE-CWPZ-DC)**

- 01 Areas adjacent to communities with current high fire risk have low fuel loadings, designed to result in less intense fire behavior and to facilitate safe wildland fire operations. In some cases, terrestrial ecosystem desired conditions may not be met.
- 02 Over time, risk to communities is reduced sufficiently in the community wildfire protection zone to allow some areas to be placed in a lower risk zone, including the general wildfire protection or wildfire restoration zones.

**Goals (FIRE-CWPZ-GOAL)**

- 01 Protect communities (life and property) from the negative impacts of wildfire.
- 02 Reduce the impacts of wildfire on communities through fuel reduction treatments, prescribed fire, and managing wildfires that can benefit natural resources while reducing risk.
- 03 Help communities become more fire-adapted and improve their ability to withstand a fire without loss of life and property.
- 04 Work with partners and adjacent landowners to support or contribute toward defensible space as defined by California Public Resource Code 4291.

**Standard (FIRE-CWPZ-STD)**

- 01 In community buffer areas, fuels treatments take precedence over riparian conservation area guidelines when necessary to meet fire behavior objectives. On a site-specific basis, higher levels of large logs may be retained in some areas.

**Guidelines (FIRE-CWPZ-GDL)**

- 01 When planning and implementing projects around communities, manage vegetation in community buffer areas to meet the following conditions:
  - a Reduce fuel loads to provide a safe place to deploy needed resources to protect structures and allow for firefighter safety during a fire event. After treatment, these areas may not meet stand structure or densities terrestrial vegetation desired conditions.
  - b Minimize snag and log densities to reduce the likelihood of spotting or ember ignitions, maximize fireline production rates, and reduce firefighter safety hazards.
    - No snags should exist within 2.5 tree lengths distance from structures.
    - Less than 1 large downed log per acre should exist within 2.5 tree lengths of structures.
- 02 To protect communities, locate fuels treatments in areas that pose the greatest fire threat.
  - a Ensure sufficient treatments increase and improve tactical opportunities to manage wildfires and reduce the spread rate and intensity of wildfires.

- b Consider placing treatments along ridges, roads, or other natural or human-made features.

### General Wildfire Protection Zone

The general wildfire protection zone identifies where conditions currently put some natural resource and/or community values at high risk of damage from wildfire. In some areas, wildfires in the general wildfire protection zone may have negative effects on natural resources due to the natural fire regime and condition of the ecosystem. Wildfires that start in the general wildfire protection zone in some areas can contribute to the high fire risk in the community wildfire protection zone.

Managing wildfires to meet resource objectives in this zone is often considerably constrained due to fuel conditions, the high risk of loss of natural resources, and the potential adverse impacts to communities threatened by wildfires starting in this zone. Although some wildfires that burn in this zone can potentially benefit some natural resources, negative impacts to many natural resources are more likely under most weather, fuel moisture, and other environmental conditions during the fire season. Targeted ecological restoration and hazardous fuel reduction are needed in the general wildfire protection zone to safeguard communities and resources, including transmission line corridors.

The risks within the general wildfire protection zone are expected to change over time as fuel and vegetation conditions move toward desired conditions and risks shift to a lower risk class (toward the wildfire maintenance zone).

### Desired Conditions (FIRE-GWPZ-DC)

- 01 The threat to communities from wildfires starting in this zone is minimal due to vegetation conditions reaching a balance of reduced excessive fuel loading while maintaining terrestrial ecosystem desired conditions.
- 02 The landscape is resilient and can tolerate varying effects of wildfires. Over time, risk to values is reduced sufficiently in the general wildfire protection zone to allow some areas to be placed in a lower risk zone including the wildfire restoration and wildfire protection zones.

### Goals (FIRE-GWPZ-GOAL)

- 01 Protect natural resources from the negative impacts of wildfire and prevent direct threats to life or property in nearby communities.
- 02 Reduce the threat of wildfire spreading to communities through fuel reduction treatments, prescribed fire, wildfires managed to meet resource objectives, and when appropriate and feasible, livestock grazing, while also reducing risk to natural resources.

### Guideline (FIRE- GWPZ-GDL)

- 01 To reduce the spread rate and intensity of wildfires, locate restoration treatments in areas that pose the greatest fire threat to communities and natural resources and use more tactical opportunity areas like along ridges, roads, and other natural or human-made features.

### Wildfire Restoration Zone

The wildfire restoration zone identifies where conditions currently put some natural resource values at moderate risk of damage from wildfire. In general, wildfires that start in this zone pose a low to moderate threat to communities in average fire season conditions.



Wildfires that burn in this zone can potentially benefit natural resources, but only under limited environmental conditions. Managing wildfires to meet resource objectives in this zone may be constrained due to fuel conditions and moderate risk to natural resources. Ecological restoration may be needed before using wildland fire under a wider range of weather, fuel moisture, and other environmental conditions.

The risks within the wildfire restoration zone are expected to change over time as fuel and vegetation conditions move toward desired conditions and risks shift to a lower risk class (toward the wildfire maintenance zone).

**Desired Conditions (FIRE-WRZ-DC)**

- 01 The landscape is resilient to a range of fire effects, and wildland fire has a predominately positive benefit to ecosystems and resources.
- 02 Wildfire is managed to meet resource objectives under a wide range of environmental conditions.
- 03 The landscape is resilient to the impacts of wildfire. Over time, risk to natural resources is reduced sufficiently in the wildfire restoration zone to allow some areas to be categorized in the wildfire maintenance zone.

**Standard (FIRE-WRZ-STD)**

- 01 Use natural barriers and features like creeks, old fire footprints, ridges, and human-made lines such as roads and trails when managing wildfires to meet resource objectives, unless unsafe or impractical.

**Wildfire Maintenance Zone**

The wildfire maintenance zone encompasses areas where wildfire poses a low threat to communities in average fire season conditions and where conditions allow natural resources to benefit from wildland fire.

Managing wildfire to meet resource objectives in this zone is the least constrained. Ecological maintenance can be carried out by managing wildland fire under a wide range of weather, fuel moisture, and other environmental conditions. Conditions in this zone are favorable to implementing prescribed fire for ecological restoration, and to meet resource objectives.

**Desired Conditions (FIRE-WMZ-DC)**

- 01 Ecosystems are resilient to the impacts of wildfire, and wildland fire has predominantly positive benefits to ecosystems and resources.
- 02 Lands within this zone are maintained in a predominately low risk with high potential benefit condition relative to wildland fire.

**Standards (FIRE-WMZ-STD)**

- 01 Following current wildland fire policy, manage wildfires to meet resource objectives and restore and maintain fire as an ecological process. The responsible line officer must use the current decision support system for wildfire management to document cases when naturally caused wildfires are promptly suppressed.

- 02 Use natural barriers and features, such as creeks, old fire footprints, ridges, and human-made lines such as roads and trails when managing wildfires to meet resource objectives, unless unsafe or impractical.

## Social and Economic Sustainability and Multiple Uses

The following topics are grouped under this heading:

- Sustainable Recreation
- Scenery
- Timber and Other Forest Products
- Rangeland Livestock Grazing
- Geology and Minerals
- Energy
- Cultural Resources
- Tribal Relations and Uses
- Local Communities
- Volunteers, Interpretation, Partnerships and Stewardship
- Lands
- Infrastructure

### **Sustainable Recreation (excludes designated wilderness)**

A niche statement describes what the national forest has to offer in terms of special places, opportunities, and potential experiences, overlapped with what people desire and expect in terms of outdoor recreation from public lands. The Sequoia's niche is described as follows:

The Sequoia National Forest, named for the world's largest trees, celebrates the greatest concentration of giant sequoia groves in the world. The Sequoia's landscape is as spectacular as its trees. Soaring granite monoliths, glacier-carved canyons, caves, roaring world-class whitewater, and scenic lakes and reservoirs await your discovery at the Sierra Nevada's southern reach. Elevations range from 1,000 feet in the lower canyons to peaks over 12,000 feet on the crest of the Sierra, providing visitors with spectacular views in a dramatic range of settings. These mountains stand in contrast to California's San Joaquin Valley, providing cool relief for families from the scorching heat of summer and welcome blue skies and sun during the cold fog of winter. These spectacular features provide an attractive overnight destination for visitors from far and near.

Desired conditions and other plan components under the sustainable recreation heading apply to forestwide recreation. The plan also describes recreation management areas that provide management direction for specific opportunities and activities. These plan components are in chapter 3, under Management Areas, subsection Sustainable Recreation.

### **Desired Conditions (REC-FW-DC)**

- 01 The diverse landscapes offer a broad range of seasonal and year-round nature-based recreation opportunities. Management focuses on enhancing the national forest recreation program niche.
- 02 The design, condition, function, and accessibility of recreation facilities accommodate diverse cultures.
- 03 Recreation opportunities provide a high level of visitor satisfaction, while minimizing user conflicts. The range of recreation opportunities contribute to social and economic sustainability of local communities.

- 04 Recreation opportunities are balanced with management capacity to manage sites to agency standards.
- 05 Areas of the Forest provide for a variety of recreation opportunities with minimal impact on sensitive environments and resources.
- 06 Visitors can connect with nature, culture, and history through a range of sustainable outdoor recreation opportunities and are committed to resource stewardship.
- 07 The management and operation of facilities are place based, integrated with other resources, and responsive to changing environmental, social, and economic conditions that may limit or alter access.
- 08 New developed recreation infrastructure is located in ecologically resilient landscapes, while being financially and ecologically sustainable, and responsive to public needs.
- 09 Dispersed recreation occurs in areas outside of high visitation, developed facilities, or communities, and does not adversely impact natural or cultural resources.
- 10 Permitted recreation uses, such as recreation special events or guided activities, protect natural and cultural resources, and contribute to the economic sustainability of local communities.
- 11 Recreation information is current, connecting people to the Sequoia through contemporary means including social media and available technology. Diverse communities are aware of recreation opportunities on the Forest.
- 12 The Forest provides a range of year-round developed and dispersed recreation settings that offer a variety of motorized and nonmotorized opportunities and recreation experiences such as the desired recreation settings<sup>12</sup> displayed in figure 23, appendix A.
- 13 A sustainable system of trails provides access to destinations, provides for opportunities that connect to a larger trail system, provides linkages from local communities to the national forest, and is planned, designed, and managed to be compatible with other resources.
- 14 Trails meet trail management objectives based on trail class and designed use.

### **Objectives (REC-FW-OBJ)**

- 01 Twenty-five percent of the Sequoia National Forest's designated trail system miles meet National Quality Standards<sup>13</sup> annually, based on current budgets and capacity. This would increase above 25 percent with added capacity of partnerships and new funding.
- 02 Within 15 years of plan approval, institute a sustainable, dispersed recreation program that relies on visitor self-sufficiency and responsible recreation use, in areas outside of developed sites.

---

<sup>12</sup> The term "recreation settings" is synonymous with recreation opportunity spectrum (ROS) class and is defined in the glossary.

<sup>13</sup> FSH 2309.18, Section 15

- 03 Within 15 years of plan approval, manage soil compaction and loss of riparian vegetation in five undeveloped camping sites that are located within 150 feet of a waterbody.

### **Goals (REC-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Coordinate with local and national partners early in project development to elicit collaborative input on sustainable recreation opportunities, needs, and potential conflicts.
- 02 Manage dispersed recreation activities when evidence of impacts to natural resources emerge or are causing damage.
- 03 Promote effective communication with neighboring communities, urban populations, youth, and underserved communities to help foster partnerships, inspire volunteers, educate the public, and support stewardship that contributes to funding, implementation of projects, and long-term maintenance of facilities.
- 04 Improve facilities through individual and community stewardship.
- 05 Collaborate with a variety of partners to collect trail use data and provide stewardship and interpretive services that enhance responsible recreation and increase knowledge of related socioeconomic and environmental issues.
- 06 Enhance stewardship and monitoring through increased volunteer program activities and partner contributions.
- 07 Provide accessible trails for individuals with mobility impairments.
- 08 Manage infrastructure to meet the minimum needs of the associated uses and work with partners to increase funding capacity.

### **Guidelines (REC-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Avoid locating new recreation facilities within environmentally and culturally sensitive areas, such as at-risk species breeding habitat or at-risk plant species habitat. If avoidance is not possible, design facilities to maximize ecological sustainability, minimize impacts, and mitigate unavoidable impacts, in that order.
- 02 Create infrastructure that mimics the natural textures and colors of the surrounding landscape to minimize impacts to scenery.
- 03 Use integrated resource planning when designing projects to address impacts to culturally sensitive areas and at-risk species habitat, and to manage recreation opportunities.

## Potential Management Approaches

- Consider desired recreation opportunity spectrum (ROS) classes (figure 23) in travel management planning, allowable or prohibited recreation uses, and other projects that may impact recreation opportunities. For example, designation of motorized routes and areas should generally occur within desired motorized ROS classes.<sup>14</sup>
- Evaluate unauthorized motorized routes to determine if they should be designated, or removed, blocked, or naturalized as feasible.<sup>15</sup>
- Use current and effective public education tools to increase visitor responsibility and promote sustainable recreation use.
- Use management methods, such as seasonal road or trail closures, when appropriate to manage and protect resources and infrastructure.
- Consider improving recreation opportunities at existing facilities before developing new ones.
- Use informational signs to educate the public on trail etiquette, wildlife awareness, and other responsible behaviors.
- Conduct motorized recreation activity planning where and when needed, looking for opportunities to connect loops and complete routes in areas with high visitation.
- Focus the program of work on maintaining existing opportunities to protect natural resources and provide a satisfying visitor experience.
- Use available technology, interpretive messages and interactions, and partnerships to educate Forest users and develop sustainable recreation opportunities that are focused on the long-term sustainability of the land, animals, fish, and plant species that support a healthy forest ecosystem.
- Visitors camping outside of developed sites will be introduced to “leave no trace” principles as conditions allow and will be responsible for appropriate disposal of all waste products because no dumpsters or portable toilets will be provided by the agency.
- Develop a clear and concise process for partnership development and implementation in alignment with the concepts described in appendix C. Communicate the Forest’s needs in

---

<sup>14</sup> Travel management decisions must be based on multiple factors and include public involvement (36 CFR 212), and the desired ROS class of an area does not allow or prohibit a specific activity and is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a decision. Decisions about motorized routes and areas, including unauthorized routes, are site-specific travel management decisions that are made at the project level. If designation of motorized routes or areas occurs within desired nonmotorized ROS classes, the desired ROS class should be updated—a plan amendment would not be required. Existing designated motorized routes and areas are not automatically prohibited within nonmotorized ROS classes. Actions such as (a) closure of existing designated motorized routes or areas within nonmotorized ROS classes, (b) re-route of existing designated motorized routes within nonmotorized ROS classes to locations within motorized ROS classes, or (c) removal, blocking, or naturalizing unauthorized routes within nonmotorized ROS classes, may occur, but are not automatically mandated within nonmotorized ROS classes.

<sup>15</sup> Cross-country motorized travel and creation of unauthorized motorized routes is prohibited by 36 CFR 261.13. Travel management decisions must be based on multiple factors and include public involvement (36 CFR 212), and the desired ROS class of an area does not allow or prohibit a specific activity and is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a decision. Decisions about motorized routes and areas, including unauthorized routes, are site-specific travel management decisions that are made at the project level.

a succinct, easy to understand, and readily available summary. Include the types of agreements, contracts, and mechanisms staff will use to work with future partners.

- Use trailhead and camp hosts or volunteer patrollers to educate and interact with the public to promote responsible and sustainable public use practices.
- Redesign, restore, or rehabilitate recreation sites and facilities (including trails) as feasible where recreation activities have caused unacceptable natural or cultural resource damage so that they can be sustainably maintained thereafter.
- Consider implementing human waste management programs and/or installation of human waste management facilities, such as dump stations, in areas of dispersed recreation use to address adverse impacts to water resources from the discharge of potential pollutants.
- Educate recreation users about how careful disposal of waste and other potential pollutants can benefit water resources.
- Consider summer transportation systems to connect people to nature, improve personal health, and increase access for neighboring communities, urban populations, youth, and underserved communities, including through partnerships.

## Scenery

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading apply to the Sequoia's management of scenery. Ecosystems provide the environmental context for a scenery management system, a framework that considers scenic character and aesthetic values, geologic features and viewsheds. Scenic character is a combination of the physical, biological, and cultural images that gives an area its scenic identity and contributes to its sense of place. Scenic character provides a frame of reference from which to determine scenic attractiveness and to measure scenic integrity.

In some situations, providing a high level of scenic integrity may be achieved through establishing an ecological aesthetic over time through knowledge and appreciation of healthy ecosystem functions. For example, preferred scenic conditions that include dense forests and the absence of downed woody debris may run counter to the need for more diverse, less dense forests that reflect the resilient forests that existed prior to the onset of widespread fire suppression, and may include downed woody debris to provide for wildlife food and cover, or nutrient recycling.

### Desired Conditions (SCEN-FW-DC)

- 01 The Sequoia National Forest provides a variety of ecologically sound, resilient, and visually appealing forest landscapes that sustain scenic character, supporting the national forest recreation program niche in ways that contribute to visitors' sense of place and connection with nature.
- 02 Scenic character is maintained and/or adapted to changing conditions to support ecological, social, and economic sustainability on the Sequoia National Forest and in surrounding communities.
- 03 The Sequoia National Forest's scenic resources meet or are moving toward desired scenic integrity objectives, as displayed in figure 24, appendix A. In places with distinctive scenic

attractiveness,<sup>16</sup> and in “special places,”<sup>17</sup> scenic integrity is maintained or improved to assure high-quality viewing experiences.

- 04 The built environment meets or exceeds scenic integrity objectives and contributes to scenic stability.
- 05 Scenery stability is enhanced through integrated fuels and forest health projects.

#### Objective (SCEN-FW-OBJ)

- 01 Within 10 years of plan approval, improve scenic stability by treating 2,000 acres of vegetation in areas with a high likelihood of large, high-severity wildfire, that depart from the natural range of variation.

#### Goal (SCEN-FW-GOAL)

- 01 The Forest Service works with other agencies and adjacent landowners to maintain shared vistas.

#### Guideline (SCEN-FW-GDL)

- 01 Management activities should maintain or move toward scenic integrity objectives in the long-term timeframes.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Use integrated resource planning during projects to respond to changing scenery conditions affecting scenic character and integrity.
- Minimize visible lines in landscape areas where vegetation is removed for management objectives. Cleared areas should include edges that reflect the visual character of naturally occurring vegetation openings.

### Timber and Other Forest Products

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading cover timber management. Forest management on the Sequoia National Forest consists of restoration and fuels reduction treatments designed to achieve desired conditions for the associated terrestrial vegetation type on suitable timber lands as well as on some lands not suited for timber production (appendix D). The 1.1-million-acre Sequoia National Forest includes approximately 79,594 acres that are suitable for timber production (figure 25). Land determined to be suitable is land where timber production could be a primary or secondary management objective. On some lands not suited for timber production, timber harvest may occur to protect multiple-use values other than timber production,

---

<sup>16</sup> Distinctive scenic attractiveness (or Class A) is currently defined as, “Areas where landform, vegetation patterns, water characteristics, and cultural features combine to provide usual, unique, or outstanding scenic quality. These landscapes have strong positive attributes of variety, unity, vividness, mystery, intactness, order, harmony, uniqueness, pattern and balance.” (USDA Forest Service. 1995. Landscape Aesthetics: A Handbook for Scenery Management. Agriculture Handbook Number 701. Washington, DC. 104 p.) If agency guidance documents are revised, the definition may be updated accordingly.

<sup>17</sup> Special places are currently defined as, “locations in the landscape with unique importance and meaning. At times, special places are isolated, small areas or spots; at other times, they are large areas of land. Special places often have ‘place names’ indicating local or regional significance. Special places may be merited strictly because of scenic attributes.” (USDA Forest Service. 1995. Landscape Aesthetics: A Handbook for Scenery Management. Agriculture Handbook Number 701. Washington, DC. 104 p.) If agency guidance documents are revised, the definition may be updated accordingly.

and for salvage, sanitation, or public health, as described elsewhere in the plan for specific categories of lands. Appendix D contains more detail regarding the planned timber program for the Sequoia National Forest including projected harvest amounts and probable vegetation management methods.

### **Desired Conditions (TIMB-FW-DC)**

- 01 Predictable and sustainable forest product yields contribute to maintaining and improving local and regional industry infrastructure and workforce and are sufficient to meet the needs of the desired pace and scale of ecological restoration over the next several decades.
- 02 Production of timber contributes to ecological, social, and economic sustainability and associated desired conditions. A sustainable mix of forest products (including both sawtimber and non-sawtimber) is offered under a variety of harvest and contract methods in response to market demand and restoration needs.
- 03 Salvage of dead and dying trees captures some of the economic value of the wood while retaining key features in quantities that provide for wildlife habitat, soil productivity, and other desired conditions of ecosystems.

### **Objective (TIMB-FW-OBJ)**

- 01 Provide approximately 12 to 18 million cubic feet (MMcf) of sawtimber (60 to 90 million board feet (MMbf) during the first 15 years following plan approval, to contribute to the local forest products infrastructure.

### **Goals (TIMB-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 After disturbances occur on lands identified as suitable for timber production, where consistent with terrestrial vegetation desired conditions, and when funding is available, adequately restock these areas within 5 years of salvage harvest, if applicable, or, when salvage harvest is not used, within 5 years of site preparation.
- 02 Accelerate the re-establishment of forests by leveraging partner support and soliciting additional fiscal and staffing capacity to conduct reforestation activities (and subsequent maintenance) in settings where natural tree regeneration is not expected to be successful considering future climate conditions.

### **Standards (TIMB-FW-STD)**

- 01 Timber harvest for the purpose of timber production is prohibited on lands not suited for timber production.
- 02 Timber harvest for purposes other than timber production occurs only in areas identified as suitable for timber harvest for other multiple-use purposes, or in areas identified as suitable for timber production.
- 03 Timber harvest is prohibited on lands where soil, slope, or other watershed conditions may be irreversibly damaged, as identified in project-specific findings.
- 04 Even-aged regeneration methods for harvesting timber are not authorized. Harvests resulting from natural catastrophic conditions such as fire, insect and disease attack, or windstorm are not considered even-aged regeneration harvests.



- 05 The quantity of timber sold per decade must be less than or equal to the sustained-yield limit of 15.9 MMcf per year, with the following exceptions: salvage or sanitation harvesting of timber stands that are substantially damaged by fire, windthrow, or other catastrophe or that are in imminent danger from insect or disease attack. In these situations, trees may be harvested over and above the sustained-yield limit, consistent with the desired conditions for terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.
- 06 Following regulated regeneration harvest (such as group selection) on lands identified as suitable for timber production, create and maintain planting environments that favor seedling survival and rapid growth rates. Facilitate early and periodic use of fire to reduce future wildfire-related mortality and provide sufficient tree numbers to meet future vegetation desired conditions that support a variety of ecosystem services and resilience, including forest products, wildlife habitat and carbon sequestration. Design a site-specific silvicultural prescription to ensure that lands are adequately restocked within 5 years of a regeneration harvest (see appendix D for stocking criteria).
- 07 When conducting reforestation in response to wildfire, windthrow, insects, pathogens, or other stand-replacing disturbances, create and maintain planting environments that favor seedling survival and growth, facilitate early and periodic use of fire to reduce future wildfire-related mortality, and provide sufficient tree numbers to meet future vegetation desired conditions, considering future changes in climate, to provide a variety of ecosystem services including forest products and carbon sequestration.

#### **Guidelines (TIMB-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Discourage the retention of snags within and immediately adjacent to areas planned for reforestation to mitigate hazards to workers. High fuel levels should not be retained in plantations that would preclude the use of prescribed burning at appropriate times as the plantation matures.
- 02 Reforestation of suitable lands should be designed to achieve stocking levels, spatial arrangements, and species composition to facilitate future vegetation desired conditions that allow for long-term resilience of the developing forest, while considering potential future plantation management, carbon carrying capacity, wildlife habitat, and climate change adaptation. Competing vegetation, fuel levels, and fire risk should be managed to provide for the long-term survival and vigor of reestablishing forests as they move toward maturity.
- 03 On lands not suited for timber production, reforestation of deforested lands should contribute to ecological restoration of desired vegetation conditions, to provide benefits such as improved scenic character, wildlife habitat, carbon sequestration, and watershed condition.

#### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Encourage use of small trees and wood biomass to support a variety of potential uses.
- Where consistent with purpose and need, develop landscape-scale projects that integrate active management and use of wildland fire to increase the pace and scale of ecological restoration, enhance ecosystem resilience, and protect the carbon carrying capacity of the forest. This includes using strategically placed mechanical treatments, including fuelbreaks to encourage greater use of prescribed fire, combining silvicultural and prescribed fire treatments to restore forest structure and composition more safely and

effectively, and using strategic fuel treatments and existing burn scars as anchors to facilitate the reestablishment of natural fire regimes at large spatial scales.

- As conditions allow plan vegetation, fuels, and other restoration projects across large landscape areas (greater than 5,000 to 10,000 acres), when it can increase efficiency in planning and support partnership-based approaches, such as stewardship contracts or facilitating grant applications to augment funding or capability.
- Look for partnership and grant opportunities to increase capacity for reforestation as a component of moving vegetation toward desired conditions following large-scale disturbances.
- Focus reforestation efforts on larger high-severity burn patches that are isolated from appropriate seed sources and other areas where natural regeneration will be limited and where reforestation activities will assist in restoring terrestrial vegetation and wildlife habitat desired conditions using spatial decision-support tools and conditions observed on the ground.

## Range

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading apply to rangeland management, which includes the authorized use and management of National Forest System lands for livestock production and livestock use of forage resources.

### Desired Conditions (RANG-FW-DC)

- 01 Rangelands, along with grazable forestlands and woodlands, provide large areas of contiguous space supporting native and desired nonnative vegetation that has the potential to be grazed. These ranges sustain biological diversity and ecological processes and help to preserve the rural landscape and cultural heritage of the central, southern, and eastern Sierra Nevada.
- 02 Livestock grazing is managed to meet or move toward the desired vegetation condition represented by diverse plant functional groups, species richness and diversity, and structure and condition of plant communities.
- 03 Rangelands are managed to maintain or restore hydrologic function and soil productivity of watersheds. Livestock grazing is managed to accommodate the maintenance or restoration of aquatic and riparian processes and functions.
- 04 Rangelands are in satisfactory condition and allotments have management strategies that achieve or maintain rangeland conditions in satisfactory condition.
- 05 Annual grasslands that are grazed have livestock management strategies that encourage retention and recruitment of native plants, encourage retention of desirable exotic plants, and discourage or suppress undesirable and invasive exotic plants. These livestock management strategies are adaptable to rapidly changing conditions in forage quality or production.

## Goals

- 01 Work with stakeholders to ensure livestock grazing management strategies in oak woodland, aspen, and woody riparian areas encourage regeneration of hardwood and riparian woody vegetation.

- 02 Work with stakeholders to ensure livestock grazing management strategies minimize negative effects to the structure and function of vegetation and aquatic and riparian ecosystems, especially for small-scale special aquatic features such as fens and springs, as well as habitat and refugia for at-risk species.
- 03 Work with stakeholders to ensure livestock grazing management strategies are adaptable to changes in available forage due to wildfire or drought, and to post-fire transitory range.

#### **Standards (RANG-FW-STD)**

- 01 Manage livestock grazing to attain desired conditions in blue oak-interior live oak woodlands, annual grasslands, aspen, special habitats, great gray owl protected activity areas, occupied willow flycatcher habitat, and riparian conservation areas. Where livestock grazing is found to prevent or retard attainment of desired conditions, modify grazing practices (such as number of livestock, timing, scheduled rest, and range structures). If adjusting practices is not effective, remove livestock from the area using appropriate administrative authorities and procedures.
- 02 Assess the hydrologic function of meadow habitats and other special aquatic features during range management analysis. Ensure that characteristics of special features are at a minimum proper functioning condition or functioning at-risk with an upward trend, as defined in the appropriate technical reports.
- 03 If meadow ecological status is determined to be moving in a downward trend due to grazing, modify or suspend grazing. Modify management of meadows that are in low ecological status or not in proper functioning condition and have active erosion to achieve or show substantial progress toward meeting mid- or late-seral status and proper functioning condition within 5 years.

#### **Guidelines (RANG-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Where annual grasslands have annual precipitation over 10 inches, manage for a minimum residual dry matter of 700 pounds per acre and an average of 60 percent ground cover at the end of the grazing season. Where annual grasslands have annual precipitation of less than 10 inches, manage for 400 pounds residual dry matter per acre. Adjust these guidelines as needed based on grassland condition and other vegetation or fuels management objectives.
- 02 Burned areas should be evaluated to determine appropriate use of livestock grazing necessary for recovery of desired vegetation conditions, related biophysical resources, and fuels management.
- 03 In terrestrial upland vegetation types with good to excellent vegetation and soils conditions, limit grazing utilization to 45 percent use by weight on herbaceous perennial plants and an average of 20 percent use of annual leader growth on other woody shrubs. Browse use may vary across the landscape to accommodate land use objectives such as maintenance of open areas for reduced fuels or public access. Reduce utilization levels by 10 percent or more on sites trending downward in condition or with fair vegetation and soil conditions.
- 04 To protect oak regeneration in grazing allotments, allow livestock browsing to an average of no more than 20 to 30 percent of annual growth of oak seedlings and advanced regeneration. Modify grazing plans if desired recruitment needs for hardwood trees are not being met.

- 05 To manage for multi-aged stands of aspen, limit browsing to an average of no more than 20 to 25 percent of annual terminal leader growth of aspen seedlings, young trees, and advanced regeneration. Modify grazing plans if hardwood regeneration and recruitment needs are not being met.
- 06 Limit use of willows and other woody riparian species to an average of no more than 20 to 30 percent of current year's leader growth along streambanks and, as needed, other critical portions of the riparian conservation area. Remove livestock from the area when these utilization indicators are reached or exceeded.
- 07 When grazing in riparian conservation areas under season-long use:
  - For meadows and riparian areas that are in low to mid-seral condition with a downward trend, limit livestock utilization of deep-rooted plants to 30 to 35 percent. For stream channels and drainways, maintain a minimum 6-inch residual stubble height on the greenline.
  - For meadows and riparian areas that are properly functioning or functioning at-risk with an upward trend and/or are in mid-seral or better condition with a stable to upward trend, limit livestock utilization of deep-rooted herbaceous plants to 40 to 45 percent. For stream channels and drainways, maintain a minimum 4-inch residual stubble height on the greenline.
  - For riparian management areas in low-elevation blue oak-interior live oak terrestrial ecosystems, limit livestock utilization of deep-rooted herbaceous plants to 45 to 50 percent.
- 08 When grazing under intensive grazing systems where riparian conservation areas receive scheduled rest (such as rest-rotation or deferred rotation), utilization levels may be higher than the levels described under season-long use if the meadow and/or riparian area is maintaining mid- to late-seral ecological conditions and meadow-associated wildlife are not being adversely impacted.
- 09 Within riparian conservation areas that are properly functioning or functioning at-risk with an upward trend:
  - Limit annual disturbance to streambanks and shorelines of natural lakes and ponds, caused by trampling and trailing, from exceeding 20 percent of stream reach, or natural lake and pond shorelines. Disturbance includes bank sloughing, chiseling, trampling, and other means of exposing bare soil or cutting plant roots.
  - Ensure that grazing practices are not retarding the rate of natural recovery in riparian conservation areas.
- 10 Select a minimum of one designated monitoring area for each subunit or pasture within an allotment that serves as the basis for establishing standards and guidelines across the entire subunit or pasture. At a minimum, these designated areas should include an apparent trend rating of vegetation, condition rating of soils, and a photo record.

### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Coordinate utilization studies with livestock operators, other appropriate State and Federal agencies, and interested people or groups as needed. Utilization studies should be planned and implemented on an interdisciplinary basis.

- Collaborate with permittees, Tribes, educational institutions, other agencies, and stakeholders in achieving and maintaining desired conditions, including invasive species management where applicable.
- Measures such as salting, herding, water development, fencing and riding will be addressed in annual operating instructions, allotment management plans, permits and permit modifications to improve livestock distribution and minimize impacts to riparian and other sensitive areas. If condition and trend monitoring data, collected every 3 to 5 years, indicates that desired conditions and other plan components are not being achieved, modify or suspend grazing in the affected area.

## **Tribal Relations and Uses**

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading apply to the Sequoia National Forest's recognition that lands and people surrounding the Forest have an important influence on forest management. These plan components generally do not repeat Federal laws, regulations, Executive orders, and agency policies that also provide direction related to Tribal relations and uses; including laws, regulations, and Executive orders related to the protection of sacred sites, traditional cultural resources, and sensitive information.

The Sequoia National Forest lies in the traditional territories of 8 federally recognized Native American Tribes, as well as 22 non-federally recognized Tribes, Tribal groups, and organizations. Tribal communities are contacted and consulted and are important partners in forest management activities.

### **Desired Conditions (TRIB-FW-DC)**

- 01 The Forest recognizes Native American needs and viewpoints and fosters a robust relationship with federally and non-federally recognized Tribes and related groups with which it consults. Sequoia National Forest personnel, including but not limited to line officers, departmental staff, archaeologists, historians, and Tribal liaisons, consult, and communicate with Tribal leadership, Tribal historic preservation officers, traditional religious practitioners, traditional gatherers, Tribal members, and other Tribal organizations.
- 02 The Sequoia staff coordinates with Tribes in identifying and managing traditional cultural properties, resources, and sacred sites where historic preservation laws alone may not adequately protect the resources or values.
- 03 Native Americans have access to areas that provide them an opportunity to practice traditional, cultural, and religious lifeways, such as plant gathering, fishing, hunting, and ceremonial activities that are essential in maintaining their cultural identity and the continuity of their culture.
- 04 Traditional ecological knowledge is a valued part of the process when developing and implementing restoration projects and other Forest programs.
- 05 The Sequoia National Forest provides a setting for the education of Tribal youth in culture, history, and land stewardship and for the exchange of information between Tribal elders and youth.
- 06 Vegetation types and vegetation conditions support continued use by Tribes for traditional, ceremonial, and medicinal purposes. Plants known to be used by Tribes that traditionally use the Forest are thriving.

## **Goals (TRIB-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Manage the land in a spirit of shared stewardship with Tribes, supporting Tribal rights and recognizing the mutual benefits of restoration.
- 02 Partner with Tribes to contribute to the socioeconomic sustainability of Tribal communities.
- 03 Develop memoranda of agreement or other protocols between the Forest and Native American Tribes as appropriate to guide consultation processes, reflect Tribes' particular perspectives and interests, and protect sacred sites.
- 04 Meet regularly with Tribes to better understand their needs and viewpoints. Promote the use of Forest-hosted Tribal forums and events, as well as attendance at tribally hosted meetings and events, as a method to ensure consistent contact, consultation, and collaboration.

## **Guidelines (TRIB-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Manage surface uses to minimize and/or prevent impacts to sacred sites and designated traditional cultural properties from mining operations. This includes requiring an operating plan and incorporating appropriate stipulations in the conditions of approval. It may include seeking mineral withdrawals, after appropriate assessment and consultation.

## **Potential Management Approaches**

- Provide training to Sequoia National Forest employees about Federal Tribal trust responsibilities and ways in which the Forest staff honors and implements these responsibilities.
- Consider employee exchange opportunities between the Forest Service and Tribes under Service First agreements or other mechanisms. Provide Forest staff with detail opportunities to work with Tribes and provide Tribal staff opportunities to work with the agency, to increase reciprocal understanding and promote use of Tribal programs and legislation that is mutually beneficial.
- Include culturally significant species in monitoring protocols related to management activities, where appropriate.

## **Cultural Resources**

The cultural and historic resources on the Sequoia National Forest are a vast array of distinct resources that enrich communities, both large and small, through their use, preservation, and interpretation. Programmatic management strategies allow selective use of various cultural resource types, for the greatest public benefit, while minimizing overall impacts and leaving a rich cultural heritage for the future. Multiple Federal laws, regulations, and policies direct the documentation and management of cultural resources.

Cultural resources include pre-contact and historic archaeological sites and districts; historic buildings and structures; ethnographic landscapes; traditional cultural properties; and Native American contemporary use areas. Contemporary use areas include places where traditional forest products are harvested and can include ceremonial and sacred sites. Products harvested annually include but are not limited to teas, medicines, basketry materials, cedar bark, and foods such as acorns, mushrooms, berries, and roots. Most contemporary use areas are rooted in past cultural traditions that may have shifted location due to environmental change and Forest development.

Cultural resources also include a substantial record of oral histories, photographs, maps, reports, and archaeological artifacts. The documentary record of the people and historic landscapes that are illustrated in these old stories, maps, and photographs contribute greatly to the understanding of cultural resources in the Sequoia National Forest.

All cultural resources are not amendable to all potential uses and vary individually and collectively on what they can offer. Preservation and interpretation of these fragile nonrenewable resources educate people of all ages, races, and walks of life about the cultural connections between people and the Forest.

### **Desired Conditions (CULT-FW-DC)**

- 01 Cultural resources (buildings, sites, districts, structures, and objects) with scientific, cultural, or social values are preserved and protected for their cultural importance. Site integrity and stability are protected and maintained on sites that are susceptible to imminent risks or threats, or where the values are rare or unique. Priority heritage assets are stable, and their significant values are protected; vandalism, looting, theft, and human-caused damage to heritage resources are rare. Site significance and integrity are maintained through conservation and preservation efforts.
- 02 Cultural resources, traditional cultural properties, and sacred sites are protected through project design and consultation with Native American Indian Tribes, Tribal cultural leaders, and consulting parties.
- 03 Cultural resources provide educational opportunities that connect people to the land and its history. Through interpretive sites, historic standing structures, and other materials, the Sequoia National Forest provides opportunities for appreciation of the region's history and an awareness of preservation efforts. In some cases, historic routes (such as trade routes) are used for recreation trails with interpretation of their history and historic features. Heritage-based recreation opportunities are connected, where practical, with other recreation opportunities such as trails.
- 04 Public enjoyment is enhanced by opportunities to visit interpretive cultural resource sites. Archaeological site etiquette information is readily available to Forest visitors. Interpretation of the human history of the Sequoia National Forest promotes greater public understanding of the communities that have depended on this landscape for their livelihood, recreation, and spiritual well-being.
- 05 Opportunities exist for volunteers to participate in cultural resource conservation activities such as research, site stabilization, protection, conservation, and interpretation. Cultural resource programs, interpretive presentations or publications are available to provide the public with opportunities to learn about, understand, and experience the Forest's past.
- 06 Practical opportunities for rehabilitating and reusing historic structures to enhance recreation experiences are promoted.

### **Objective (CULT-FW-OBJ)**

- 01 Within 10 years of plan approval, generate at least five cultural resource projects such as: significant interpretation; National Register of Historic Places nominations; thematic contexts; site management plans; 200 acres or more of non-project surveys; development

and testing of predictive models; establishment of formal cultural resource partnerships; and cultural site restoration, stabilization, or adaptive reuse.

### **Standard (CULT-FW-STD)**

- 01 Include historic property protection provisions in contracts and special use permits.

### **Guidelines (CULT-FW-GDL)**

- 01 Cultural artifacts should only be collected for diagnostic dating purposes, answering research questions, or protection of the artifact when special circumstances require collection. Artifact collections should be curated at nearby facilities and accessible to local Tribes and researchers.
- 02 For cultural resources that have been determined to be culturally “significant” under the National Register of Historic Places, manage to perpetuate those features, characteristics, values, or opportunities for which they were designated.

### **Potential Management Approaches**

- To protect sites from physical damage and excessive wear and tear, consider user education, restrictions, and visitation controls.
- Consider developing a forestwide heritage plan that will programmatically manage cultural resources for long-term sustainability.

## **Local Communities**

Desired conditions and other plan components under this heading include forest management and communication with local communities and other organizations interested in the management of the plan area and Sequoia National Forest resources.

### **Desired Conditions (LOC-FW-DC)**

- 01 Forest personnel communicate with interested local agency leadership, business owners, non-profit organizations, community members, Tribes, and other local organizations on a regular basis to develop mutual understanding regarding Forest management.
- 02 The Sequoia National Forest manages the land in a spirit of shared stewardship with local people. Local knowledge and input are important parts of the process when developing and implementing projects.
- 03 Forest uses such as recreation, forest products, grazing, power generation and water production are provided in an ecologically sustainable way that also contributes to economic and social sustainability in local communities.
- 04 Ecological restoration supports the long-term sustainability of Forest resource use and appreciation by communities by reducing the risk of high-intensity fires, drought, insects, and disease, which may impact forest use opportunities.
- 05 The Sequoia National Forest provides interpretation and education opportunities related to culture, history, and land stewardship, and provides ample opportunities to connect people of all ages with nature.



- 06 Management of the Sequoia National Forest supports community needs by providing employment and training opportunities.

### **Goals (LOC-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Develop memoranda of agreement or other protocols between the Sequoia National Forest and local governments as appropriate to guide coordination processes and reflect local perspectives and interests.
- 02 Identify important socioeconomic locations and activities on the Forest with interested local agencies to promote a common understanding of these important contributions, to help identify potential projects that may enhance community benefits, and help identify mitigation measures that may address adverse impacts to these resources.
- 03 Work with local governments, businesses, and organizations to collect economic data to track changes for businesses in sectors dependent on Forest activities.

### **Volunteers, Interpretation, Partnerships, and Stewardship**

Desired conditions and other plan components for interacting and partnering to work together on shared interests with people, organizations, agencies (local, State, and Federal), Tribes, nonprofits, businesses, and communities are included under this heading.

### **Desired Conditions (VIPS-FW-DC)**

- 01 The Sequoia National Forest has a network of dependable partners and volunteers who provide additional capacity to meet plan desired conditions and deliver services to the public effectively and efficiently.
- 02 The Sequoia staff uses partnerships to build local capacity for providing information and content using the best available methods, including, but not limited to, advances in technology.
- 03 Interpretation and conservation education materials and activities convey up-to-date and clear messages about natural and cultural resources, climate change, land stewardship, responsible recreation use and etiquette, and Native American heritage and culture.
- 04 The diverse backgrounds and needs of visitors are considered in the design of communication and interpretive messages.
- 05 Forest Service projects and management actions, as well as the importance of ecosystem services, are communicated to the public in an understandable fashion to increase public awareness of nature and ecosystems.
- 06 Nationally registered historic sites and culturally important properties retain their historic and cultural significance when public use and educational opportunities are provided.

### **Goals (VIPS-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Work with neighboring communities, urban populations, youth, underserved communities, organizations, State and local agencies, Tribes, and other Federal agencies to sustain Forest benefits to people across the broader landscape.

- 02 Regularly report potential projects suitable for partnership and volunteer opportunities to the public.
- 03 Maintain and expand contracting and partnering opportunities with local governments, businesses, and organizations. Develop partnerships that leverage different sources of funding to support opportunities to contribute to the economic and social sustainability of local communities.
- 04 Work with partners and volunteers to provide, maintain and enhance recreation opportunities and the surrounding landscape, collect, and manage data on recreation use and demand, and contribute to socioeconomic benefits associated with recreation and tourism.
- 05 Work with skilled stewardship organizations in managing wilderness, wild and scenic rivers, national trails, and other designated areas.
- 06 Work with partners and volunteers in the coordinating, developing, and delivering educational and community outreach programs. Work with partners to provide consistent training to those who engage in educational or community outreach programs. Actively engage neighboring communities, urban populations, youth, and underserved communities in programs.
- 07 Work with partners and volunteers to prioritize and complete deferred maintenance and to engage in resource stewardship and restoration.
- 08 Work with site stewards, volunteers, Tribal governments, local governments, State and Federal agencies, schools, universities, and nonprofit groups to protect, rehabilitate, and restore cultural resource sites and facilitate development of research, and educational and interpretive opportunities.
- 09 Work with partners in alignment with the concepts described in appendix C.

### **Potential Management Approaches**

- Develop a strategy to define the types of projects suitable for partnership and volunteer opportunities, potential partners and volunteers, and the mechanisms for developing partnership and volunteer agreements.
- Provide visitor information services at major entry points and areas of concentrated use.
- Provide and update interpretive signage, wayside exhibits, publications, and programs using a variety of media and methods.
- Develop bilingual communication tools including publications, information boards, and radio spots.

### **Geology and Minerals**

Uses on National Forest System lands include the extraction and potential development of mineral resources, which are managed in a manner that protects natural resources, public health and safety, and are consistent with forest plans. Mineral extraction and development are limited on the Sequoia National Forest, although historically mining played an important role in the area. All authorized uses to occupy and use National Forest System lands are evaluated and determined to be in the public interest. Determinations include consultation with other interested parties including Federal, State, and county agencies, Tribes, and non-governmental interests.

### Desired Condition (GEO-FW-DC)

- 01 Mineral resources on National Forest System lands provide for public benefit, while minimizing adverse environmental effects on other national forest resources from mineral exploration, development, and extraction.

### Standard (GEO-FW-STD)

- 01 Ensure that plans of operation, reclamation plans, and reclamation bonds address the costs of removing facilities, equipment, and materials; isolating and neutralizing or removing toxic or potentially toxic materials; salvaging and replacing topsoil; and preparing the seed bed and revegetating to meet the objectives of the land allocation in which the operation is located.

### Guideline (GEO-FW-GDL)

- 01 During mining-related activities, minimize the clearing of trees and other vegetation. Clearing of vegetation should be pertinent to the approved phase of mineral exploration and development.
- 02 Within withdrawn areas, only valid existing rights that were established prior to the withdrawal as determined by a Forest Service Certified Mineral Examiner, may be evaluated for surface-disturbing mineral activities or access development, as proposed in an operating plan.
- 03 Manage surface uses to minimize and/or prevent impacts to sacred sites and designated traditional cultural properties from mining operations. This includes requiring an operating plan and incorporating appropriate stipulations in the conditions of approval. It may include seeking mineral withdrawals, after appropriate assessment and consultation.

### Potential Management Approaches

- For each common variety materials site, prepare a development and rehabilitation plan prior to development and use as appropriate.
- Consider mineral withdrawal subject to existing claims in special interest areas and wild and scenic river corridors.

## Energy

Energy uses on National Forest System lands include hydroelectric and other facilities that provide public utility needs and are managed in a manner that protects natural resources, public health and safety, and are consistent with National Forest System land and resource management plans. Wind and solar development are limited on the Forest. All authorized uses to occupy and use National Forest System lands are evaluated and determined to be in the public interest. Determinations include consultation with other interested parties including Federal, State, and county agencies, Tribes, and non-governmental interests.

See also descriptions for public and investor-owned utility infrastructure in the introductions to Infrastructure and Lands sections.

### Desired Condition (NRG-FW-DC)

- 01 Energy resources of National Forest System lands provide for public benefit that is compatible with protecting ecosystem integrity and other public resource values.

### Standard (NRG-FW-STD)

- 01 For hydroelectric facilities that are exempt from Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensing on National Forest System lands, ensure that special use permit language provides adequate instream flow requirements to maintain, restore, or recover favorable ecological conditions for local riparian- and aquatic-dependent species.

## Infrastructure

Infrastructure on National Forest System lands includes the built property created to support the Sequoia National Forest's use and mission.

Infrastructure includes road systems, trail systems, recreational facilities, administrative facilities, airstrips, and other facilities needed in and near the plan area. Other infrastructure includes public utilities, range-related facilities, and historic facilities.

Roads managed by public road agencies such as states, counties and municipalities that help provide access to National Forest System lands, are also part of the transportation system. Investor-owned utilities are also granted authorization to operate and maintain roads on National Forest System lands to access utility facilities. Travel management analysis is a separate process outside of land management planning to determine which roads are to be maintained for public use consistent with the land management plan.

Plan direction for recreational trails is included in the sustainable recreation sections in chapter 2 and chapter 3, and the national recreation trails and Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail sections in chapter 3.

A recreation facility is a discrete area on a national forest that provides recreation opportunities, receives recreational use, and requires a management investment to operate and maintain to standard. Administrative facilities are typically buildings and other related structures and features necessary to support the employees, equipment, and activities for managing national forests.

Public and investor-owned utility infrastructure is associated with Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensed hydroelectric and transmission/distribution power systems, but also includes other utility facilities, cable TV, telephone, and internet service, and municipal sewer service. Private infrastructure refers to facilities developed in private ownership used in conjunction with special use authorizations. Such facilities include buildings and other kinds of structures and improvements representing a broad range of permitted recreation and land use activities. These activities can serve single purpose use by individuals or families, as well as offer benefits to the public.

Management direction for infrastructure is to provide safe, energy-efficient, accessible, functional, efficient, aesthetically pleasing, and cost-effective administrative buildings and related facilities, while reducing fixed costs. Cost reductions occur through consolidation and decommissioning of obsolete or underutilized buildings, construction of new facilities where and when required, and by conducting proper routine maintenance of existing facilities.

### Desired Conditions (INFR-FW-DC)

- 01 Forest infrastructure, such as roads, buildings, campgrounds, water systems, and bridges, is managed to provide for the planned use and protection of resources and is maintained for health and safety.

- 02 Management operations on the Sequoia National Forest are energy- and water-efficient.
- 03 Roads allow for safe and healthy wildlife movement in areas of human development. Vehicular collisions with animals are rare.
- 04 Forest resources meet administrative objectives. Vegetation and soils are modified to accommodate facilities, but disturbance is minimized. Fire protection measures are planned to protect improvements.
- 05 Infrastructure (administrative sites, recreation facilities, and roads) has minimal adverse effects to riparian and aquatic resources.

## **Lands**

Uses on National Forest System lands include land acquisition and disposal, and special uses. Statutory authorities govern any land acquisition and disposal, and the authorization and administration of special uses. Special uses are managed in a manner that protects natural resources, public health, and safety and are consistent with National Forest System land management plans. Special uses are managed based on sound resource management objectives and sound business principles. All authorized uses to occupy and use National Forest System lands are evaluated and determined to be in the public interest. Determinations include consultation with other interested parties including Federal, State, and county agencies, Tribes, and non-governmental interests.

Existing authorized public and investor-owned utility infrastructure will be managed consistent with needs of public and personnel safety, and in compliance with applicable laws and regulations. Where there is conflict in meeting other plan direction (such as terrestrial vegetation, aquatic, and at-risk species plan components) the deciding official may deviate from meeting plan direction to achieve compliance with law regulation and policy.

## **Desired Conditions (LAND-FW-DC)**

- 01 Facility ownership and land access management support authorized activities and uses on National Forest System lands.
- 02 Coordination of land and resource planning efforts with other Federal, State, Tribal, county, and local governments, and adjacent private landowners, promotes compatible relationships between activities and uses on National Forest System lands and adjacent lands.
- 03 Isolated or scattered parcels of Federal land identified for disposal through exchange provide for a range of objectives and outputs with limited investments.
- 04 Land exchanges promote improved management of National Forest System lands through consolidated ownership blocks.

## **Goals (LAND-FW-GOAL)**

- 01 Take appropriate criminal and civil action and resolve cases of unauthorized occupancy and use.

- 02 Resolve unauthorized occupancies<sup>18</sup> through sale or interchange<sup>19</sup> of Federal land in conformance with the Small Tracts Act, when appropriate.
- 03 Perform special use permit administration, to extent necessary to protect public health and safety.

### Guidelines (LAND-FW-GDL)

- 01 Minimize the creation of new rights-of-way where feasible by using existing public or private utility rights-of-way to reduce impacts on other resources.
- 02 Fully develop existing communication sites before authorizing new sites unless new sites are determined necessary to fill coverage gaps for uses such as cell towers.

### Potential Management Approaches

- Where feasible and less impactful to resources than overhead facilities, bury new or reconstructed power distribution lines (33 kilovolts or less) and telephone lines to reduce impacts to resources such as scenery and at-risk species habitat.
- Acquire available private land and dispose of public land where needed to reduce administrative costs, foster resource programs, or resolve administrative problems and have favorable benefit-cost ratio.
- Acquire lands in the following priority:
  - a. Priority 1: Acquire
    - i. Key tracts of non-Federal land (1,000 acres) to enhance management efficiency.
    - ii. “Inholding land” to reduce costs related to right-of-way acquisition and landline survey.
  - b. Priority 2: Acquire
    - i. Remaining lands classified as desirable for National Forest System land status.
  - c. Priority 3: Acquire
    - i. Tracts that will become key tracts in the foreseeable future because of location or character, but immediate actions are not urgent.
    - ii. Land intermingled with or adjacent to National Forest System land, and primarily valuable for watershed purposes, at-risk species, timber production, or public recreation and needed to adequately consolidate National Forest System land.

---

<sup>18</sup> See FSM 2800 - Minerals and Geology Chapter 2810 - Mining Claims.

<sup>19</sup> See Public Law 97-465 (a.k.a. Small Tracts Act).

This page intentionally left blank

# Chapter 3. Area-Specific Desired Conditions and Management Direction

---

This chapter provides direction for specific management areas or designated areas. Where management areas or designated areas overlap, the more stringent or restrictive direction applies. Land management direction in this section applies to the Sequoia National Forest plan area as described. There is also plan direction for the Giant Sequoia National Monument related to recommended wilderness and wild and scenic river eligibility.

**Management areas** are areas within the planning area that have the same set of applicable plan components. Management areas do not have to be spatially contiguous and typically have a management emphasis. For this plan, management area direction applies to specific geographic boundaries. This plan has the following management areas:

- Wildlife Habitat
- South Fork Wildlife Area
- Conservation Watersheds
- Sustainable Recreation
- Recommended Wilderness
- Eligible, Suitable, or Recommended Wild and Scenic Rivers
- Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail

**Designated areas** consist of areas or features identified and managed to maintain a special character or purpose. Some are designated by statute (such as wild and scenic rivers or wilderness) and others are administratively designated (like research natural areas). The Sequoia National Forest has the following designated areas:

- Wilderness
- Wild and Scenic Rivers
- Giant Sequoia National Monument
- Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail
- Inventoried Roadless Areas
- National Recreation Trails
- Research Natural Areas
- Special Interest Areas
- Walker Pass National Historic Landmark

Maps of management areas and designated areas can be viewed in appendix A.

Lands of specific character are areas that are determined by specific descriptive characteristics and delineated by the character of the land, not static boundaries. Chapter 2 includes plan components for lands of specific character—such as vegetation types or California spotted owl protected activity centers—that apply where the characteristics that define these lands exist on the



Sequoia National Forest, which can naturally change over time. This plan also includes maps of the following lands of specific character (see appendix A).

- Riparian Conservation Areas
- Strategic Fire Management Zones

## Management Areas

### Wildlife Habitat

The wildlife habitat management area provides a focus on conservation of old-forest-associated species such as California spotted owl, northern goshawk, fisher, marten, and the old-forest habitat on which these species depend. This strategy recognizes that individuals of these species can be adversely affected by habitat disturbances, and that much of their habitat has been lost or is at risk of loss due to ongoing tree mortality and high severity wildfires. Forest plan direction for the wildlife habitat management area is to facilitate increased habitat resilience while also providing for both the near-term and long-term needs of old-forest-associated species.

Accumulation of fuels from past fire suppression and land management has resulted in the loss of high-quality old-forest habitat due to high-severity wildfires. Widespread tree mortality caused by insects and drought has killed many larger and older trees, which are essential to old-forest-associated species. The best remaining habitat for these species remains at risk of loss to fire, insects, and drought. Restoration treatments that would improve habitat resilience are needed and, given that less habitat remains, old-forest-associated species may be more sensitive to disturbance and even temporary loss of any remaining habitat that is essential for survival and reproduction. Therefore, forest vegetation management needs to retain essential habitat features for old-forest-associated species while increasing habitat resilience and sustainability. There is also a need for management to facilitate the development of high-quality old-forest habitat to replace what has been lost to disturbances.

The wildlife habitat management area (figure 13, appendix A) was initially mapped to contain the best remaining habitat for old-forest-associated species outside of wilderness where the need and opportunity to improve forest resilience was the greatest. However, large and severe wildfires affected the wildlife habitat management area as this forest plan was being developed, and much of the old-forest habitat has been burned at high severity. Given current climate predictions, large and severe wildfires will continue to be a threat to the sustainability of habitat for old-forest-associated species in much of the western United States, including the plan area.

Plan content for the wildlife habitat management area focuses on the long-term goals of conserving remaining old-forest habitat where ecologically appropriate, facilitating the development of additional habitat for old-forest-associated species, and ensuring that these old-forest habitat areas are surrounded by a diverse and resilient mix of forest conditions (as shown in figure 3). These goals apply to both the remaining unburned landscape as well as the post-disturbance landscapes. Because of the need to protect human safety, the management constraints included in the plan components for the wildlife habitat management area do not apply within community buffers. See the fire section for more information on community buffers and community wildfire protection zones.

### Desired Conditions (MA-WHMA-DC)

- 01 The wildlife habitat management area consists of resilient, well-distributed, well-connected ecosystems that provide sustainable habitat for old-forest-associated species. This includes a network of old-forest habitat patches surrounded by a diverse array of stand conditions.
- 02 The wildlife habitat management area is characterized by higher concentrations of old forest and essential habitat elements (see table 9). It includes some multi-storied canopy conditions, including some shade-tolerant understory trees such as firs and cedars, especially in drainages, swales, and canyon bottoms and on north- and east-facing slopes.
- 03 The wildlife habitat management area complements aquatic and riparian areas and wilderness areas to provide habitat connectivity.

**Table 9. Desired structural conditions by vegetation type for areas within the wildlife habitat management area**

These structural elements should be concentrated in suitable topographic locations (north and east facing slopes, and drainages, swales, and canyon bottoms) and distributed in such a way as to avoid posing significant fire risk.

	Snags greater than 20 inches diameter per 10 acres	Logs greater than 15 inches diameter and greater than 8 feet long (tons per acre)	Litter and understory dead wood (tons per acre)	% Dense mature forest* (tens of thousands of acres)
Jeffrey pine	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	6-10; patchily distributed	5-10%
Red fir	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	12-20; patchily distributed	20-40%
Wet lodgepole pine	25-40	10-20; all decay classes	20-30; patchily distributed	45-70%
Dry lodgepole pine	15-25	5-10; all decay classes	6-10; patchily distributed	15-30%
Black oak	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	6-10; patchily distributed	10-20%
Ponderosa pine	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	6-10; patchily distributed	5-10%
Dry mixed conifer	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	6-10; patchily distributed	10-20%
Moist mixed conifer	25-40	5-10; all decay classes	9-15; patchily distributed	45-60%

\* CWHR 4, 5, & 6, more than 60 percent tree cover.

## Standards (MA-WHMA-STD)

- 01 Retain all snags greater than 45 inches diameter unless they pose a threat to life or property.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers**

## Guidelines (MA-WHMA-GDL)

- 01 To provide future habitat for old-forest-associated species following a large-scale, high-severity disturbance in an area that had large trees and high canopy cover prior to the disturbance, identify, retain and promote the best available patches of remaining high-quality nesting, foraging, and denning habitat (6, 5D, 5M, 4D, 4M in descending order of priority) Desired conditions for amount, location, and configuration of retention should be informed by terrestrial vegetation desired conditions for the forest type and the potential to restore habitat connectivity as described in TERR-OLD-DC 02.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers**

- 02 To provide habitat for old-forest-associated species, before authorizing vegetation treatment identify the best available patches of high-quality nesting, foraging, and denning habitat (6, 5D, 5M, and 4D in descending order of priority), and consider ecological conditions as follows:

- When conducting treatments to improve resilience, on north- and east-facing slopes, drainages, swales and canyon bottoms, maintain clumps of large/tall trees with medium (40 to 60 percent) and high canopy cover (greater than 60 percent) large enough to provide beneficial thermal or predatory protection, amongst more heterogenous conditions. To facilitate movement, retain connectivity between clumps when possible. See figure 3 for an illustration of the desired conditions.
- On south- and west-facing slopes and on ridges, prioritize restoration toward resilience and informed by terrestrial vegetation desired conditions appropriate for the forest type.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

- 03 To provide essential habitat elements for old-forest-associated species, in high-quality denning, nesting, roosting and resting habitat (CWHR types 6, 5D, 5M, and 4D with large remnant trees), retain large snags (preferentially retain snags greater than 35 inches in diameter) to achieve desired conditions appropriate for the vegetation type within wildlife habitat management area (see table 9). Retain snags in an irregular patchwork, with clumps and concentrations in drainages and on north- and east-facing slopes.

**Exception: Does not apply in community buffers.**

## Potential Management Approaches

- Identify opportunities to develop future suitable (and resilient) wildlife habitat quickly through targeted treatments (such as thinning treatments in plantations).
- Within the wildlife habitat management area, when safe and practical based on existing conditions, use prescribed fire alone or in combination with mechanical treatments to restore forest vegetation, improve resilience, and move toward desired conditions.
- Identify opportunities to protect remaining old-forest patches in north- and east-facing slopes by strategically reducing fuel loads on adjacent south- or west-facing slopes, or along ridgelines.

- Promote connectivity of old-forest habitat by prioritizing restoration-focused treatments in areas between isolated old-forest patches. Avoid creating large areas of open canopy habitat (vegetation cover less than 30 percent) that would isolate patches of old, dense forest and limit wildlife movement.
- Within wildlife habitat management area, when safe and practical, promote hiding and foraging habitat by retaining understory cover in heterogeneous clumps of shrub patches, coarse woody debris, or other features interspersed with openings. Avoid creating large areas of continuous understory fuels.

## South Fork Wildlife Area

The South Fork Wildlife Area (figure 14, appendix A) is a unit of the Sequoia National Forest along the western edge of the South Fork of the Kern River between the western boundary of the privately owned Audubon Kern River Preserve and the eastern shore of the Isabella Reservoir.

### Desired Conditions (MA-SFW-DC)

- 01 Riparian woodlands are resilient and sustainable, containing mature cottonwoods, willows, and other associated riparian plants supporting native wildlife species.
- 02 Ecological conditions within the South Fork Wildlife Area support occupancy and breeding of federally listed at-risk species such as the southwestern willow flycatcher, least Bell's vireo, and yellow-billed cuckoo; and species of conservation concern such as Kern red-winged blackbird.
- 03 Recreation activities are managed to minimize effects to at-risk wildlife.

### Goal (MA-SFW-GOAL)

- 01 Coordinate with State and Federal agencies, other partners, and private landowners to conduct or allow studies and research within the wildlife area.

### Potential Management Approaches

- Work with adjacent landowners, other agencies, and partners to manage fuels and vegetation during the non-breeding season to reduce the risk of negative effects of fire to riparian forest vegetation, particularly during prolonged dry periods.
- Consider prescribed burning during the non-breeding season in the understory of the riparian forest following prolonged periods of drought or when a lack of flooding allows vegetation growth to degrade foraging conditions for at-risk species.

## Conservation Watersheds

Conservation watersheds (figure 15, appendix A) are identified as a network of watersheds (multiple 12-digit hydrological unit codes) that:

- have been determined to have a functioning or functioning-at-risk rating based on the Watershed Condition Framework;
- are anchored to areas (like wilderness or inventoried roadless areas) that augment resilience;
- provide connectivity for at-risk species; and
- provide high-quality water for beneficial uses downstream.

The management emphasis for conservation watersheds is to maintain or improve, where possible, the functional rating of these systems for the long term and to provide for persistence of at-risk species by maintaining connectivity and refugia for these species. The intent of plan direction in conservation watersheds is to focus restoration and monitoring over the long term, while still allowing for other resource uses or activities within these areas.

### Desired Conditions (MA-CW-DC)

- 01 Conservation watersheds provide high-quality habitat and functionally intact ecosystems that contribute to the persistence of species of conservation concern and the recovery of threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species.
- 02 Conservation watersheds exhibit long-term (multiple planning cycles), high, watershed integrity and aquatic, riparian, and terrestrial ecosystems are resilient to stochastic disturbance events such as wildfires, floods, and landslides.
- 03 The drainage connections between floodplains, wetlands, upland slopes, headwaters, and tributaries are intact and provide for breeding, dispersal, overwintering, and feeding habitats for at-risk species. These areas provide refugia if other areas of the watershed are disturbed by events such as floods, landslides, and fires.
- 04 The ecological integrity of upland vegetation is resilient and maintains soil productivity, water quality, and creates conditions to maintain or improve watershed conditions under the Watershed Condition Framework.

Objective (refer to WTR-FW-OBJ 01 in forestwide components for watershed conditions).

### Standards (MA-CW-STD)

- 01 For each existing designated road or planned temporary road, minimize road and landing locations in riparian conservation areas. Do not enter or put fill in wetlands or streams when constructing new or reopening temporary roads. Use alternative methods, if necessary, to use these routes. Close and restore user-created routes and decommission low-priority roads whenever possible during projects. Improve high-use designated roads and trails to minimize disruption of natural hydrologic flow whenever possible and restrict sidecasting as necessary to prevent the introduction of sediment to streams.
- 02 Locate new or relocate existing recreational facilities including trails and dispersed sites away from streams and meadows whenever possible. For existing recreation facilities within riparian conservation areas, evaluate and mitigate impacts, to the extent practicable, to ensure that these do not contribute to degradation of aquatic habitat.

### Guideline (MA-CW-GDL)

- 01 To reduce sedimentation, for subwatersheds included in conservation watersheds, net increases in road stream crossings and lengths should be avoided in riparian conservation areas unless the net increase improves ecological function in aquatic ecosystems, or the effects can be determined to be fully mitigatable. The net increase is measured from the beginning to the end of each project.

## Potential Management Approaches

- Within conservation watersheds, give restoration projects and actions a high priority for implementation and monitoring.
- Consider Watershed Condition Framework indicators when developing restoration activities within conservation watersheds.
- Complete inventories of watershed improvement needs in HUC-12 watersheds that have been identified as focus areas for restoration activities (e.g., priority watersheds).
- Within conservation watersheds, pursue opportunities for reducing road sediment sources and improving hydrologic connectivity at stream crossings (e.g., upsizing culverts, improving aquatic organism passage, realigning stream constraining road segments).
- When identifying and developing restoration projects in conservation watersheds, pursue opportunities to work with the public, partners, and external stakeholders to increase restoration capacity and the pace and scale of restoration activities.

## Sustainable Recreation

Recreation management area plan components provide for resource protection and support sustainable recreation.

### Destination Recreation Area

These areas have high levels of recreation, supported by more facilities, amenities, and services than other areas. Iconic destinations or well-known attractions attract visitors to specific locations (areas such as the Kern River, upstream from Lake Isabella). Destination recreation areas provide the most developed recreation opportunities in the Sequoia National Forest. The public will find high densities of visitors with a variety of opportunities available. Destination recreation areas emphasize such facilities as roads, parking lots, and restrooms. Conservation education and interpretation focus on developing a land ethic as part of the recreation experience. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes within destination recreation areas are primarily rural and roaded natural, with some semiprimitive motorized and semiprimitive nonmotorized classes (table 10).

**Table 10. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the destination recreation areas**

<b>Recreation opportunity spectrum class</b>	<b>Acres</b>
Primitive	0
Semiprimitive nonmotorized	0
Semiprimitive motorized	146
Roaded natural	9,071
Rural	16,163

### Desired Conditions (MA-DRA-DC)

- 01 The developed area footprint within destination recreation areas is appropriate to the setting, visually appealing, and well maintained.
- 02 A natural-appearing landscape is retained outside the development footprint.

- 03 Developed sites meet National Quality Standards.
- 04 National Forest System roads and trails provide visitors easy access to destinations.
- 05 Amenities and sustainable infrastructure are provided to support a wide variety of recreation activities near each other.
- 06 Available infrastructure and amenities are consistent with user capacity.
- 07 Interpretation and education activities provide learning opportunities to visitors about the natural and cultural environment and responsible visitor behavior.
- 08 Traffic and parking does not negatively impact visitor experience.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Consider destination recreation areas in travel management planning, allowable/prohibited recreation uses, and other projects that may impact recreation opportunities. For example, there should generally be more amenities and infrastructure (including designated motorized routes and areas) and more active management of recreation uses in destination recreation areas than in general recreation areas or backcountry terrain recreation areas.<sup>20</sup>
- Changes in visitor use levels, patterns of use, or the necessity to protect resources may result in more infrastructure, heavier maintenance, or more controls such as setting capacity limits.
- Consider the future implications of additional infrastructure or development accommodating recreation use in areas adjacent to or within the developed area.
- Consider accommodating additional recreation special use authorizations or partnership agreements to support providing quality recreation experiences, visitor services, and interpretation and education.

#### General Recreation Area

These areas are less developed, with fewer facilities, amenities, and services than destination recreation areas. General recreation areas provide opportunities for a range of activities for visitor participation, with moderate levels of use. Over time, general recreation areas may become more developed, if necessary, to accommodate changing use levels and types and to protect resources. In general recreation areas, multiple uses, other than recreation, are more evident than in destination recreation areas and in backcountry terrain recreation areas (see below). Recreationists may be near areas with working landscapes, maintained for multiple uses. These are areas where there are such multiple uses as fuelwood gathering, vegetation management, livestock grazing, utility infrastructure, and mining. Some lands may be modified to meet social, economic, and ecological objectives. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes within general

---

<sup>20</sup> Travel management decisions must be based on multiple factors and include public involvement (36 CFR 212), and whether a route or area is within a destination recreation area does not allow or prohibit a specific activity and is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a decision. Decisions about motorized routes and areas, including unauthorized routes, are site-specific travel management decisions that are made at the project level.

Note: the term “challenging backroad areas” used in prior drafts of the plan has been replaced throughout the final plan with the term “backcountry terrain recreation areas.”

recreation areas are primarily rural and roaded natural, with some semiprimitive motorized and semiprimitive nonmotorized classes (table 11).

**Table 11. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the general recreation areas**

<b>Recreation opportunity spectrum class</b>	<b>Acres</b>
Primitive	8
Semiprimitive nonmotorized	5,569
Semiprimitive motorized	20,037
Roaded natural	179,770
Rural	2,334

#### Desired Conditions (MA-GRA-DC)

- 01 This management area has limited amenities, few signs, and minor development.
- 02 Scenic integrity is generally moderate to high. Where developed facilities are present, they are aesthetically incorporated into the landscape. Scenic integrity is maintained at or enhanced from current conditions.
- 03 Recreation use is compatible with other resource management values.
- 04 Developed recreation sites provide opportunities within the roaded natural and semiprimitive motorized recreation settings.
- 05 A mosaic of vegetation conditions is often present, with most areas appearing predominantly natural.
- 06 Management activities, rules, and policies result in infrequent conflicts between different uses.
- 07 As new forms of recreation activities emerge; landscapes retain their natural character.
- 08 The road and trail system supports dispersed recreation activities in a variety of recreation settings, providing satisfying experiences with few visitor conflicts, and connecting people with nature.
- 09 Places for people seeking natural scenery and solitude are available in some areas. In other areas, motorized and nonmotorized recreation opportunities are easily accessed by roads, and visitors can expect encounters with others.
- 10 This area offers opportunities for expansion of recreation opportunities.

#### Goals (MA-GRA-GOAL)

- 01 Provide effective visitor information and programs to inform visitors of appropriate behaviors and stewardship responsibilities.
- 02 Highlight quality recreational experiences in this area so visitors are aware of the recreational opportunities in this area.



### Guideline (MA-GRA-GDL)

- 01 Use visitor use management strategies to reduce impacts on resources.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Consider general recreation areas in travel management planning, allowable/prohibited recreation uses, and other projects that may impact recreation opportunities. For example, there should generally be fewer amenities and less active management of recreation uses in general recreation areas than in destination recreation areas; also, recreation opportunities and infrastructure (including designated motorized routes and areas) may increase in general recreation areas.<sup>21</sup>
- Prioritize designing new infrastructure and development to manage user conflict, as needed.
- Consider accommodating recreation special use authorizations to the extent that the natural and cultural resource can sustain the activity.

### Backcountry Terrain Recreation Area<sup>22</sup>

These areas are undeveloped, natural, and suited for dispersed motorized and nonmotorized recreation use, including more challenging activities. Backcountry terrain recreation areas (BTRAs) are maintained for low visitor use and density. They are generally in remote areas with few amenities and limited recreation management. Backcountry terrain recreation areas may overlap with inventoried roadless areas, and the Forest Service may allow the continuation of such multiple uses as fuelwood gathering, vegetation management, livestock grazing, existing utility infrastructure, and mining. Backcountry terrain recreation areas provide opportunities for motorized and nonmotorized uses that are challenging, due to terrain and low density of roads and trails. Use levels are low and users are spread out, minimizing opportunities for conflict. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes within backcountry terrain recreation areas are primarily semiprimitive motorized, semiprimitive nonmotorized, and some roaded natural classes (table 12).

**Table 12. Acres of land within each recreation opportunity spectrum class in the backcountry terrain recreation areas**

<b>Recreation opportunity spectrum class</b>	<b>Acres</b>
Primitive	0
Semiprimitive nonmotorized	31,722
Semiprimitive motorized	231,410
Roaded natural	6,380
Rural	1,142

<sup>21</sup> Travel management decisions must be based on multiple factors and include public involvement (36 CFR 212) and whether a route or area is within a general recreation area does not allow or prohibit a specific activity and is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a decision. Decisions about motorized routes and areas, including unauthorized routes, are site-specific travel management decisions that are made at the project level.

<sup>22</sup> The term “challenging backroad areas” used in prior drafts of the plan has been replaced throughout the final plan with the term “backcountry terrain recreation areas.”

#### Desired Conditions (MA-BTRA-DC)

- 01 These landscapes provide opportunities for challenging and remote recreation experiences.
- 02 These areas contribute to ecosystem and species diversity and sustainability, serve as habitat for fauna and flora, and offer wildlife corridors. These areas provide a diversity of terrestrial and aquatic habitats, and support species dependent on large, undisturbed areas of land.
- 03 Management that supports recreation activities is minimal.
- 04 There is a low density of infrastructure and designated roads and trails.
- 05 Management activities, rules, and policies result in infrequent conflicts between different recreation uses.
- 06 Vast areas for nonmotorized cross-country travel offer visitors opportunities for exploration and challenge.
- 07 There is little evidence of cross-country travel.
- 08 Landscapes retain their natural character as new forms of recreation emerge.

#### Standards (MA-BTRA-STD)

- 01 Authorize new land special use permits only where it is appropriate to the remote setting.
- 02 Recreation special use permits must be consistent with low visitor use and the remote setting.
- 03 Any new recreation development must be the minimum necessary to accommodate the activity and protect natural resources.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Consider backcountry terrain recreation areas in travel management planning, allowable/prohibited recreation uses, and other projects that may impact recreation opportunities. For example, management of recreation uses and density of recreation opportunities and infrastructure (including designated motorized routes and areas) should generally be lower in backcountry terrain recreation areas than in destination recreation areas and general recreation areas.<sup>23</sup>

### Recommended Wilderness

The Sequoia National Forest plan revision area and the Giant Sequoia National Monument were evaluated as part of the 2012 Planning Rule wilderness recommendation process and wild and scenic rivers evaluation process. No other 2012 Planning Rule processes were evaluated in the Monument. As a result of the processes that were analyzed, the Monarch Wilderness Addition – South (4,734 acres) within the Giant Sequoia National Monument is recommended for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System. The Sequoia National Forest has one area

---

<sup>23</sup> Travel management decisions must be based on multiple factors and include public involvement (36 CFR 212) and whether a route or area is within a backcountry terrain recreation area does not allow or prohibit a specific activity and is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a decision. Decisions about motorized routes and areas, including unauthorized routes, are site-specific travel management decisions that are made at the project level.

recommended for wilderness designation: the Monarch Wilderness Addition – South (figure 17, appendix A).

#### **Desired Conditions (MA-RWLD-DC)**

- 01 Areas recommended for wilderness designation retain their wilderness characteristics until their designation as wilderness or other use determined by Congress.
- 02 Recommended wilderness areas are valued by the public for the ecosystem services they provide, including contributing to clean air and water, conserving wildlife habitat, providing opportunities for solitude or primitive unconfined recreation, and other wilderness characteristics.

#### **Goal (MA-RWLD-GOAL)**

- 01 Rehabilitate areas to address impacts caused by nonconforming activities that may affect wilderness potential.

#### **Suitability (MA-RWLD-SUIT)**

- 01 Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for road construction or reconstruction.
- 02 Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for timber production.
- 03 New energy developments or leases shall not be permitted.
- 04 Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for removal of salable mineral material (includes sand, stone, gravel, cinders, clay, pumice, and pumicite).
- 05 Grazing within recommended wilderness areas is suitable.
- 06 Mechanized transport and motorized use are not suitable in recommended wilderness areas; motorized travel and uses shall not be allowed unless specifically authorized for emergency or administrative needs.
- 07 Nonconforming projects or activities may be suitable if they are for purposes of ecological restoration for at-risk species habitat or for administrative purposes, and do not have lasting effects on the wilderness characteristics. Forest supervisors must approve such projects or activities. Where applicable, human-made water sources (guzzlers) or spring enhancements may be used to help mitigate negative impacts on wildlife or encourage at-risk species. It is recognized that effective maintenance and operation of water source enhancements may require use of motorized transportation and tools. Requests for human-made water sources will be considered at a project level and may be authorized by the forest supervisor.

### **Eligible, Suitable, or Recommended Wild and Scenic Rivers**

Both the Sequoia National Forest plan revision area and the Giant Sequoia National Monument were evaluated as part of the 2012 Planning Rule wilderness recommendation process and wild and scenic rivers evaluation process. No other 2012 Planning Rule processes were evaluated in the Monument. The Forest Service determined that 88 river segments (approximately 363.8 miles), located in both the Sequoia National Forest plan area and the Giant Sequoia National Monument, are eligible for inclusion in the National Wild and Scenic River System, and are either in whole or in part within the Sequoia National Forest administrative boundary (figure 18, appendix A).

Congress has not made a final determination on an additional river segment (approximately 1.3 miles of the South Fork Kern River) that was previously studied for suitability, was recommended by the Forest Service for inclusion in the National Wild and Scenic River System and is within the Sequoia National Forest's administrative boundary (figure 18, appendix A).

In addition to the following plan components, interim protection measures are provided in Forest Service Handbook 1909.12, section 84.3.

#### **Desired Condition (MA-EWSR-DC)**

- 01 Eligible, suitable, or recommended rivers' free flow is not adversely modified, outstandingly remarkable values are protected, and water quality and preliminary classification are maintained until a decision is made on the future use of the river and adjacent lands through an Act of Congress or a change in eligibility or suitability status from a future study.

#### **Standard (MA-EWSR-STD)**

- 01 Manage eligible, suitable, or recommended river corridors, to protect free flow and outstandingly remarkable values and maintain preliminary classification.

### **Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area**

FSH 1909.12 Chapter 20, Section 24.43 states, "[The plan] may, to apply plan components unique to the National and Scenic Historic Trail: provide one or more management or geographic areas for a national scenic and historic trail; reference the identified national scenic and historic trail right-of-way, place a corridor around the trail, or use other means to clearly identify where the plan components apply in reference to the trail." "National Trail Management Areas" are sometimes referred to as "corridors." However, in this plan, the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area is distinct from the "corridors" referenced in FSM 2353.42, and from the "National Trail Right(s)-of-Way" referenced in Section 7(a)(2) of the National Trails System Act (16 USC 1246 (a)(2)). The requirements to identify the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail corridor and right-of-way were met with the 1973 Federal Register publication of the selected route of the trail. The purpose of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area is to "provide for the nature and purposes" of the trail. The official land allocation in this plan is a "management area," rather than a "corridor." See the glossary for more information about the terms National Trail Management Area and Trail Corridor.

The Sequoia National Forest manages 47 miles of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail and its management area; 34 miles of trail are in designated wilderness (figure 19, appendix A).

Management direction for the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail (also referred to as the Pacific Crest Trail) is provided in this plan in terms of both the trail tread itself and its broader management area. With respect to the trail tread, the plan refers to the approximately 24-inch width of the trail tread. With respect to the broader management area, the plan refers to the area with boundaries that are up to one-half mile from the trail's centerline, along a line perpendicular to the trail. The specific boundaries of the management area are based on criteria used in the scenery management system and depend on topography. In general, not accounting for turns in trail, the maximum distance between two boundaries of the management area is 1 mile, along a line perpendicular to the trail.

Management area boundaries displayed in figure 19, appendix A, are based on geographic information system (GIS) analysis of terrain, distance, and visibility, and are intended for

illustrative purposes. To apply plan direction to specific projects and decisions, management area boundaries will be determined by applying the narrative description of the management area to site-specific analysis: The Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area includes the area in the visual foreground landscape zone encompassing resources, qualities, values, associated settings, and primary uses. The visual foreground landscape zone is the area that is visible from the trail's centerline at a height of 5 feet above the ground, extending up to one-half mile of the centerline, where visibility is not obscured by terrain.

Management direction listed below is organized according to plan components that apply to sections of the trail that are within designated wilderness and outside designated wilderness. Some of the plan components apply only to the trail tread itself and not the broader management area; the plan components that only apply to the trail tread itself are indicated below.

It is important to note that in addition, management direction that applies to all national forests through which the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail passes is provided in the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Plan and the National Trails System Act. Further information is also provided in the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Foundation Document. Management decisions must comply with the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan and the National Trails System Act, including, 16 U.S.C. 1246 (c): "National scenic or national historic trails may contain campsites, shelters, and related-public-use facilities. Other uses along the trail, which will not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the trail, may be permitted by the Secretary charged with the administration of the trail. Reasonable efforts shall be made to provide sufficient access opportunities to such trails and, to the extent practicable, efforts shall be made to avoid activities incompatible with the purposes for which such trails were established. The use of motorized vehicles by the general public along any national scenic trail shall be prohibited."

Travel management decisions are made at the project level, must be based on multiple factors, and must include public involvement (36 CFR 212). Whether a route or area is located within or outside the management area is not sufficient rationale, on its own, to justify a travel management decision.

## Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail in Designated Wilderness

### Desired Conditions (MA-PCTW-DC)

- 01 The Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail provides for outstanding journeys on foot or horseback along the Pacific mountain ranges. These primitive forms of travel hearken back to a simpler and more rugged time. Tranquility and closeness with nature can be found consistently along the trail, evoking a feeling of extended retreat from civilization, even if venturing out only for a day. There are campsites and related facilities for Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail users along the trail. Other uses do not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the trail.<sup>24</sup>
- 02 The recreation experience is consistent with or complements a primitive recreation setting.

---

<sup>24</sup> For definition of the "nature and purposes of the trail," see the National Trails System Act and the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan, and for further information, see other agency documents (e.g., Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Foundation Document).

- 03 Panoramic views of natural landscapes in a tranquil scenic environment are provided when possible.
- 04 Scenic integrity objectives and scenic stability levels are maintained to retain panoramic views within the management area. Lands visible outside the management area meet the scenic integrity objective of at least moderate.

**Standard (MA-PCTW-STD)**

- 01 If fire management activities are required within the management area, see FIRE-FW-STD 02.

**Guideline (MA-PCTW-GDL)**

- 01 Management activities within the management area should be consistent with a scenic integrity objective of very high (figure 24, appendix A) to minimize impacts to the scenic qualities of the areas through which the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail passes.
- 02 Visitor use management strategies should be implemented to minimize impacts to desired conditions for natural resources and visitor experiences through education, site management, regulation, and enforcement.
- 03 During wildfires, see FIRE-FW-GDL 05.

**Potential Management Approaches**

- Reconstruct or relocate existing portions of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail as needed to enhance the recreation experience and protect resources. Evaluate proposed trail relocations using the established Pacific Southwest Region process in partnership with adjoining Federal agencies, the Pacific Crest Trail Association, and other partners.
- Use key observation points to evaluate the condition of scenery resources. Analyze impacts of proposed projects by evaluating what is visible from the trail, including projects/areas outside the management area.<sup>25</sup>
- As needed, restore areas within the management area damaged by wildland fire suppression efforts after fire suppression efforts have ceased.
- As needed, restore areas within the management area after prescribed fire or wildland fire use projects.
- Place priority on the purchase of lands or interest in lands necessary to protect the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail experience as delineated in the Pacific Crest Trail land acquisition inventory.

**Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail outside Designated Wilderness**

Per the National Trails System Act and Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan, outside designated wilderness the trail is located to avoid substantial human modifications of the natural environment. Some sections of the trail outside designated wilderness travel through unmodified areas. However, there are sections of the trail outside designated wilderness that necessarily travel through modified areas, including utility corridors, highways, railroads, intensively managed farms and forests, or urban areas. These sections of the trail are as short as necessary to allow for safe use. The selected route of the trail was published in the

---

<sup>25</sup> As described in National Environmental Policy Act regulations (such as 7 CFR 799.33(a)(2)(v)).

Federal Register in 1973. Proposed trail relocations are evaluated using the established Pacific Southwest Region process in partnership with adjoining Federal agencies, the Pacific Crest Trail Association, and other partners.

#### Desired Conditions (MA-PCT-DC)

- 01 The Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail provides for outstanding journeys on foot or on horseback along the Pacific mountain ranges. These primitive forms of travel hearken back to a simpler and more rugged time. Tranquility and closeness with nature can be found consistently along the trail, evoking a feeling of extended retreat from civilization, even if venturing out only for a day. There are campsites and related facilities for Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail users along the trail. Other uses do not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the trail.<sup>26</sup>
- 02 The landscape character within the management area is natural-appearing and shaped by both natural processes and humans.
- 03 Panoramic views of natural landscapes in a tranquil and scenic environment are provided when possible.
- 04 Scenic integrity objectives and scenic stability levels are maintained to retain panoramic views within the management area. Lands visible outside the management area meet the scenic integrity objective of at least moderate.

#### Standards (MA-PCT-STD)

- 01 If fire management activities are required within the management area, see FIRE-FW-STD 02.
- 02 Design for utility and rights-of-way projects within the management area and mitigation of impacts from such projects must minimize impacts to Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail users and the scenic, historic, natural, and cultural qualities of the areas through which the trail passes. Mitigation measures including screening, feathering, and other visual management techniques to mitigate visual and other impacts of utility rights-of-way are required. Pursue avoidance, on-site mitigation, and off-site mitigation in successive order.
- 03 Motorized travel<sup>27</sup> and bicycle travel<sup>28</sup> on the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread and motorized travel along<sup>29</sup> the trail are prohibited year-round. Exemptions include where required by law (e.g., to enable landowners or land users to have reasonable access to their lands or timber rights,<sup>30</sup> to secure landowners the reasonable use and enjoyment of their land,<sup>31</sup> etc.), where the trail crosses or is located on designated motorized routes,<sup>32</sup> where the

---

<sup>26</sup> For definition of the “nature and purposes of the trail,” see the National Trails System Act and the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan, and for further information, see other agency documents (e.g., Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Foundation Document).

<sup>27</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1246 (c).

<sup>28</sup> 36 CFR 212.21, Regional Order 88-4.

<sup>29</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1246 (c), 36 CFR 212.21.

<sup>30</sup> 36 CFR 212.21.

<sup>31</sup> 16 U.S.C. 3210 (a), 36 CFR 251.110 (c), FSM 2734.6.

<sup>32</sup> Route: A road (motor vehicle route over 50 inches wide, unless identified and managed as a trail) or trail (a route 50 inches or less in width or a route over 50 inches wide that is identified and managed as a trail).

trail crosses routes authorized for bicycle travel, or if approved on a case-by-case basis to meet emergencies,<sup>33</sup> including search and rescue.

- 04 Motorized travel on designated motorized routes and in designated motorized areas is allowed within the management area. However, motorized travel within the management area that would substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail is prohibited.<sup>34</sup> Exemptions include where required by law (e.g., to enable landowners or land users to have reasonable access to their lands or timber rights,<sup>35</sup> to secure landowners the reasonable use and enjoyment of their land,<sup>36</sup> etc.), or where the trail crosses or is located on designated motorized routes, or if approved on a case-by-case basis to meet emergencies,<sup>37</sup> including search and rescue. Travel management decisions, including decisions about designation/removal, location, design, and management of motorized routes and areas, are made at the project level under the Travel Management Rule (36 CFR 212), and must ensure that motorized travel within the management area does not occur on or along the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail and does not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail.<sup>38</sup>

The following actions may be taken, if necessary, to ensure motorized travel does not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail:

- a closure of designated motorized routes or areas within the management area;
- b re-route of designated motorized routes within the management area to locations outside the management area, or to other locations within the management area; or
- c removal, blocking, or naturalizing unauthorized routes<sup>39</sup> within the management area.

However, such actions are not automatically mandated for all routes or areas within the management area.

- 05 Mechanized travel on routes and in areas authorized for such use is allowed within the management area. However, mechanized travel within the management area that would

---

<sup>33</sup> 36 CFR 212.21.

<sup>34</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1246 (c).

<sup>35</sup> 36 CFR 212.21

<sup>36</sup> 16 U.S.C. 3210 (a), 36 CFR 251.110 (c), FSM 2734.6.

<sup>37</sup> 36 CFR 212.21

<sup>38</sup> Travel management decisions should include rationale for the specific selected locations and widths of motorized routes/areas within the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail management area and the widths of motorized route/area crossings of the Trail and should explain how routes/areas designated within the management area are consistent with the prohibition of motorized travel on and along the Trail and the prohibition of motorized travel that would substantially interfere with its nature and purposes.

<sup>39</sup> Unauthorized route: A road or trail that is not a National Forest System road or trail or a temporary road or trail and that is not included in a national forest transportation atlas. Repeated cross-country motor vehicle use of National Forest System lands has resulted in unplanned, unauthorized roads and trails. Unauthorized routes develop without agency authorization, environmental analysis, or public involvement and do not have the same status as National Forest System roads and trails included in the national forest transportation system. Nevertheless, some unauthorized routes are well-sited, provide excellent opportunities for outdoor recreation by motorized and nonmotorized users, and would enhance the system of designated routes and areas. Other unauthorized routes are poorly located and cause unacceptable impacts. Responsible officials should work with user groups and others to identify those unauthorized routes that should be considered for designation based on the criteria in 36 CFR 212.55. This standard does not prohibit the designation of unauthorized routes through site-specific travel management decisions. Cross-country motorized travel and creation of unauthorized motorized routes is prohibited by 36 CFR 261.13.



substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail is prohibited.<sup>40</sup> Exemptions include where required by law (e.g., to secure landowners the reasonable use and enjoyment of their land,<sup>41</sup> etc.) or where the trail crosses routes authorized for mechanized travel.

- 06 To ensure that within the management area, consistent with STD 03, 04, and 05, motorized travel does not occur on or along the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail, bicycle travel does not occur on the trail, and motorized travel and mechanized travel do not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail, analysis and decisions related to the designation of motorized routes and areas, and authorization of mechanized travel, within the management area, must consider the local circumstances that affect the impacts of motorized and mechanized travel and affect management options within the management area.
- 07 Designated motorized routes and areas, and trails authorized for mechanized travel, may cross the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread; however, designations or authorizations for such crossings must comply with the management direction in the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan.
- 08 Hauling or skidding on the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread or using the trail for landings or temporary roads is prohibited.

#### Guidelines (MA-PCT-GDL)

- 01 Management activities within the management area should be consistent with a scenic integrity objective of high (figure 24, appendix A) to minimize impacts to the scenic qualities of the areas through which the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail passes.
- 02 New recreation events such as foot races, horseback endurance events, and fundraising events should not occur on the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread. New recreation events should only cross the trail tread at a limited number of designated crossings so that events do not substantially interfere with the nature and purposes of the trail and to minimize impacts to trail users and the scenic, historic, natural, and cultural qualities of the areas through which the trail passes.
- 03 Existing recreation events on the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread may be allowed to continue at current levels.
- 04 Authorized nonmotorized trails within the management area should be designed, located, and managed to provide for public safety and to minimize impacts to Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail users and the scenic, historic, natural, and cultural qualities of the areas through which the trail passes.
- 05 New buildings and structures within the management area that would be visible from the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail should be designed to minimize impacts to the scenic qualities of the areas through which the trail passes.

---

<sup>40</sup> 16 U.S.C. 1246 (c).

<sup>41</sup> 16 U.S.C 3210 (a), 36 CFR 251.110 (c), FSM 2734.6.

- 06 Visitor use management strategies should be implemented to minimize impacts to desired conditions for natural resources and visitor experiences through education, site management, regulation, and enforcement.
- 07 Vegetation management, including timber harvest, within the management area should be designed to minimize impacts to the scenic qualities of the areas through which the trail passes.
- 08 During wildfires, see FIRE-FW-GDL 05.

#### Suitability (MA-PCT-SUIT)

- 01 New commercial communication sites and energy generation sites within the management area are not suitable.
- 02 Locatable and leasable mineral exploration or extraction that causes surface disturbance within the management area is not suitable.
- 03 Commercial extraction of mineral materials such as sand, gravel, pumice, cinders, and other common variety minerals within the management area is not suitable.
- 04 Designated motorized routes and areas, and authorized nonmotorized trails, within the management area, including crossings of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail, are suitable.
- 05 Except as specifically exempted in MA-PCT-STD 03, MA-PCT-STD 05, and MA-PCT-STD 07, motorized travel and bicycle travel on the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail tread is not suitable year-round.
- 06 Grazing within the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail management area is suitable.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- Reconstruct or relocate existing portions of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail as needed to enhance the recreation experience and protect resources. Evaluate proposed trail relocation using the established Pacific Southwest Region process in partnership with adjoining Federal agencies, the Pacific Crest Trail Association, and other partners.
- Use key observation points to evaluate the condition of scenery resources. Analyze impacts of proposed projects by evaluating what is visible from the trail, including projects/areas outside the management area.<sup>42</sup>
- Use vegetation management (including prescribed burning, wildfire, herbicides, biological controls, grazing, timber harvest, etc.) within the management area to provide for public safety or conservation or enjoyment of the scenic, historic, natural, and cultural qualities of the areas through which the trail passes, including the long-term scenic character.
- As needed, restore areas within the management area damaged by wildland fire suppression efforts after fire suppression efforts have ceased.
- As needed, restore areas within the management area after prescribed fire or wildland fire use projects.

---

<sup>42</sup> As described in National Environmental Policy Act regulations (such as 7 CFR 799.33(a)(2)(v)).

- Place priority on the purchase of lands or interest in lands necessary to protect the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail experience as delineated in the Pacific Crest Trail land acquisition inventory.

## Designated Areas

### Wilderness

Congress has designated six wilderness areas that are either in whole or in part within the Sequoia National Forest's administrative boundary (figure 21, appendix A). They include the Domeland Wilderness, Golden Trout Wilderness, Jennie Lakes Wilderness, Kiavah Wilderness, Monarch Wilderness, and South Sierra Wilderness.

The direction below applies to all designated wilderness that occurs outside the Giant Sequoia National Monument. In addition to plan components that apply to all designated wilderness areas, the South Sierra Wilderness has additional desired conditions that are specific to four different management classes that occur across this wilderness (figure 22, appendix A). Individual wilderness plans for the Golden Trout, South Sierra, and Domeland Wilderness Areas provide wilderness-area-specific guidance in addition to the strategic-level guidance provided in this land management plan.

### All Designated Wilderness

#### Desired Conditions (DA-WILD-DC)

- 01 The wilderness character of each wilderness, including the qualities of untrammeled, natural, undeveloped, opportunities for solitude or primitive recreation, and other features of value (such as ecological, geological, or other features of scientific, educational, scenic, cultural, or historical value specific to each wilderness area) are preserved and, when possible, enhanced.
- 02 Watersheds are functioning properly and exhibit high geomorphic, hydrologic, and biotic integrity relative to their natural and current potential condition.
- 03 Fire is restored as an ecosystem process and natural disturbance agent in wilderness where possible.
- 04 Each wilderness area accommodates levels of recreation use that are ecologically sustainable.
- 05 Overall recreation use is maintained at a level that protects opportunities for solitude and wilderness character.
- 06 Forest visitors find opportunities for primitive recreation and solitude across the wilderness.
- 07 National Forest System trails that access wilderness are part of a high-quality wilderness experience for visitors. National Forest System trails meet National Quality Standards, with minimal deferred maintenance. Trails in wilderness are in resilient areas, and do not cause adverse impacts to at-risk species, water quality, soils, hydrologic connectivity, or cultural resources.
- 08 Concentrated use and associated resource impacts are directed to more resilient parts of the landscape, when possible and prevented from expanding in fragile areas.
- 09 Resource impacts of user-created trails and campsites are reduced.

- 10 If a wilderness permit system is in place, the permit system provides equity in access for all authorized and legitimate uses.

**Goal (DA-WILD-GOAL)**

- 01 Restore to natural conditions campsites that adversely affect water quality.

**Suitability (DA-WILD-SUIT)**

- 01 Except as specifically provided for in the Wilderness Act, and subject to existing private rights, the following uses are not suitable within designated wilderness.
  - commercial enterprise;<sup>43</sup>
  - temporary roads;
  - use of motor vehicles, motorized equipment, or motorboats;
  - landing of aircraft;
  - mechanical transport; and
  - structures or installations.

**Guideline (DA-WILD-GDL)**

- 01 Limit party size and number of stock per party to a level that protects social and natural resource values. The level may vary within or between wilderness areas.

**South Sierra Wilderness**

See figure 22, appendix A for locations of different wilderness opportunity classes.

**Wilderness Opportunity Class 1**

**Desired Conditions (DA-WILD-OC1-DC)**

- 01 Opportunities for solitude and isolation are high. There is little evidence of human activities. Encounters with other users are infrequent. Contact with other parties is rare to non-existent while traveling and are very low at campsites. Many opportunities for cross-country travel exist. This environment offers a high degree of challenge, self-reliance, and risk.
- 02 A highly unmodified natural environment generally characterizes the area. Ecological processes are largely unaffected by direct human actions. Environmental impacts are minimal and are usually restricted to areas along travel corridors. Most impacts recover on an annual basis and are not apparent to most visitors.
- 03 Natural ecosystems are strongly emphasized. Native vegetation is recovering naturally. Communication about rules and regulations occurs outside the area. Indirect methods of accomplishing management objectives predominate, but when needed, management actions can be direct. Site-specific regulations may be in place in unusual cases where resources require higher levels of protection. Maintained trails, signs, or facilities exist only for resource protection.

---

<sup>43</sup> Refer to the Wilderness Act for commercial services that may be performed (16 U.S.C. 1133 (d)(5)).

## Wilderness Opportunity Class 2

### **Desired Conditions (DA-WILD-OC2-DC)**

- 01 Many opportunities for exploration and isolation exist. There is some evidence of human activities, and the probability of encountering other users is low on trails, but other parties may be encountered at campsites. This environment offers a high degree of challenge, self-reliance, and risk.
- 02 An unmodified natural environment generally characterizes the area, except within trail corridors (50 feet on each side of a trail). Ecological processes are minimally affected by direct human actions. Environmental impacts are low and usually restricted to areas along travel routes and near campsites. Many impacts recover on an annual basis and are not apparent to most visitors.
- 03 Natural ecosystems are strongly emphasized. Native vegetation is recovering naturally. Communication about rules and regulations occurs outside the area. Direct on-site management of visitors is infrequent but occurs more frequently than in opportunity class 1. Routes are maintained for resource protection and user safety. R notes provide directions at trail junctions or at geographical passes.

## Wild and Scenic Rivers 1

### **Desired Conditions (DA-WSR1-DC)**

- 01 Outstanding opportunities for solitude and isolation are high. Encounters with other users are infrequent. This environment offers a high degree of challenge, self-reliance, and risk.
- 02 An unmodified natural environment generally characterizes the area. The ecosystem is stable and natural processes generally operate free of human-induced controls. Visitor impacts are minor and typically consist of temporary disturbances of soil and vegetation in camps and along popular hiking trails. Most impacts recover on an annual basis and are not apparent to most visitors.
- 03 Management emphasizes maintaining natural conditions and primitive recreation opportunities. Indirect methods of accomplishing management objectives predominate. Direct on-site management of visitors is rare.

## Wild and Scenic Rivers 2

### **Desired Conditions (DA-WSR2-DC)**

- 01 Some outstanding opportunities for solitude and isolation exist. Encounters with other users occur during the primary use season. Some off-trail opportunities exist to use primitive outdoor skills and experience challenge, self-reliance, and risk.
- 02 A primitive environment generally characterizes the area. The environment is generally unmodified with slight human-caused modifications evident in localized areas. The ecosystem is stable with some human-induced controls. Visitor impacts are minor and typically consist of temporary disturbances of soil and vegetation in camps, along riverbanks, and along popular trails. Disturbances may be visually noticeable along trails and around camps.

- 03 Management emphasizes maintaining natural conditions and primitive recreation opportunities. Indirect methods of accomplishing management objectives predominate. Direct on-site management is occasional and occurs more than in other opportunity classes.

## Wild and Scenic Rivers

Congress has designated three wild and scenic rivers that are either in whole or in part on the Sequoia National Forest's administrative boundary (figure 21, appendix A). They include the North Fork Kern River, the South Fork Kern River, and the South Fork Kings River. Management decisions must comply with applicable comprehensive river management plans (see appendix G). Such plans include corresponding monitoring that provides information about changing conditions.

### Designated Wild and Scenic Rivers

#### Desired Conditions (DA-WSR-DC)

- 01 The free flow, water quality, and outstandingly remarkable values of designated wild and scenic rivers are protected and enhanced from conditions at the date of designation. Development and management are consistent with each designated river's comprehensive river management plan and classification.
- 02 Public recreation and resource uses do not adversely impact or degrade the values for which each river was designated.

#### Standards (DA-WSR-STD)

- 01 Road and motorized trail access to rivers must be consistent with each designated river's classification.
- 02 Structures and facilities must be consistent with each designated river's comprehensive river management plan, classification, any other applicable congressional designations (e.g., wilderness, national scenic trails, etc.), the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act, and land management plan direction (e.g., scenic integrity objectives).
- 03 Any new recreation facilities, if needed, must be consistent with the river's classification and located to protect outstandingly remarkable values.
- 04 Utility rights-of-way within segments classified as wild must not be authorized. Utility rights-of-way within segments classified as recreational or scenic, may be authorized only if there are no alternatives and unavoidable impacts are mitigated.<sup>44</sup>
- 05 Use of facilities in existence at the date of designation that do not conform to a river's classification is allowed so long as the river's free flow, water quality, and outstandingly remarkable values are protected.

---

<sup>44</sup> The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act expressly prohibits the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC) from licensing the construction of a hydroelectric project or project works (e.g., facilities such as the powerhouse, access roads, transmission lines) under Part 1 of the Federal Power Act "on or directly affecting" a designated wild and scenic river. However, on the few rivers with a FERC-licensed hydroelectric project/project works within the river's boundaries at the time of designation, existing operations may continue.

- 06 Grazing is allowed so long as each designated river's free flow, water quality, and outstandingly remarkable values are protected.
- 07 When evaluating a federally assisted water resources project under the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act section 7(a) and where a comprehensive river management plan has not yet been completed, documented baseline conditions at date of designation for free flow, water quality, and outstandingly remarkable values to evaluate effects of the project must be used. A river's classification is not a factor in the evaluation.

#### Potential Management Approaches

- As conditions allow, close and restore to natural conditions dispersed campsites that are adversely affecting a designated river's water quality.
- Update comprehensive river management plans, as needed, to ensure protection of each designated river's free flow, water quality, and outstandingly remarkable values, in response to changing conditions (including monitoring) or new information (such as related to visitor management).

### Giant Sequoia National Monument

On April 15, 2000, President Bill Clinton proclaimed approximately 328,000 acres of the Sequoia National Forest as the Giant Sequoia National Monument (figure 20, appendix A). The management plan for the Giant Sequoia National Monument (monument plan) was approved by the regional forester in 2012, right before the Sequoia National Forest initiated plan revision.

The monument plan provides comprehensive management direction for all lands within the monument. The direction in the monument plan will continue to apply to the monument under this land management plan and is not repeated in this document but is incorporated by reference. The monument plan direction includes the Moses Wilderness recommendation. The monument plan (including designated areas, land allocations, and management areas found within the monument, as well as associated management direction) can be found on the Sequoia National Forest website.

The management direction in this land management plan applies to all National Forest System lands within the Sequoia National Forest *outside* the monument. The only exceptions include the management area direction found in this chapter for recommended wilderness (page 115) and eligible wild and scenic rivers (page 116). The plan components for these two management areas apply to the monument.

The entire Sequoia National Forest, including the Giant Sequoia National Monument, was evaluated as part of the 2012 Planning Rule wilderness recommendation process and wild and scenic rivers evaluation process. No other 2012 Planning Rule processes were evaluated. As a result, the Monarch Wilderness Addition – South (4,734 acres) within the monument is being recommended for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System, and 83.8 total miles of river within the monument were found eligible for inclusion in the National Wild and Scenic Rivers System.

### Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail

In 1968, Congress designated the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail (also referred to as the Pacific Crest Trail). The Pacific Crest Trail is a continuous long-distance trail from the Mexican

border near Campo, California, to the Canadian border at Boundary Monument 78 near Manning Provincial Park, Canada.

The Sequoia National Forest manages 47 miles of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail and its management area. Thirty-four miles of the trail are in designated wilderness (figure 19, appendix A).

Management direction and plan components for the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail are organized under the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area section in chapter 3, page 117.

## **Inventoried Roadless Areas**

The 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule (Roadless Rule) established prohibitions and permissions on road construction, road reconstruction, and timber harvesting on 58.5 million acres of National Forest System lands across the United States. This plan does not incorporate the Roadless Rule; this direction is included to show the management direction the Roadless Rule provides and in a format that explains Roadless Rule management direction in the context of other forest plan direction. Existing inventoried roadless areas are shown on figure 21, in appendix A.

### **Desired Conditions (DA-IRA-DC)**

- 01 The roadless character of areas identified under the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule is protected and conserved.
- 02 The roadless area characteristics present in the area are maintained, including:
  - high-quality or undisturbed soil, water, and air;
  - sources of public drinking water;
  - diversity of plant and animal communities;
  - ecological conditions for at-risk species and for those species dependent on large, undisturbed areas of land;
  - primitive, semiprimitive nonmotorized, and semiprimitive motorized classes of dispersed recreation;
  - reference landscapes;
  - natural-appearing landscapes with high scenic quality;
  - traditional cultural properties and sacred sites; and
  - other locally identified unique characteristics.

### **Suitability (DA-IRA-SUIT)**

- 01 Inventoried roadless areas are not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest may be allowed for other resource benefits consistent with the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.
- 02 Inventoried roadless areas are not suitable for road reconstruction or new permanent road construction, except for the exceptions listed in the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.



- 03 Inventoried roadless areas are suitable for restoration activities that can be accomplished consistent with the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.

#### **Guideline (DA-IRA-GDL)**

- 01 Management activities should maintain the roadless character of the inventoried roadless area.

### **National Recreation Trails**

The Secretary of Agriculture has designated three national recreation trails on the Sequoia National Forest: Cannell Meadow National Recreation Trail, Summit National Recreation Trail, and Jackass National Recreation Trail (figure 20, appendix A). The Summit National Recreation Trail is entirely within the Giant Sequoia National Monument. As a result, the Giant Sequoia National Monument Plan applies to the Summit National Recreation Trail and the following plan components only apply to the Cannell Meadow National Recreation Trail and the Jackass National Recreation Trail.

#### **Desired Conditions (DA-NRT-DC)**

- 01 National recreation trails meet the intended goals and preserve the values and recreation opportunities for which they were established.
- 02 The trail setting provides a variety of opportunities that complement the desired recreation opportunity spectrum class where the trail segment is located.
- 03 Foreground views from the trail meet a scenic integrity objective at least as high as shown on the scenic integrity objectives map. Middle and background views meet or exceed a scenic integrity objective of at least moderate.

### **Research Natural Areas**

The regional forester, with concurrence of the research station director, designates research natural areas. The purpose of research natural areas is to maintain biological diversity and to contribute to a network of representative ecosystems across the nation. Research natural areas are intended to provide ecological baseline data, and to be used for education and research that results in improved management of all National Forest System lands.

The Sequoia National Forest has two established research natural areas outside the Giant Sequoia National Monument: Church Dome Research Natural Area and Long Canyon Research Natural Area (figure 20, appendix A). Management of research natural areas is guided by individual management plans and by direction provided in the Forest Service Manual (FSM-4063).

Standards and guidelines for constraints on fire management activities within research management areas are included under the components for Fire in chapter 2.

#### **Desired Condition (DA-RNA-DC)**

- 01 Research natural areas have excellent examples of the ecological features and values for which they were established. They are generally natural-appearing, and ecological processes such as plant succession, fire, and insect and disease activity function with limited human influences. They serve as areas for the study of ecosystems and ecological processes, including succession, and as baseline areas for measuring ecological change due to disturbances or stressors like climate change.

### Suitability (DA-RNA-SUIT)

01 The following uses are not suitable in research natural areas:

- timber production
- other forest product gathering activities that impact natural ecological processes or are inconsistent with the objectives for which the research natural area was established

### Special Interest Areas

Special interest areas are designated by the regional forester if less than 100,000 acres and by the Secretary of Agriculture if larger than 100,000 acres. Special interest areas are addressed in Forest Service Manuals 2360 and 2372. Special interest areas may be designated for scenic, geological, botanical, zoological, paleontological, archaeological/historical, or recreational values, or combinations of these values. Special interest area designation allows national forests to meet internal and public interest in recognizing special values of certain areas and to tailor land uses to interpret, maintain, and enhance those special features. Land uses in a special interest area will vary with the type of feature recognized, for example, a recreation special interest area could have extensive developments to increase visitor access.

The Sequoia National Forest has five botanical areas and one geological area outside the Giant Sequoia National Monument (figure 20, appendix A):

- Bald Mountain Botanical Area
- Ernest C. Twisselmann Botanical Area
- Baker Point Botanical Area
- Bodfish Piute Cypress Botanical Area
- Inspiration Point Botanical Area
- Packsaddle Cave Geological Area

Management of these special interest areas may be guided by area specific management plans.

### Standard (DA-SIA-STD)

01 The Sirretta Peak trail must not diminish the natural conditions of the Twisselmann Botanical Area or adjacent sensitive areas, including areas to the north of Sirretta Pass such as Sirretta Meadows.

### Walker Pass National Historic Landmark

The Secretary of the Interior designated the Walker Pass National Historic Landmark in 1961. It is shared with the Bureau of Land Management's Caliente and Ridgecrest Resource Areas.

### Desired Condition (DA-NHL-DC)

01 The characteristics of the natural landscape and viewsheds that contributed toward the designation of Walker Pass as a National Historic Landmark are maintained.

This page intentionally left blank

# Chapter 4. Forest Plan Monitoring

---

## Introduction

Monitoring forms the basis for continuous improvement of the forest plan and provides information for adaptive management within the plan area. The forest plan monitoring program enables the responsible official to help determine where and when changes are needed in the forest plan.

The forest plan monitoring program measures management effectiveness and assesses progress toward achieving or maintaining the forest plan desired conditions and objectives through a set of monitoring questions and associated indicators. These are designed to inform management of resources in the plan area, including testing relevant assumptions, tracking relevant changes, and measuring management effectiveness. By using appropriate indicators that can be measured, observed, or described over time, management actions can be evaluated to determine if they are trending conditions toward the anticipated results. Not every plan component will have a corresponding monitoring question or indicator because monitoring in the plan monitoring program is focused on priority management questions and related core information that are achievable within the financial and technical capability of the Sequoia National Forest.

The plan monitoring program is just one piece of the monitoring that occurs within the Forest and region; project and activity monitoring, and resource or species monitoring conducted by other agencies and organizations may inform the plan monitoring program and adaptive management of the plan. To address plan monitoring program questions and associated indicators that can best be answered at a broader geographic scale than one plan area, the regional forester has developed a broader-scale monitoring strategy. The intent of the broader-scale monitoring strategy is to inform decision-making regarding the effectiveness of the forest plan, within the context of an all-lands approach, and realize efficiencies by coordinating similar monitoring across units, integrating agency protocols, and leveraging partner and adjacent landowner monitoring work.

The monitoring program outlined in the following pages considers the 2014 science synthesis,<sup>45</sup> 2014 bio-regional assessment,<sup>46</sup> and 2013 forest plan assessment.<sup>47</sup> Existing national and regional monitoring programs, like the Forest Inventory and Analysis National Program, the National Visitor Use Monitoring Program, the current forest plan monitoring, remote sensing data techniques, and ongoing monitoring with the states contribute to the plan monitoring program data sources. Monitoring is also coordinated with other Forest Service program mission areas (such as Forest Service State and Private Forestry and Research and Development), other Federal and State agencies, Tribes, partners, and the public.

Forest-level monitoring information will be collected every year for many, but not all, monitoring questions. The collected information will be evaluated on a biennial basis. The first evaluation report is anticipated no later than 2 years after the effective date of the forest plan decision. This biennial

---

<sup>45</sup> Long, Jonathan W.; Quinn-Davidson, Lenya; Skinner, Carl N., eds. 2014. Science synthesis to support socioecological resilience in the Sierra Nevada and southern Cascade Range. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-247. Albany, CA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station. 723 p.

<sup>46</sup> USDA Forest Service. 2014. Final Sierra Nevada Bio-Regional Assessment. Management Bulletin R5-MB-268. Vallejo, CA. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region

<sup>47</sup> USDA Forest Service. 2013. Final Sequoia National Forest assessment. Management Bulletin R5-MB-267. Vallejo, CA. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region.

evaluation includes information gathered through this plan monitoring program and may include relevant information from the Pacific Southwest Region's broader-scale monitoring strategy. A written report of the evaluation will be made available to the public. The evaluation will identify if changes may be warranted to the plan, plan monitoring program, management activities, or assessment. Where frequency of monitoring is longer than 2 years, evaluation of that information will be made in the next biennial evaluation. For example, a data collection program that takes place once every 5 years, will then be included in every third evaluation report.

The plan monitoring program contains one or more monitoring questions and associated indicators addressing each of the following topics required under the 2012 Planning Rule (36 CFR 219.12(a)(5)):

1. Status of select watershed conditions.
2. Status of select ecological conditions including key characteristics of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.
3. Status of focal species to assess the ecological conditions required under the Code of Federal Regulations, specifically 36 CFR 219.9.
4. Status of a select set of ecological conditions required under 36 CFR 219.9 to contribute to the recovery of federally listed threatened and endangered species, conserve proposed and candidate species, and maintain a viable population of each species of conservation concern.
5. Status of visitor use, visitor satisfaction, and progress toward meeting recreation objectives.
6. Measurable changes on the plan area related to climate change and other stressors that may be affecting the plan area.
7. Progress toward meeting the desired conditions and objectives in the plan, including for providing multiple-use opportunities.
8. Effects of each management system to determine that they do not substantially and permanently impair the productivity of the land (16 U.S.C. 1604(g)(3)(C)).

Some monitoring questions and associated indicators may address more than one of these required topics. The entire plan monitoring program must be within the financial and technical capability of the Sequoia National Forest, augmented by broader-scale monitoring by the Pacific Southwest Region and other monitoring with partners. Version 1.0 of the Broader-scale Monitoring Strategy was finalized in 2020 and is available on the Pacific Southwest Region's Planning website and from the Regional Monitoring and Adaptive Management Coordinator.

The plan monitoring program for the Sequoia National Forest is presented below in a set of tables, each related to one of the eight required topics previously listed. Monitoring questions for terrestrial ecosystems and aquatic ecosystems are presented in separate tables. It should be noted that monitoring to inform one of the eight required topics can also be used to inform another topic. For example, information from the at-risk species topic (number 4) could be used in the evaluation of ecological conditions/key characteristics of aquatic ecosystems (number 2). In the tables, each row represents a single monitoring question and associated indicators used to respond to a selected desired condition or objective. The desired conditions are generally complex statements that cannot be fully monitored. Therefore, the monitoring questions and associated indicators focus on some core aspect of the desired condition related to the required monitoring item and that are practicable to be monitored. Details of the plan monitoring program—including monitoring and analysis protocols, data collection schedules, responsible parties, and data management—will be part of a separate monitoring guide.

## Monitoring Program

### Watershed Conditions

These monitoring questions and their associated indicators are related to water resources and watershed conditions in the forest plan area.

**Table 13. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate watershed conditions**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
WS01	WTR-FW-DC-03	To what extent are watersheds in proper functioning condition being maintained, and watersheds in altered or impaired condition being improved?	Watershed Condition Framework classification

### Terrestrial Ecosystems

A select set of ecological conditions is monitored for terrestrial ecosystems. The monitoring questions and indicators are selected to measure the effectiveness of the forest plan to maintain or restore ecological conditions for key ecosystem characteristics associated with composition, structure, function, and connectivity.

**Table 14. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate conditions for terrestrial ecosystems**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
TE01	TERR-OLD-DC-02	To what extent are the old-forest areas approaching the natural range of variation?	-- Proportion of area with large trees --Number of large trees and snags per acre by forest type
TE02	TERR-MONT-DC-03 TERR-MONT-DC-01 table 1	What is the status and trend of ponderosa, Jeffrey, and sugar pine in select locations?	-- Pine relative density; basal area; average diameter at breast height; regeneration density; and health -- Acres of treated forest, by treatment type and ecological zone

## Aquatic Ecosystems

A select set of ecological conditions are monitored for riparian and aquatic ecosystems. The monitoring questions and indicators are selected to measure the effectiveness of the plan to maintain or restore ecological conditions for key ecosystem characteristics associated with composition, structure, function, and connectivity.

**Table 15. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate ecological conditions for aquatic and riparian ecosystems**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
AE01	WTR-RCA-MEAD-DC-05	What is the trend in the condition of selected meadows and other riparian areas?	-- Meadow and riparian vegetation condition
	WTR-RCA-DC-05		-- Meadow greenness or wetness indices
	WTR-RCA-DC-06		-- Stream physical condition -- Acres of riparian areas restored

## Focal Species

Focal species are a small subset of species whose status permits inference to the integrity of the larger ecological system to which they belong. Focal species monitoring provides information regarding the effectiveness of the plan in providing the ecological conditions necessary to maintain the diversity of plant and animal communities and the persistence of native species in the plan area. They should act as indicators for the attributes of community composition, structure, connectivity or function, or factors that regulate them.

An effective focal species or assemblage of species will be sensitive to the ecosystem components or habitat attributes of concern. Monitoring questions should relate the species to the ecological condition and reason for its selection; indicators may include affected attributes of the species, such as presence or occupancy, habitat use, reproductive rate, and population trends. If the focal species' sensitivity to habitat changes cannot be directly attributable to a cause-and-effect relationship, then the influence of habitat change on the focal species may not be separable from the influence of other factors on the species, such as climate change, predation, disease, or competition.

Focal species are intended to reduce the cost and effort of ecosystem monitoring and should only be used when direct measurement of resources is not efficient or practical.

**Table 16. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate the status of focal species**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
FS01	TERR-BLCK-DC-01	What is the status and trend of black oak trees?	-- Density of large trees -- Regeneration -- Incidence of insects, diseases, and mortality



## Ecological Conditions for At-risk Species

For select at-risk species, a select set of ecological conditions, including habitat, is monitored. The selected ecological conditions are necessary to provide for diversity of plant and animal communities and contribute to the recovery of, conserve, or maintain the viability of at-risk species within the plan area. At-risk species include federally recognized threatened, endangered, proposed, and candidate species plus the species of conservation concern identified for the Sequoia. Only a select set of ecological conditions is monitored for select at-risk species and may include characteristics at both the ecosystem and species-specific levels of terrestrial, riparian, or aquatic ecosystems.

**Table 17. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate ecological conditions for select at-risk species**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
AR01	SPEC-FW-DC-02	Do stream temperatures support persistence of native at-risk aquatic species in select reaches?	Water temperature (maximum summer stream temperature; average daily stream temperatures; maximum daily average stream temperature during summer and fall for fall spawners; maximum and minimum winter stream temperatures).
AR02	SPEC-FW-DC 01 SPEC-FW-DC 02 SPEC-PLANT-STD 03 TERR-SH-DC 01	To what extent is suitable habitat for at-risk plant and lichen species being maintained or improved?	-- Extent of suitable habitat -- Proportion of suitable habitat disturbed -- Proportion of suitable habitat improved
AR03	SPEC-CSO-DC 01 SPEC-CSO-DC 02 SPEC-CSO-STD 02 SPEC-CSO-STD 03	What is the status and trend of highest quality and best available nesting and roosting habitat in California Spotted Owl Protected Activity Centers (PACs) and territories?	-- Proportion of PACs and territories with CWHR 4M/D and 5M/D, 6 and large snags -- Proportion of PACs and territories affected by disturbance (e.g., wildland fire, tree mortality) -- Treatment acres in PACs and territories

## Visitor Use, Visitor Satisfaction, and Progress toward Meeting Recreation Objectives

The plan monitoring program includes monitoring questions and associated indicators that address the status of visitor use, visitor satisfaction, and progress toward meeting recreation objectives.

**Table 18. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate visitor use, visitor satisfaction, and progress toward meeting recreation objectives**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
VU01	REC-FW-DC-03	What are the trends in visitor use and satisfaction?	-- Visitor use and satisfaction (National Visitor Use Monitoring survey) -- Visitor recreational activity by type -- Visitor demographics
VU02	REC-FW-DC-13 REC-FW-OBJ-01	What percentage of the inventoried motorized and nonmotorized trail system miles meet National Quality Standards <sup>48</sup> ?	-- Inventoried motorized and nonmotorized trail system miles -- Miles of trail that meet National Quality Standards.

## Climate Change and Other Stressors

The plan monitoring program includes monitoring questions and associated indicators to determine whether there are measurable changes on the plan area resulting from climate change and other stressors. Monitoring of carbon stocks and trends across the Sequoia and other national forests is included in the Region's Broader Scale Monitoring Strategy.

**Table 19. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that measure changes on the plan area resulting from climate change and other stressors**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
CC01	TERR-FW-DC-02	How is the rate and distribution of drought-related tree mortality changing?	-- Tree mortality by ecosystem type -- Spatial extent of tree mortality by ecosystem type and severity class
CC02	FIRE-FW-DC-04	How are fire regimes changing compared to the desired conditions and the natural range of variation?	-- Fire return interval departure -- Number and acres of fire by ecological zone -- Fire severity by ecological zone

<sup>48</sup> FSH 2309.18, Section 15

## Progress toward Meeting the Desired Conditions, Objectives, or other Plan Components

Progress toward meeting desired conditions, objectives, or other plan components that do not fall under one of the other eight required items are included in the monitoring program. Specifically, the plan monitoring program must contain one or more questions and associated indicators addressing the plan contributions to communities, social and economic sustainability of communities, multiple use management in the plan area, or progress toward meeting the desired conditions and objectives related to social and economic sustainability.

**Table 20. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate progress toward meeting desired conditions not addressed elsewhere in the monitoring program, particularly those related to social and economic sustainability of communities**

Code	Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component	Monitoring question	Associated indicators
PC01	VIPS-FW-DC-01 WTR-FW-GOAL-02 REC-FW-GOAL-03	To what extent are partnerships helping the Forest accomplish objectives?	-- Workforce -- Partnership agreements Volunteer agreements -- Accomplishments
PC02	FIRE-FW-DC-02	What management actions are contributing to the achievement of desired conditions relating to fire regimes?	-- Acres of fire managed for resource objectives by ecological zone -- Acres of fire by objective within each strategic fire management zone -- Acres of prescribed fire -- Acres of mechanical treatment
PC03	LOC-FW-DC-03	What are the economic contributions of forest-based uses and ecological services to the local communities?	-- Local economic conditions -- Forest contributions

## Productivity of the Land

This monitoring requirement comes from the National Forest Management Act requirement that there be research regarding the effects of timber management systems on the productivity of the land, and that such research is to be based on continuous monitoring and assessment in the field. Monitoring is focused on key ecosystem characteristics related to soils and soil productivity.

**Table 21. Monitoring questions and associated indicators that evaluate soils and soil productivity**

<b>Code</b>	<b>Selected desired condition and objective or other plan component</b>	<b>Monitoring question</b>	<b>Associated indicators</b>
PR01	WTR-FW-DC-04	How does soil disturbance differ from pre- and post-activity for timber management?	-- Soil compaction -- Erosion -- Displacement

This page intentionally left blank

# Appendices

---

Appendix A: Maps

Appendix B: Proposed and Possible Actions

Appendix C: A Renewed Partnership Focus for the Sequoia National Forest

Appendix D: Timber Suitability and Management

Appendix E: Aquatic and Riparian Conservation Strategy

Appendix F: Species of Conservation Concern

Appendix G: Existing Resource Plans

Appendix H: Geographic Definitions of Mixed Conifer Types and Application for Wildlife Territories

This page intentionally left blank

## Appendix A: Maps

### Lands of Specific Character

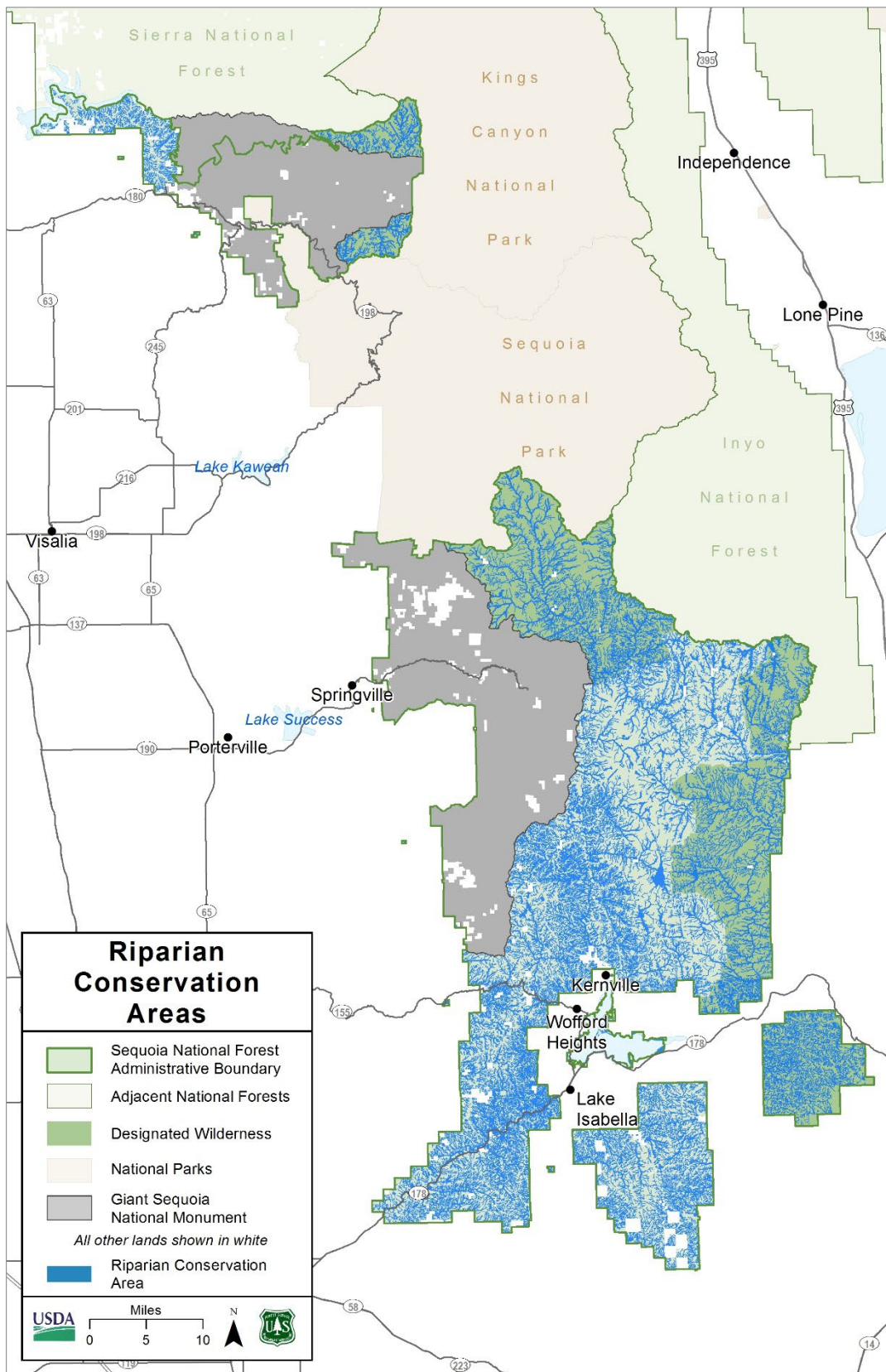


Figure 11. Riparian conservation areas



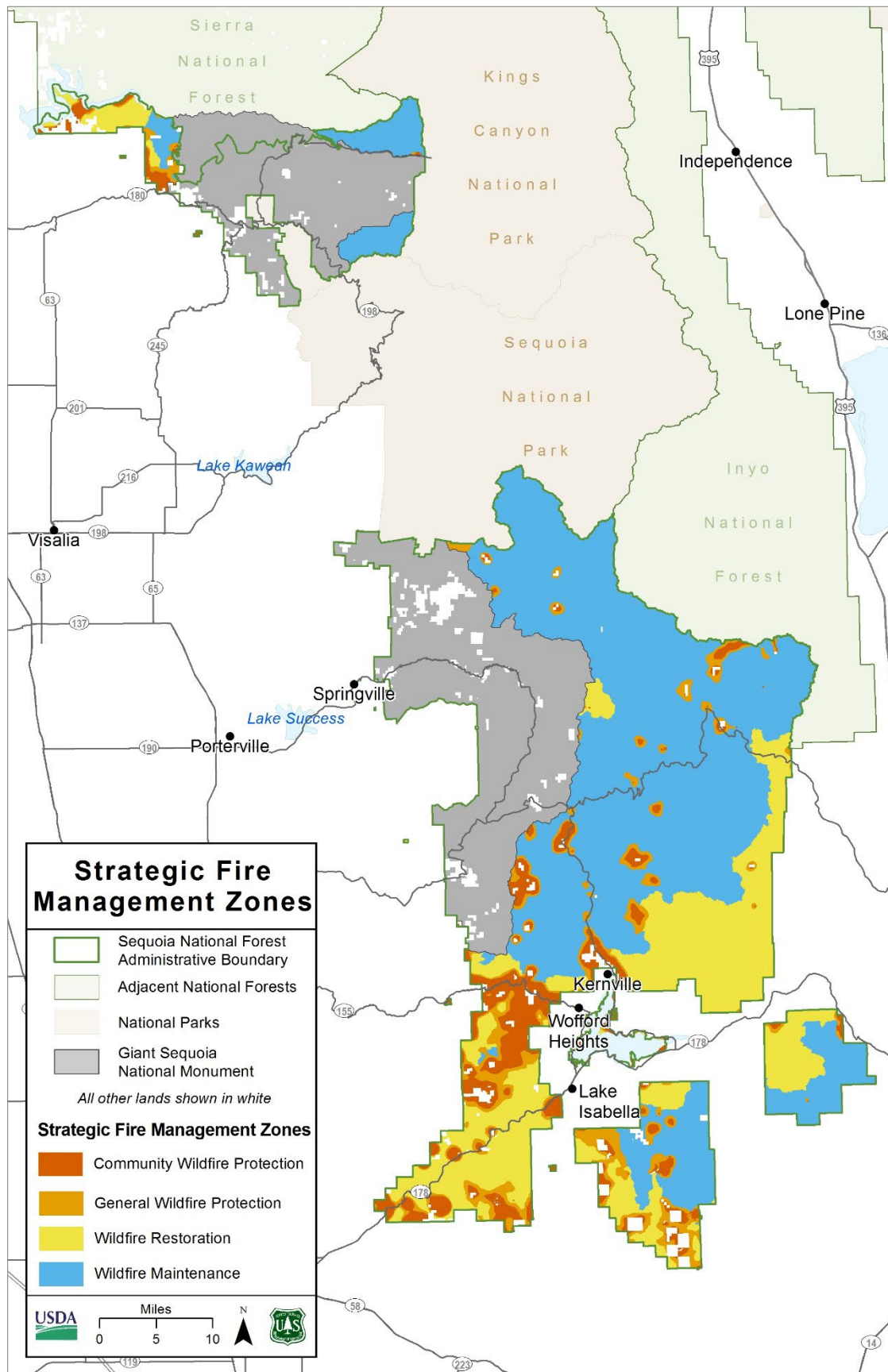


Figure 12. Strategic fire management zones

## Management Areas

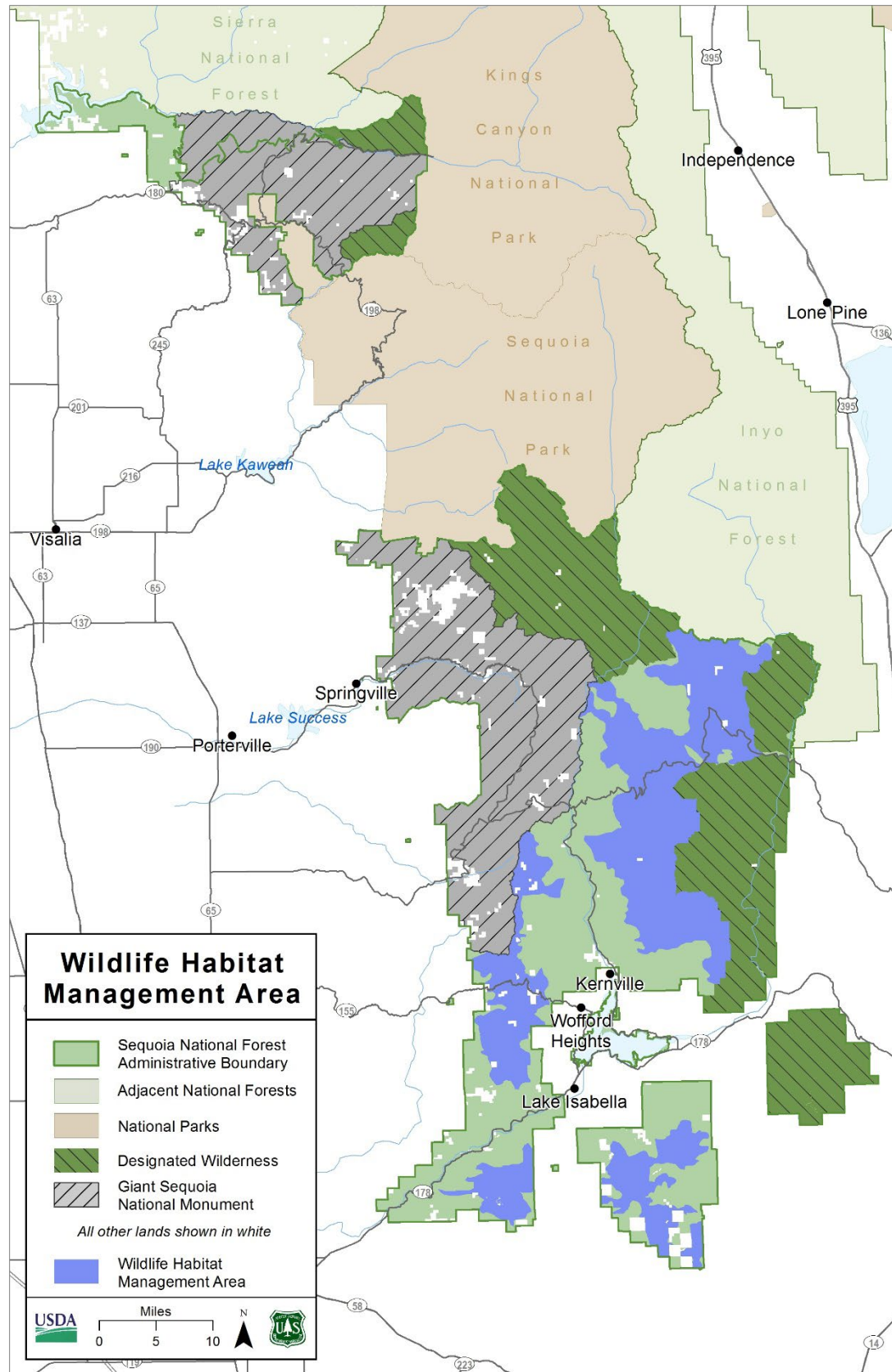


Figure 13. Wildlife habitat management areas

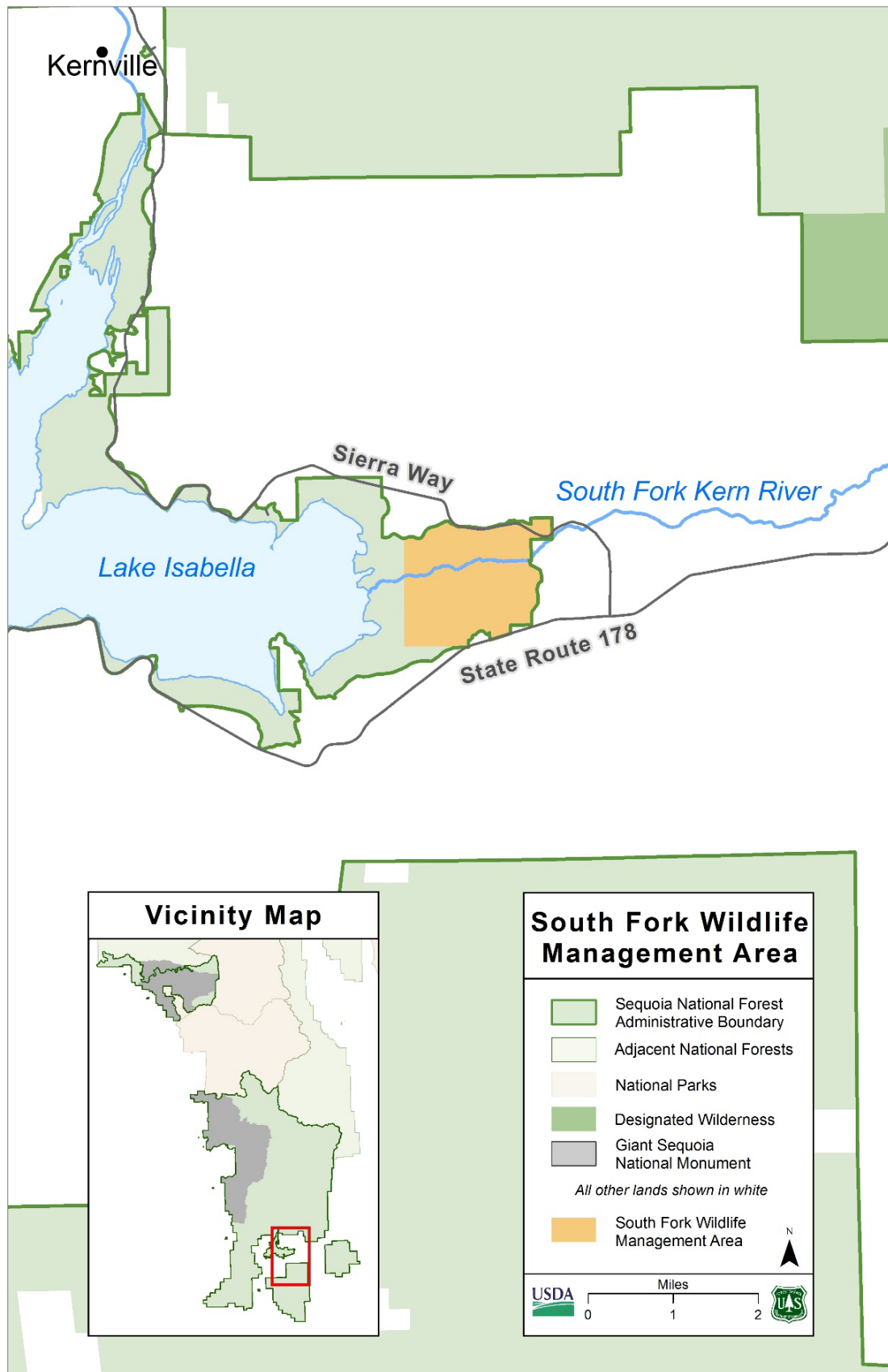


Figure 14. South Fork Wildlife Management Area



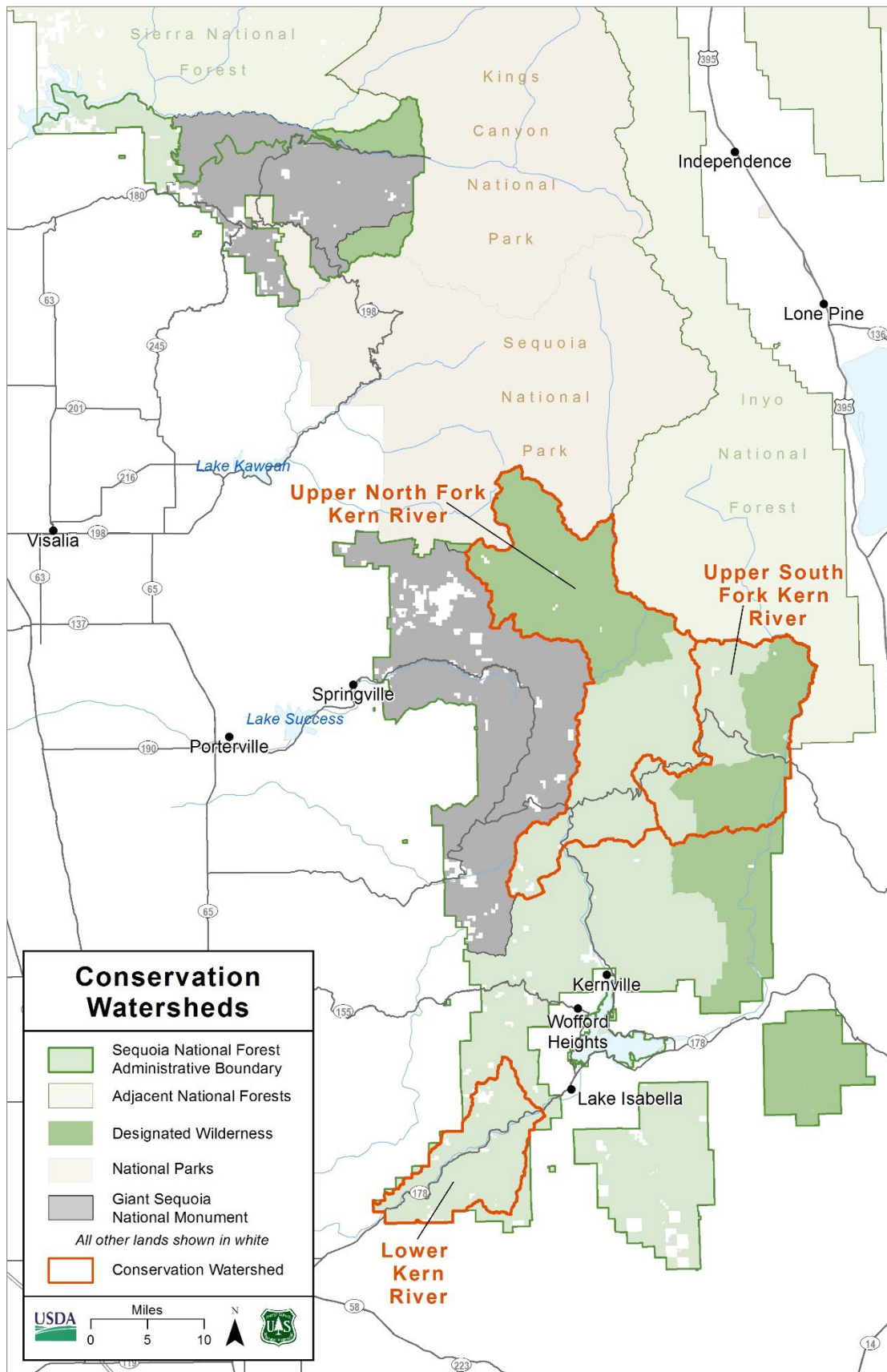


Figure 15. Conservation watersheds

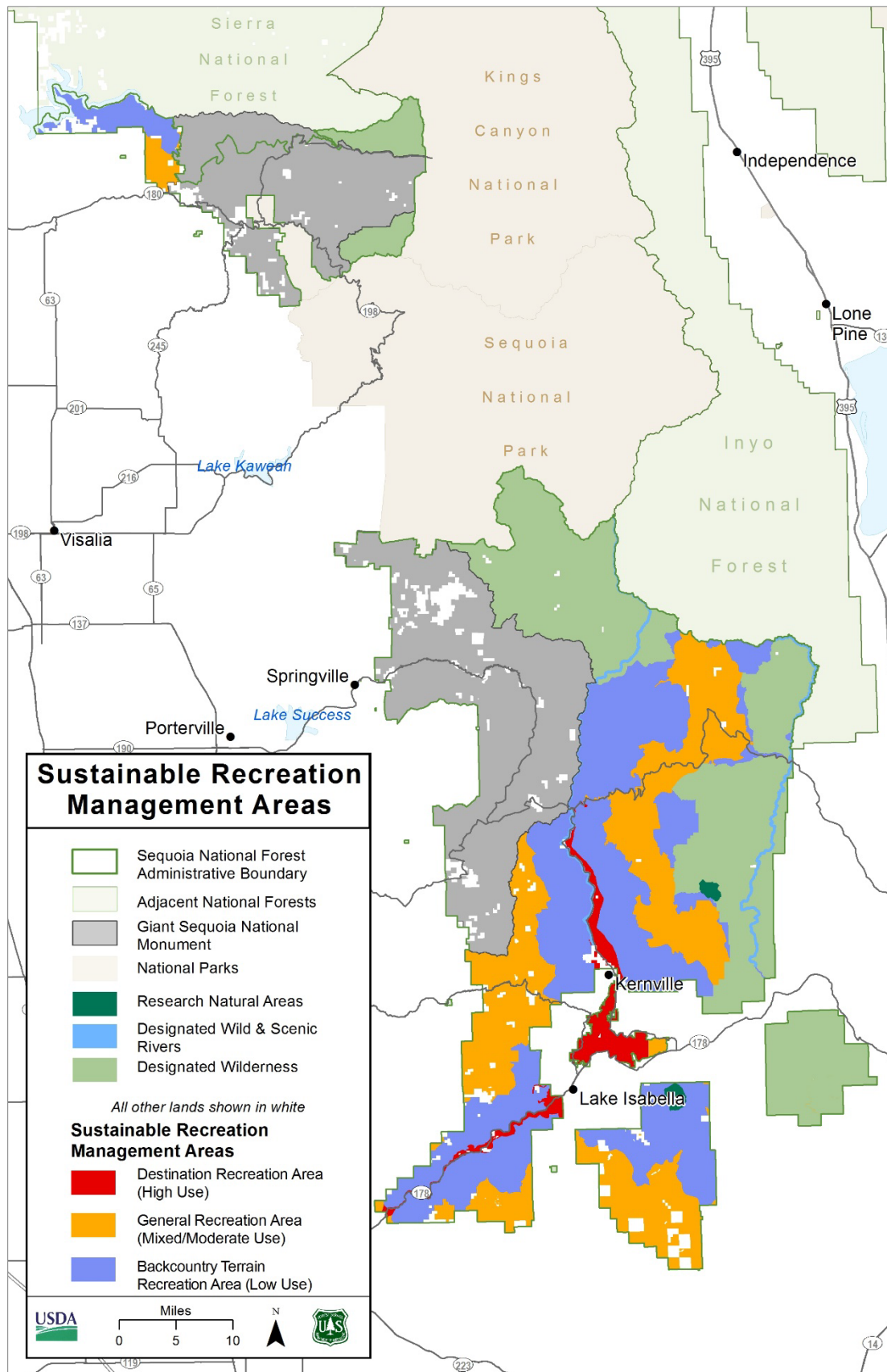


Figure 16. Sustainable recreation management areas

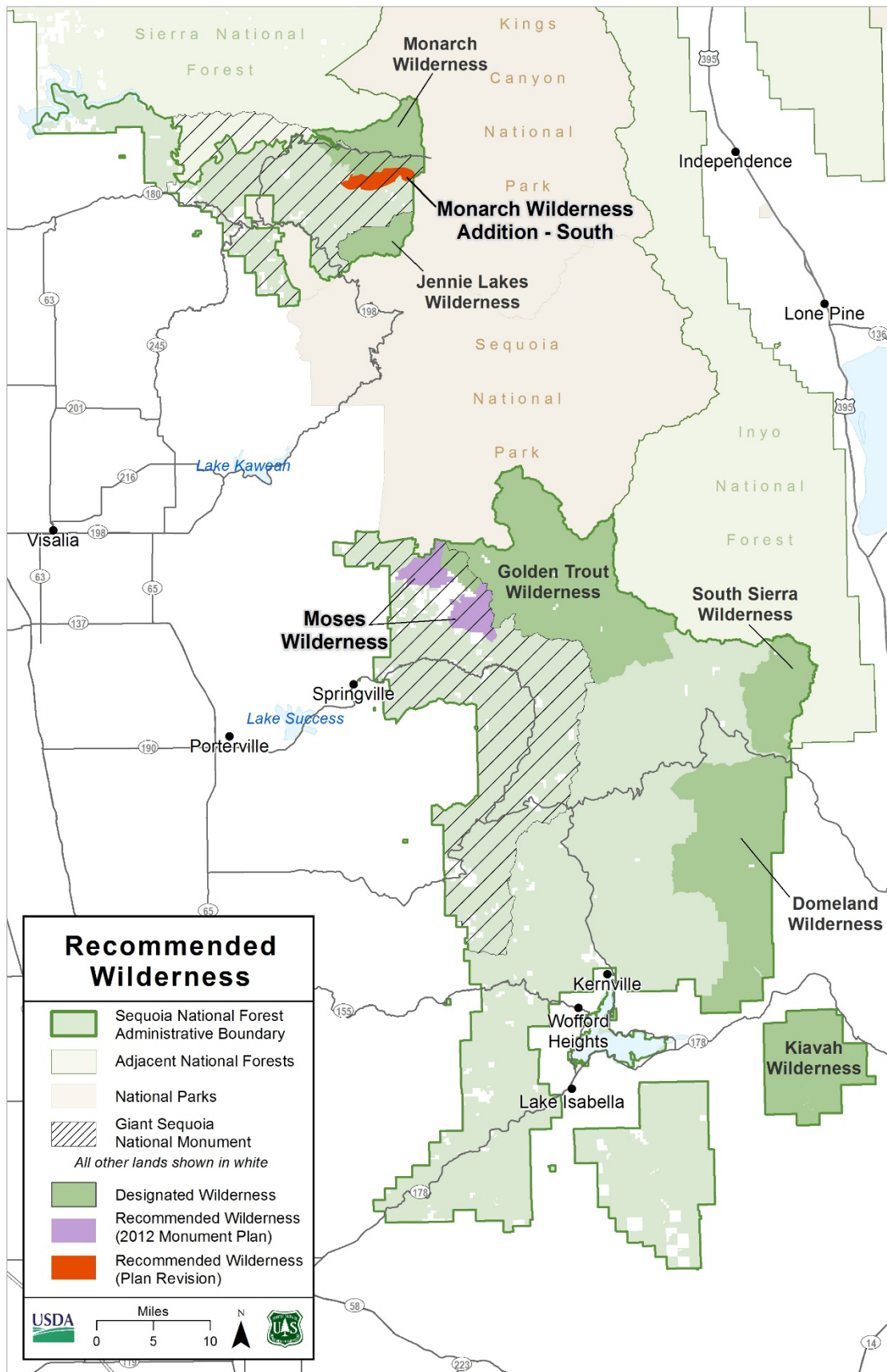


Figure 17. Recommended wilderness



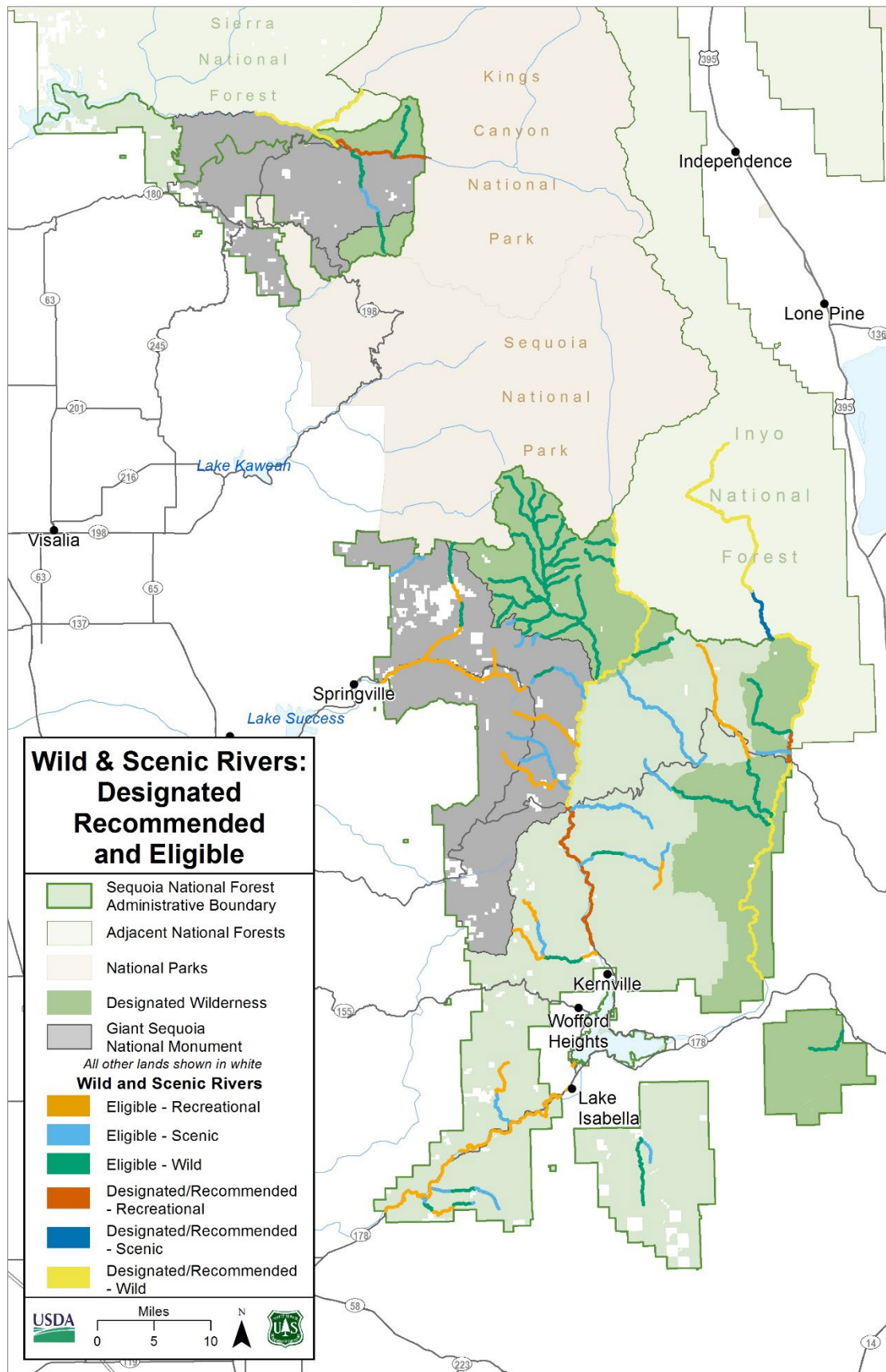


Figure 18. Designated, recommended, and eligible wild and scenic rivers

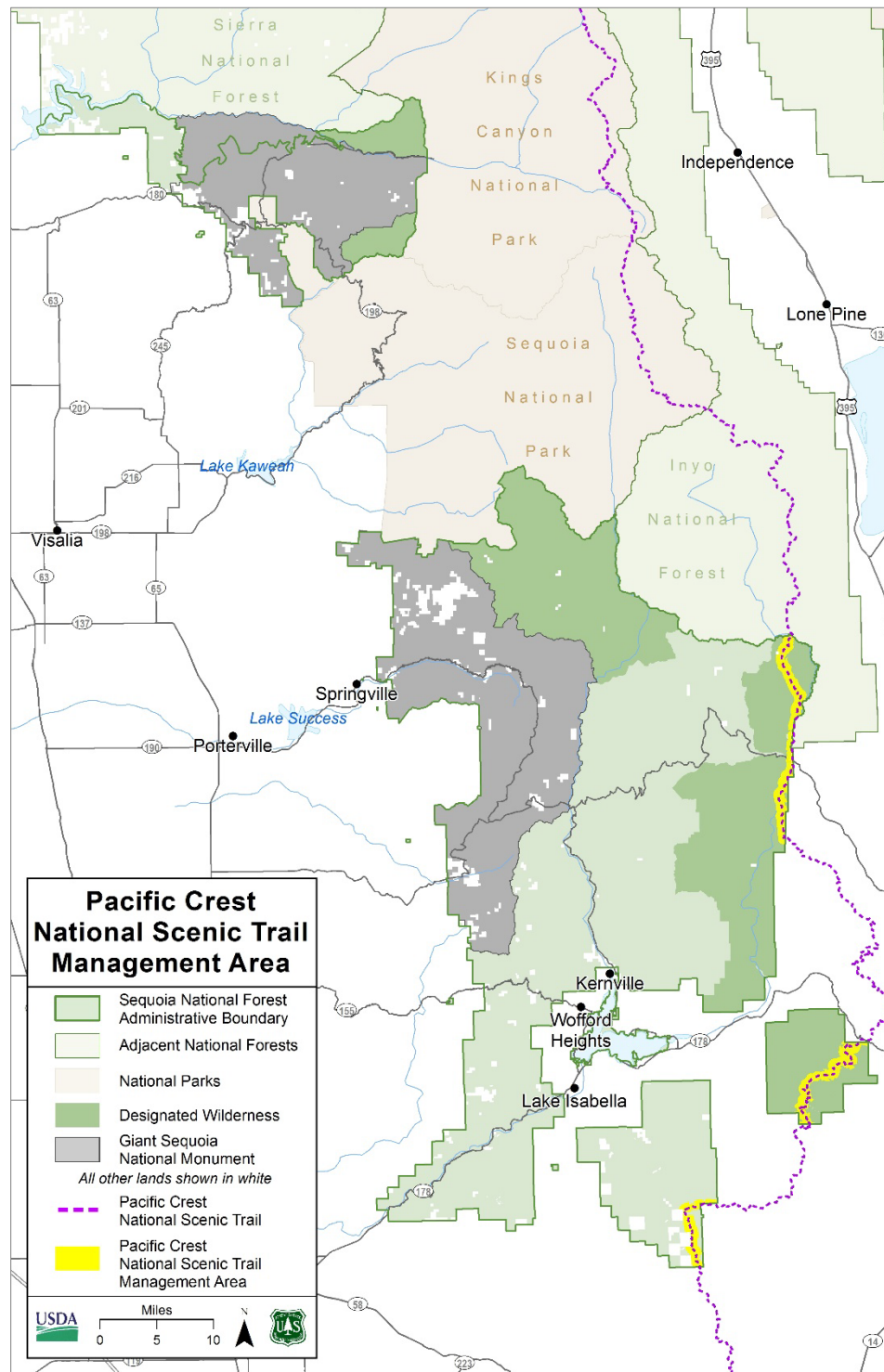


Figure 19. Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Area

**Note:** Management area width displayed on this map is based on GIS analysis of terrain, distance, and visibility and is intended for illustrative purposes. To apply plan direction to specific projects and decisions, management area width on the Sequoia National Forest will be determined by applying the narrative description of the management area to site-specific analysis: The area that is visible from the trail's centerline at a height of 5 feet above the ground, extending up to one-half mile of the centerline on each side of the trail, where visibility is not obscured by terrain. In general, not accounting for turns in trail, the maximum distance between two boundaries of the management area is one mile, along a line perpendicular to the trail.



## Designated Areas

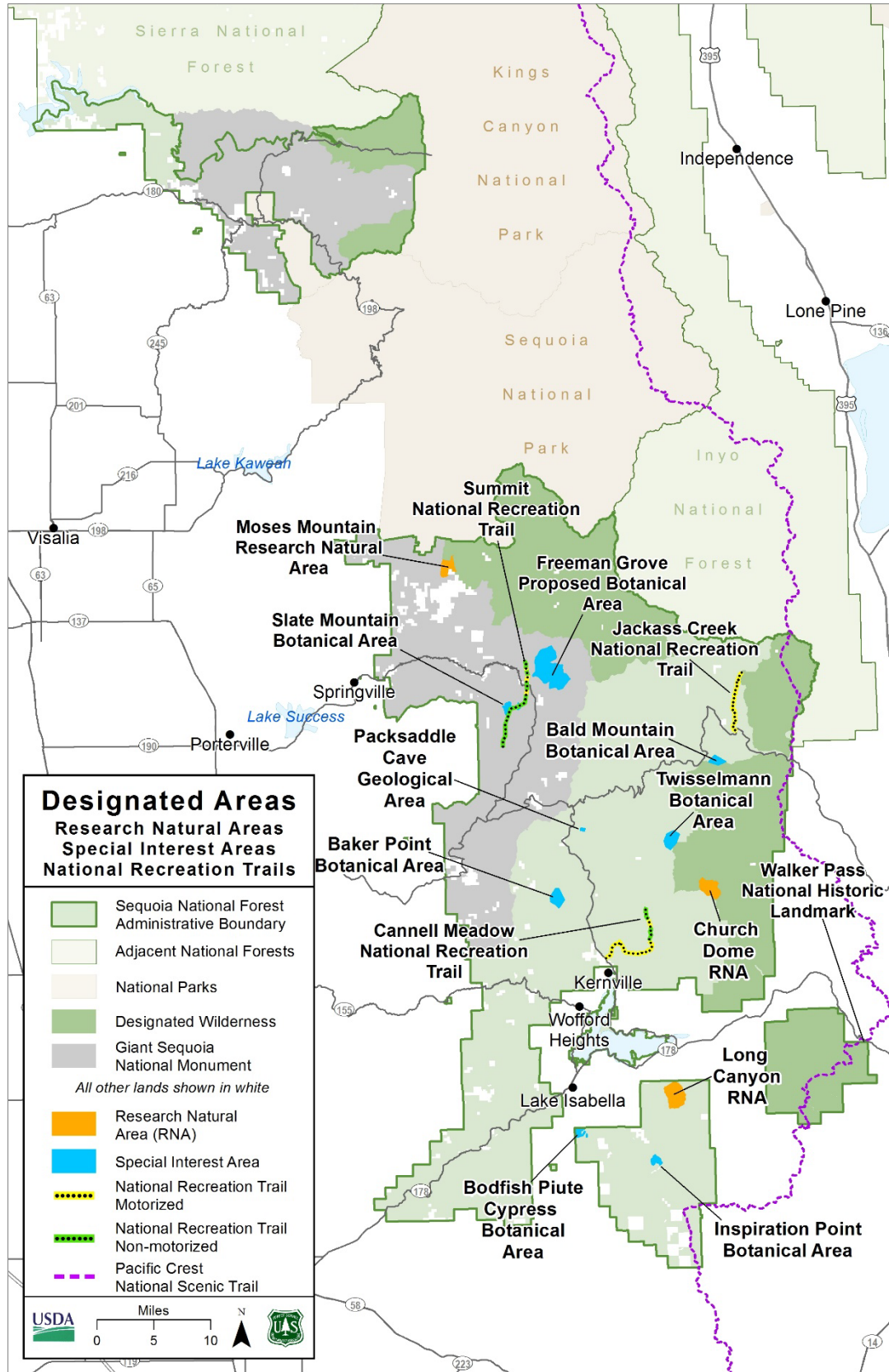


Figure 20. Designated research natural areas, special interest areas, and national recreation trails

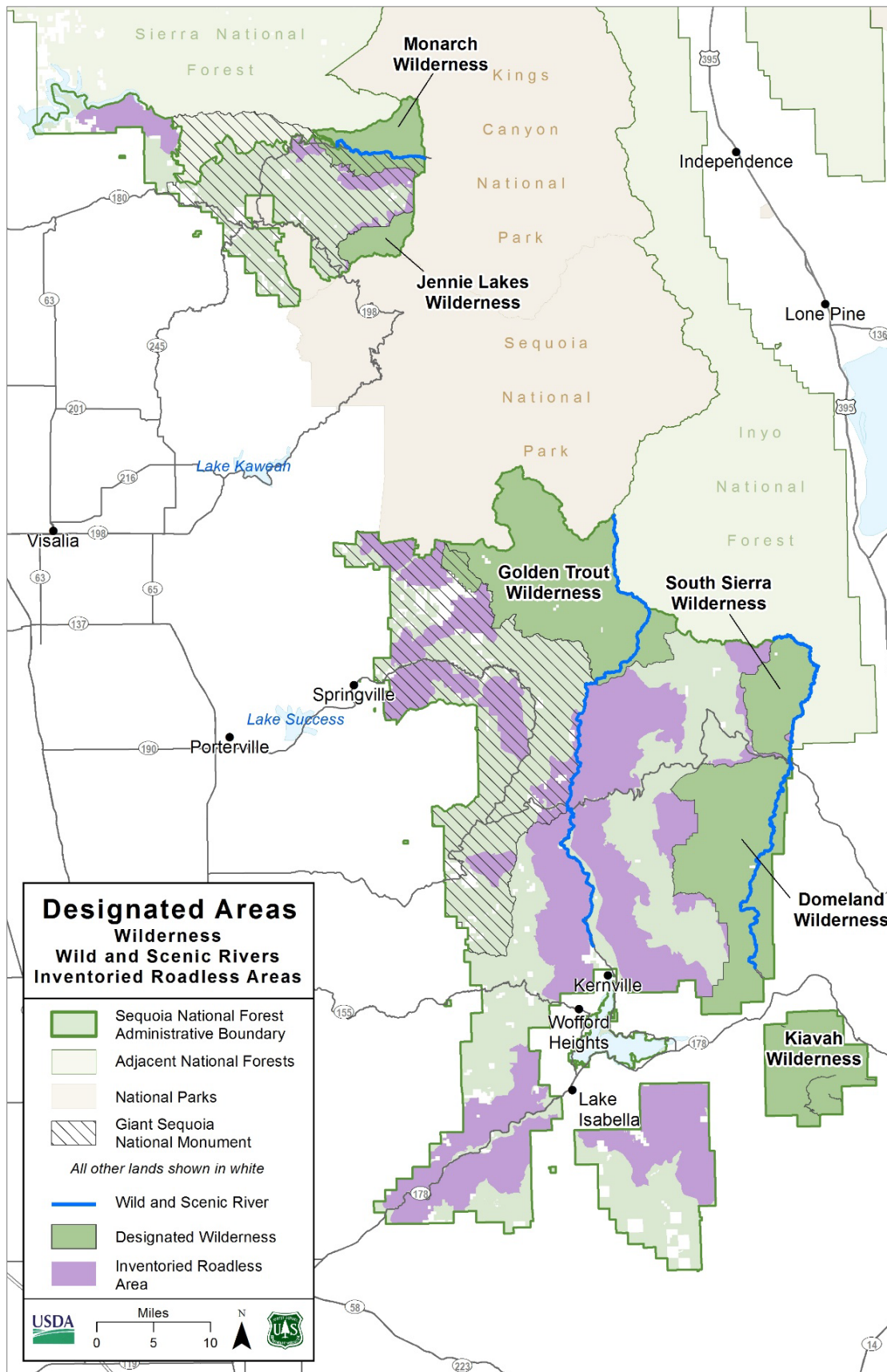


Figure 21. Congressionally designated wilderness, wild and scenic rivers, and inventoried roadless areas

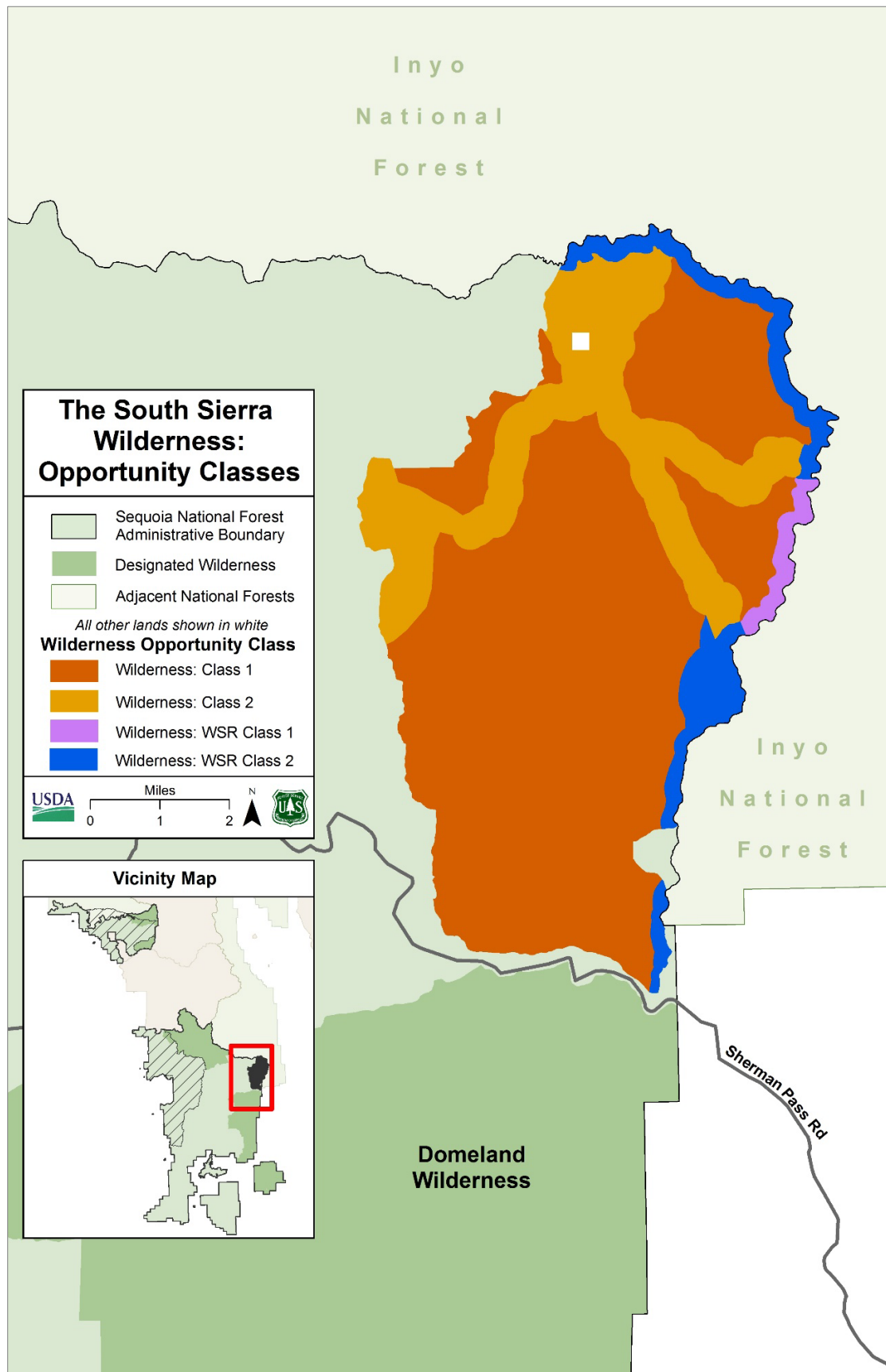


Figure 22. Wilderness opportunity classes in the South Sierra Wilderness



## Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

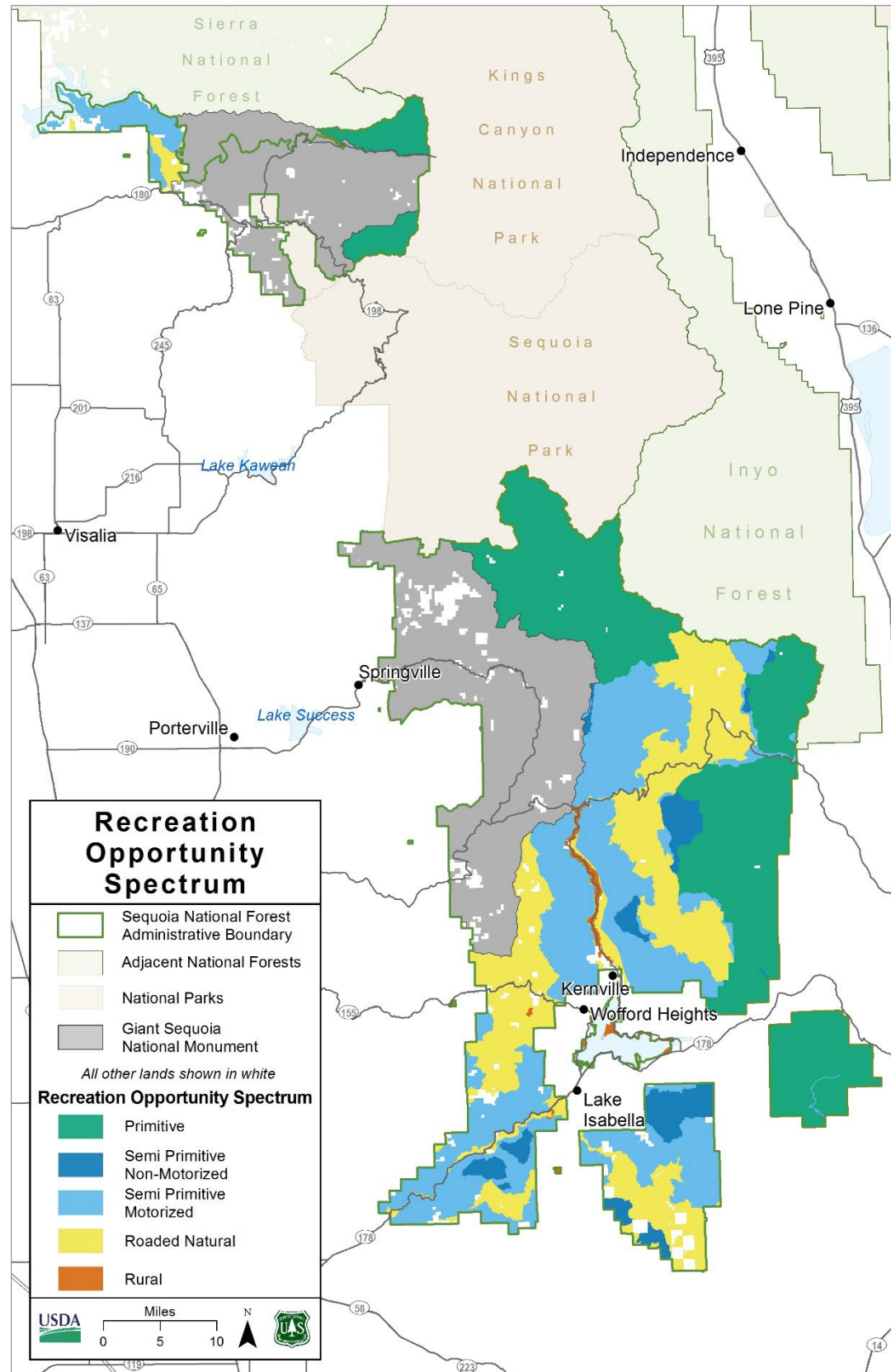


Figure 23. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes

## Scenic Integrity Objectives

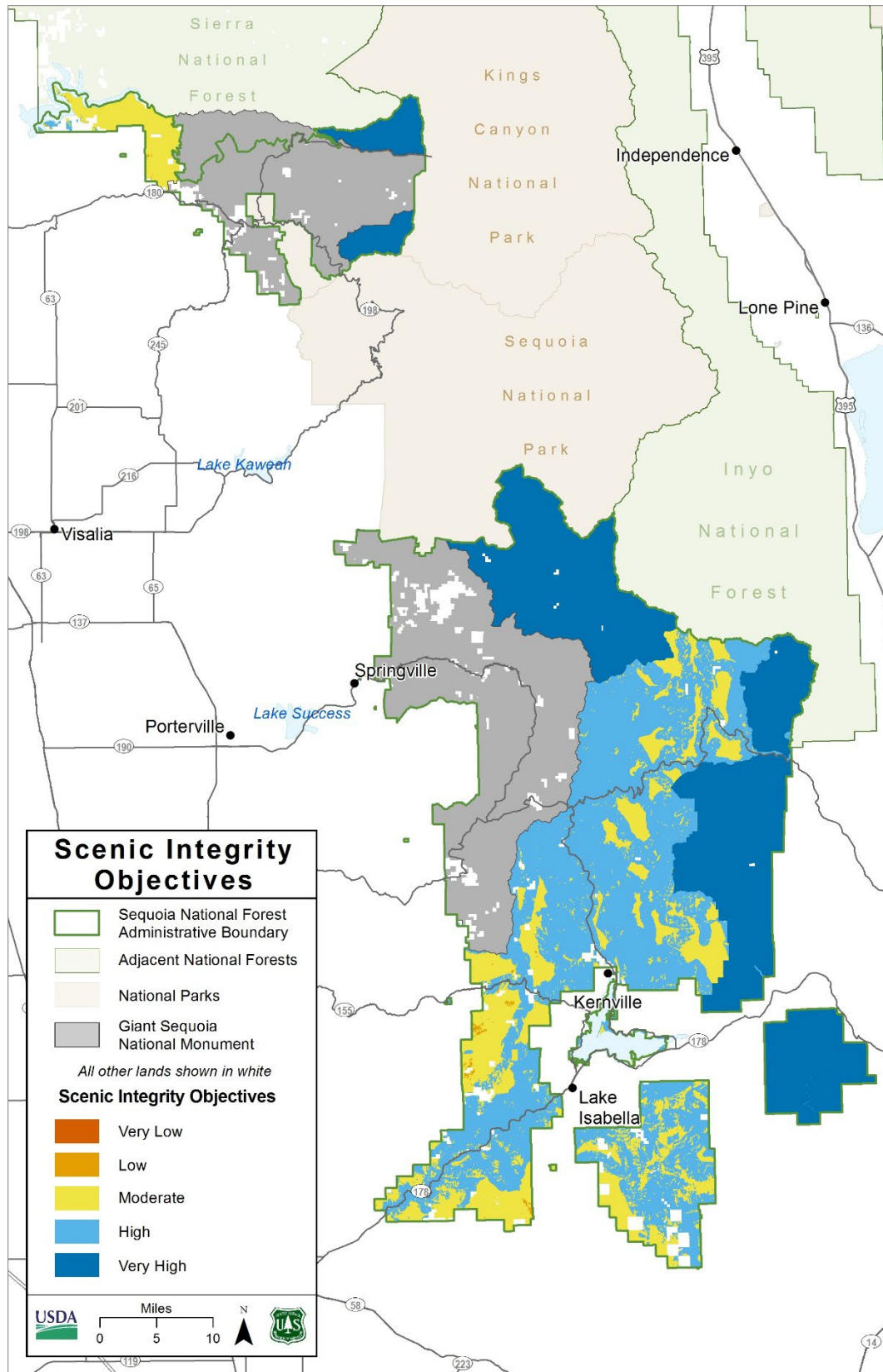


Figure 24. Scenic integrity objectives

## Appendix B: Proposed and Possible Actions

### Introduction

This appendix describes proposed and probable actions that may take place on the Sequoia National Forest at the project or activity level to help maintain existing conditions or achieve the desired conditions described in the plan. Included are items such as program strategies; inventories, assessments, resource analyses and other planning needs; and ongoing work with partners and cooperating agencies anticipated during the next 3 to 5 years.

The listed proposed and probable management actions are neither intended to be all-inclusive, nor intended to be decisions, but simply projections of what actions may take place in the future. A plan amendment is not required to change or modify any proposed and possible actions. The list of these actions can be updated at any time through an administrative correction of the plan. More information may be found under plan objectives and management approaches.

### Air Quality

- Coordinate with the San Joaquin Valley Air Quality Control Board on smoke impacts from wildfires and prescribed fires.

### Water, Soils, and Watershed

- Plan and implement restoration actions in priority watersheds. Implement best management practices on all projects and continue to conduct best management practices monitoring to ensure water quality objectives are being met.
- Reconstruct or restore riparian function to springs identified as not in proper functioning condition.
- Restore nonfunctioning or functioning-at-risk riparian areas so they are in or moving toward proper functioning condition.
- Evaluate fens (peatlands) using the regional fen proper functioning condition protocol 12; determine and implement actions to restore fens and sustain peat formation if necessary.
- Coordinate with other government agencies to protect water quality and protect aquatic ecosystems from invasive plants and animals. Restore wetlands that are not in proper functioning condition.
- Collaborate with partners and stakeholders on meadow and riparian restoration, connectivity, and education.

### Terrestrial Ecosystems

- Collaborate with partners and stakeholders on shrubland and native grassland habitat restoration, connectivity, and education.
- Restore aspen stands that are departed from desired conditions where feasible.
- Increase the pace and scale of ecological restoration on the Forest through potentially larger scale planning and implementation processes; include thinning forests to reduce fuels and uncharacteristic wildfire, insects, and disease risk, while producing commercial timber and biomass material.

- Work cooperatively with researchers and other interested parties who have knowledge of local ecological conditions, past and present, and expertise in appropriate restoration measures.
- Maintain or restore habitat connectivity where appropriate to improve adaptive capacity of native plants and animals. Collaborate with partners to establish priority locations for maintaining and restoring habitat connectivity.
- In subalpine and alpine ecosystems, educate the public about the unique properties of these ecosystems and the potential impacts of climate change, inappropriate recreation use, and other stressors.

## **Aquatic and Riparian Ecosystems**

- Restore wetlands that are not in proper functioning condition.
- Coordinate with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service on the management of sport and native fishes.
- Reconstruct or restore riparian function to springs identified as not in proper functioning condition.
- Restore nonfunctioning or functioning at-risk riparian areas so they are in or moving toward proper functioning condition.
- Distribute information to the media and the public focused on the unique properties of meadows and appropriate activities within meadows.
- Collaborate with partners and stakeholders on meadow and riparian restoration, connectivity, and education.
- Reroute system trails away from meadows and springs. Discourage dispersed recreation sites and user-constructed trails on the meadow edge. Discourage winter motorized recreation in riparian conservation areas and eliminate it where possible from meadows and within 100 feet of streams.
- Coordinate with the California Department of Fish and Wildlife on objectives for wildlife conservation, education, and habitat restoration and improvements, particularly regarding Kern River rainbow trout, California golden trout, and Little Kern golden trout.

## **Animal and Plant Species**

- Maintain the native-fish-only status of Little Kern River and upper North and South Fork Kern River through remedial actions to remove invasive species, increase public education, provide signage, and provide law enforcement.
- Restore, improve, or maintain terrestrial and aquatic wildlife habitat for native trout, amphibians, butterflies, and rare plants.

## **Invasive Species**

- Maintain a current inventory of invasive exotic species on National Forest System lands, access roads, and trails.
- Continue invasive weed treatments in high-priority areas.

## **Fire**

- Implement treatments to reduce fire hazards to communities and the Forest. Assess new wildfire starts for opportunities to manage wildfires to meet resource objectives. Implement other activities that facilitate and maximize opportunities to manage wildfires to meet resource objectives.
- Coordinate access for initial attack and suppression activities with responsible jurisdictions to reduce response times and address public and firefighter safety.
- Participate in the development and implementation of community wildfire protection plans to promote public safety and to reduce the risk of wildfire on lands outside the Forest.
- Coordinate the fire prevention program with local and State agencies across jurisdictions supporting a unified message. Target audiences include local residents and out-of-area Forest users.

## **Timber and Other Forest Products**

- Ensure the sustainability of special forest products through establishing maximum harvest levels for commercial sales and personal use permits.
- Accomplish vegetation and fuels management restoration projects using a mix of contracting practices including stewardship contracts, timber sales, service contracts, partnership agreements, and other methods.
- Provide forest products that will sustain opportunities for local workforces and support development and maintenance of existing local and regional forest products infrastructure.
- Information on the planned timber sale program, including anticipated harvest levels and vegetation management practices, is contained in appendix D.

## **Range**

- Implement the Sequoia's Federal Land Policy Management Act Schedule for grazing allotment environmental analysis to update allotment management plans accordingly [43 U.S.C. 1752(i)].
- Review active allotment management plans on a regular basis.
- Maintain and replace fencing, water troughs and other range improvements.

## **Sustainable Recreation**

- Improve and protect riparian areas and meadows by establishing effective setbacks for recreation activities that have impacted or have the potential to impact resources.
- Continue to implement new strategies focusing on high-use areas to reduce the human impacts from recreation use such as reducing litter, soil compaction, erosion, and vegetation removal, and improving sanitation.
- Protect and enhance natural resources and natural amenities by engaging the public and recreation user groups in responsible recreation use and natural resource stewardship activities.



- Outreach to neighboring communities, urban populations, youth, and underserved communities, as well as traditional groups, to help manage the natural amenities and to educate peers and Forest visitors about resource stewardship.
- Complete updates and changes to the motor vehicle use map to achieve forest plan desired conditions.
- Improve facilities' operating efficiency and sustainability through new construction and repairs. Consider energy efficiency by using recycled or renewable resources that produce a smaller carbon footprint.

## **Scenery**

- In all forest restoration projects, improve long-term scenery resources especially in areas that do not meet established scenic integrity objectives.
- Cooperate with other entities such as Bureau of Land Management, public and investor-owned utility companies, California Department of Transportation, local governments, and commercial and private entities, to protect scenic character and meet scenic integrity objectives on and adjacent to the Sequoia.
- Improve scenic stability through forest restoration projects.
- Rehabilitate areas that do not meet or exceed their desired scenic integrity objective.

## **Tribal Relations and Uses**

- Continue Tribal consultation on projects and needs as they arise.
- Jointly develop and implement memoranda of agreement and memoranda of understanding between the Sequoia and consulting American Indian Tribes, to guide consultation processes and reflect the Tribes' particular perspectives and interests.
- Participate in regular meetings and Tribal forums with Tribes to understand their needs, exchange ideas, and promote mutually beneficial projects, goals, and objectives.
- Maintain consistency on already established special forest products collection policies and Tribal firewood programs with local Tribes.
- Create volunteer opportunities and promote potential employment or contracting opportunities for Tribal communities.

## **Cultural Resources**

- Complete project clearances required under existing law, regulation, and policy.
- Complete class of property analysis to better understand site classes and provide more cost-effective clearances.
- Complete non-project-related archaeological surveys in areas of moderate or very high site density.
- Stabilize historic structures.
- Participate in partnerships with the National Park Service to study, protect, and monitor sites.
- Curate records and artifacts through agreements with Forest Service-approved repositories.

- Support offsite educational and enrichment products such as classroom programs, heritage celebrations, publications, and field trips.
- Update cultural resources overviews as archaeological study units are defined and existing class of property classes are analyzed.

## **Geology and Minerals**

- Coordinate with the Bureau of Land Management to properly process applications for mineral entry on the Sequoia.
- Request withdrawal of some areas on the Sequoia National Forest from mineral entry.
- Rehabilitate mineral operations sites that are no longer in use.
- Coordinate with State and Federal agencies to manage and monitor bat roosts to determine population dynamics at least once every 3 years.
- Monitor significant caves or other biophysical features to determine visitor impacts and the conditions of key resources to protect the long-term ecology of the feature or resource.
- Participate in public education activities about disease prevention best practices for caves.
- Complete periodic updates to the list of significant caves on the Forest.
- Coordinate and collaborate, where possible, with the scientific community, non-Federal partners, and the public.
- Develop educational and interpretive programs to increase public awareness of Sequoia National Forest caves and paleontological resources.

## **Infrastructure**

- Naturalize or decommission unauthorized roads and system roads to create a more cost-effective road system and to restore natural resources impacted by roads.
- Construct and close new temporary and permanent roads to support ecosystem restoration activities.
- Coordinate with local, State and Federal agencies to mitigate impacts from community, highway, and State road reconstruction and management needs.
- Implement effective wildlife passage improvement projects.
- Issue road use permits to private landowners to take maintenance responsibility for roads that primarily serve private uses.
- Evaluate outdated facilities and sites for current and future needs, potential reuse, and the capacity to update or retrofit them economically to meet the agency's mission

## **Lands**

- Coordinate with landowners and local and regional governments to encourage private land uses that are compatible with the Sequoia's desired conditions.
- Ensure reasonable road ingress and egress to private property in the Forest to allow fire engines mobility and access.
- Acquire right-of-way agreements for the public and Forest Service uses.

## **Special Uses**

- Authorize and administer permits for special use activities on the Sequoia National Forest such as recreation events, outfitter-guide activities, Native American gatherings, filming, access roads and research, as capacity allows.
- Update communication site plans for existing communication sites; develop new communication site plans as needed.
- Rehabilitate existing special use sites that do not meet the scenery guidelines, as they are evaluated for reauthorization or determined to be no longer required.
- Issue and supervise forest product or vegetation management permits, as capacity allows, to lessen abrupt vegetation transition in powerline rights-of-way, where it is necessary to clear the right-of-way boundary to meet national standards.
- Coordinate with the research community to identify and manage long-term research locations, with the intent of balancing research and management needs.

## **Interpretation and Education**

- In accordance with the Sequoia National Forest's interpretive plan and the Forest Service conservation education guidance, provide opportunities for interpretation that reflect scientifically supported scholarship and research data.
- Convey clear messages regarding natural and cultural resources and multiple use. Use multi-media interpretation and educational programs to develop stewardship of resources, to ensure their present and future protection, and to enhance public enjoyment of the Sequoia National Forest.
- Develop bilingual communication tools including publications, information boards, social media, and radio spots.
- Encourage underserved communities, focusing on youth, to increase involvement in environmental and land stewardship.
- Continue cooperatively developing new and updating old environmental education programs with public schools.
- Participate in outdoor classrooms for school groups and other partnership opportunities with local schools.

## **Designated Areas**

### **Wilderness**

- Continue existing and develop new partnerships with other agencies, organizations, and volunteers to increase stewardship opportunities for managing wilderness.
- Maintain and update information that will increase public understanding and appreciation of the wilderness resource and promote user education about practices that reduce or prevent resource impacts.
- Restore trails, areas, and sites that are causing unacceptable resource impacts.

### **Wild and Scenic Rivers**

- Complete comprehensive river management plans for wild and scenic rivers newly designated by Congress.
- Through partnerships with other agencies, organizations, and volunteers, help maintain and enhance the outstandingly remarkable values of each designated and eligible wild and scenic river.
- Provide information to the public that will increase understanding and appreciation of designated and eligible wild and scenic rivers and promote citizen stewardship.
- Implement comprehensive river management plans for wild and scenic rivers designated by Congress.

### **Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail**

- Using partners and volunteers, continue to maintain the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail to standard.
- Collaborate with the public to develop and implement strategies that reduce potential visitor use conflicts.
- Provide information to the public that will increase understanding and appreciation of the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail and promote citizen stewardship of this recreation opportunity.
- Maintain and reroute the trail in coordination with the Pacific Crest Trail Association and adjacent landowners.

### **National Recreation Trails**

- Continue using partnerships and volunteers to maintain designated trails and perpetuate the values for which they were designated.

### **National Scenic Byways**

- Coordinate activities and design of byway facilities with the appropriate byway association and byway plan.

### **Research Natural Areas, Botanical Areas, and Geological Areas**

- Prepare establishment reports for geological, botanical, and research natural areas.
- Establish an interpretation and education program for geological areas and caves to prevent and repair graffiti.

## Appendix C: A Renewed Partnership Focus for the Sequoia National Forest

Partnerships in land stewardship reflect a growing and important trend, the joining of passion and resources by committed citizens, organizations, and government agencies to achieve social, economic, and ecological goals. The U.S. Forest Service has worked with partners throughout its more than 100-year history. But the challenges of land management have grown more complex, and the needs of the public more varied. American people today are voicing their strong desire to volunteer and participate in the stewardship of natural resources and in the decisions that affect their communities. The Forest Service has responded by developing partnership strategies at the national (<https://www.fs.usda.gov/prc>) and regional (<http://www.fs.usda.gov/main/r5/workingtogether>) levels.

The mission of the Forest Service is to “sustain the health, diversity, and productivity of the Nation’s forests and grasslands to meet the needs of present and future generations.” Partnerships are essential to carrying out that mission today. Fortunately, missions of hundreds of organizations in California overlap with ours in some way, creating the opportunity to work together toward bigger, better outcomes than each can achieve on its own.

The Sequoia National Forest recognizes the value of continuing to develop effective partnerships, wherein we invite public participation, embrace stakeholder proposals, and successfully leverage our resources by working together to achieve the desired conditions set forth in the forest plan.

### Creating a Partnership Culture

The forest supervisor on the Sequoia National Forest responds to the needs of a varied public by empowering employees and communities of place, interest, and culture to create and sustain successful partnerships. The forest supervisor and Sequoia staff have established the following partnership goals to accomplish the Forest Service mission, implement the forest plan, and build a strong and lasting community of stewardship on the Forest:

- Through partnership, sustain the health, diversity, and productivity of the Sequoia National Forest.
- Build community support for, and understanding of, the Sequoia National Forest.
- Enhance opportunities to connect people of diverse cultures to the land, especially in urban areas.
- Expand partnerships with other Federal, State, and local government agencies, as well as associations, non-governmental organizations, and other community groups, to leverage information and resources for mutual benefit.
- Foster partnerships dealing with science associated with forest health.
- Create more “citizen stewards” of the Sequoia National Forest through volunteerism.
- Support the ongoing efforts of current partnerships.
- Develop new partnerships focused on management of the land (such as tree planting).
- Build and enhance partnerships to protect Tribal sites and interpret cultural assets.

Accomplishing these goals will require new and innovative methods, as well as the continuation of investment in ongoing successful partnership efforts. The purpose of this strategy is to outline

an iterative process for building and sustaining a strong partnership culture for the Sequoia National Forest. The strategy includes the following components: a method for determining the Forest capacity for working in partnership; best practices for building and sustaining new partnerships; and steps for ensuring effective outreach to nontraditional partners.

## **Forest Capacity for Working in Partnership**

The National Partnership Office of the U.S. Forest Service has designed a partnership capacity assessment tool ([https://www.fs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE\\_DOCUMENTS/fseprd493263.pdf](https://www.fs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/fseprd493263.pdf)) to help Forest Service units assess, sustain, and improve their abilities to work with partners in continuing the Forest Service's long history of partnership and collaboration in land stewardship.

### **What is the Partnership Capacity Assessment Tool?**

The partnership capacity assessment tool is essentially a group exercise to reflect on experiences and attitudes about partnerships and collaboration. The tool asks the group to score itself on a series of questions about partnership opportunities, goals, resources, procedures, incentives, barriers, skills, and relationships. The group then uses these scores to chart strengths, analyze positive and negative factors that contribute to partnership capacity, and identify actions to sustain and grow capacity.

### **Who Should Use the Assessment Tool?**

The Sequoia National Forest uses the tool in conjunction with communities of place, interest, and culture who care about the uses and resources within the Forest and who will benefit from completing the assessment. This tool is designed to generate open dialogue with partners and among staff. It is also a useful starting point for assessing current partnership abilities and discussing how to maintain strengths or address needs.

### **How Can the Assessment Tool Best Meet the Needs of the Forest?**

The assessment tool provides the format for a community forum to assess partnership needs and develop priorities to meet those needs. Use of the assessment tool by Forest Service staff can help identify needed resources and changes to better position the Sequoia National Forest to successfully accomplish goals through partnerships. Including partners in the process can help promote dialogue and improve relationships. However, the tool is not intended to assess the feasibility of or develop plans for specific partnership opportunities. These details will be identified during project-level planning.

### **How Long and Where Will the Assessment Take Place?**

The community forum can expect to complete the assessment in one session lasting 3 to 4 hours. The investment of time will pay off by helping Sequoia National Forest staff and potential partners to systematically identify needs and actions to meet those needs. Trained facilitators and recorders can be used to keep the process moving smoothly.

## **Best Practices for Building New Partnerships**

Partnerships can be thought of as a type of alliance, where the complex interaction of business and interpersonal activities is essential to successfully achieve mutually beneficial goals. Key characteristics of successful interpersonal relationships include trust, communication, perspective taking, rapport building, and commitment. Partnerships are known to yield better results under

certain conditions,<sup>49</sup> for example: when each partner recognizes the need to have access to capabilities and competencies it cannot develop internally; or when a gradual and sustained approach is preferable in accessing resources, capabilities, and competencies, as opposed to faster and shorter-term mechanisms such as contracting.

Keeping these conditions in mind, the following best practices are provided to assist Sequoia National Forest staff in identifying and developing new partners:

1. Identify the need for partnerships within the long-term strategies and desired condition of the Forest
2. Define specific objectives of the partnership
3. Choose partners
4. Evaluate what to offer and what to receive in exchange
5. Define and act upon opportunities
6. Evaluate the effect on Forest stakeholders
7. Determine each partner's resources and capabilities
8. Plan the integration
9. Create the partnership
10. Take action and achieve objectives
11. Recognize and celebrate successes

### **Identify the need for partnerships within the long-term strategies and desired condition**

Strategic alliances respond to various long-term strategies of the Sequoia National Forest. For example, the interpretive plan for the Sequoia National Forest and Giant Sequoia National Monument established a program strategy featuring the interpretation of natural and cultural objects of interest. Interpretive services are provided on-site or virtually. The specific interpretive products, services, and delivery methods are expected to evolve over time, in response to evolving technologies, visitor needs and demands, and available resources. Partnerships are important not only because of the extra resources they provide, but also because they help to enrich a sense of stewardship in both the partners and recipients of interpretive services.

### **Define specific objectives of the partnership**

Three aspects of defining objectives are necessary for the success of the partnership:

1. The objective should be compared with the Sequoia's available resources and capabilities and with those that could be used. The partnership should bridge the gap of existing resources and capabilities to achieve the objectives. The assessment tool can assist in identifying where gaps occur regarding both the Forest's capability to cultivate new partnerships and its resources to accomplish management goals alone.

---

<sup>49</sup> Mockler, R.J. 1999. *Multinational Strategic Alliances*. John Wiley & Sons. 266 p.

O'Neill, B. 2013. *Brian O'Neill's 21 Partnership Success Factors* (updated 2013). USDI National Park Service. 20 p.

2. A clear consensus (internally) on why the agency cannot reach particular goals on its own, and why it must seek a partnership with an external organization, rather than internal development or via procurement.
3. Knowing where the partnership generates mutual advantages within the chain of value and clarifying why each partner cannot develop these advantages internally.

### **Choose partners**

The right partner in an alliance must have three principal features:<sup>50</sup>

1. The partner must have the resources and capabilities to help the Sequoia National Forest achieve its strategic goals, bringing to the partnership what is missing and which they are seeking.
2. The partner and national forest must share the same long-term goals for the partnership. Failure is inevitable if the goals are divergent.
3. The partner must not use the alliance to gain know-how, relationships with clients or suppliers, or technology without making contributions of equal strategic weight. Alliances are longer lasting and more successful when they are considered between partners with a reputation for trustworthiness.

### **Evaluate what to offer and what to receive in exchange**

Reciprocity is a key component of building trust. Each partner should evaluate which capabilities are critical to the partnership, and then decide what the Sequoia National Forest can offer to the others and what it can expect from them.

### **Define and act upon opportunities**

Knowing the value of the opportunities that can be achieved with the alliance is an essential guide in negotiation, and subsequent management, of the partnership. Beyond the opportunities, it is also important to examine the possible risks.

### **Evaluate the effect on Forest stakeholders**

A key question to consider is, “How will stakeholders, including other partners, react to the partnership?”

### **Determine each partner’s resources and capabilities**

Understanding a partner’s abilities and limitations is an important component in creating a successful partnership. A key question to consider is, “What resources and capabilities can the partners realistically bring to the partnership?”

### **Plan the integration**

Develop a partnership business plan, which should:

1. Organize activities and functions
2. Define accounting procedures

---

<sup>50</sup> Hill, C. and G. Jones. 2000. *Strategic Management: An Integrated Approach*, 5th ed. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Company.



3. Define procedures to resolve conflicts
4. Define the relationships between the partnership and the Sequoia, including duration and renewal process
5. Define the authorizing instrument for the partnership (such as memorandum of understanding) that will be appropriate to formalize the relationship

### **Create the partnership**

Flexibility is integral to sustaining an effective partnership. Whatever the form of the partnership, some principles apply:

1. Each partner has its own goals that dictate the role of the partnership
2. The role of the partnership changes as internal and external conditions evolve
3. The relationship between the partners is quite dynamic
4. Evaluate the partnership for effectiveness in meeting mutual goals

### **Take action and achieve objectives**

For a partnership to last, both parties must find the partnership to be meaningful and to satisfy the established objectives.

### **Recognize and celebrate successes**

Honor the efforts accomplished through the work of partnership. This recognizes the individuals involved and strengthens the relationship between partners.

## **Steps for Ensuring Effective Outreach and Communication with Nontraditional Partners and the Public**

The diversity of people using and valuing the Sequoia National Forest will continue to increase as the American population grows and becomes more diverse, and as international visitation increases. California's youth is more culturally diverse than any previous generation. Interpretation and outreach methods designed to connect users to the Forest need to communicate important resource issues, solicit commitment to conservation, and encourage appropriate behaviors. Use of the Sequoia by nontraditional user groups, especially Hispanics and Asians, is prevalent and growing.

To assure effective outreach occurs within this growing segment of potential Forest partners, metrics should be designed to monitor and evaluate success, adapting as necessary to continually broaden the circle of involvement. The following steps may be considered, as appropriate, in developing innovative partnerships:

- Translation of major documents (or summaries thereof), provision of translators at meetings, or other efforts as appropriate to ensure that limited English speakers gain understanding of potential partnership opportunities
- Provision of opportunities for limited English speakers to provide comments and actively engage in partnership opportunities
- Provision of opportunities for public participation through means other than written communication, such as personal interviews or use of audio or video recording devices to capture oral comments

- Use of different meeting sizes or formats, or variation on the type and number of media used, so that communications are tailored to the specific community or population
- Use of locations and facilities that are local, convenient, and accessible to underserved communities including Native American Tribes
- Assistance to hearing-impaired or sight-impaired individuals when needed

## Appendix D: Timber Suitability and Management

This appendix provides information regarding timber management that is required to be in the forest plan, in addition to required plan components. This includes information on lands suitable for timber production, and other aspects of the planned timber sale program including anticipated timber harvest levels, vegetation management practices, and reforestation. Additional detail on methodology and assumptions on which this appendix is based may be found in appendix F to the Draft Environmental Impact Statement for the Revision of the Sequoia and Sierra National Forests Land Management Plans.

### Determination of Suitability for Timber Production

Timber production is the purposeful growing, tending, harvesting, and regeneration of regulated crops of trees to be cut into logs, bolts, or other round sections for industrial or consumer use (36 CFR 219.19). Timber production activities can contribute to social, economic, and ecological sustainability. Timber production may offset some or all the costs of silvicultural treatments and other forest management activities that restore ecosystems to desired conditions, lower uncharacteristic fire and insect risk, increase understory plant diversity and abundance, and create employment opportunities.

The National Forest Management Act requires that the Forest Service determine the suitability of National Forest System lands for timber production and has specific requirements for timber suitability analysis in land management plans. Note that there is a distinction between timber harvest as a resource use (as in timber production) and timber harvest as a management tool to achieve desired conditions. Timber harvest is the removal of trees for wood fiber use and other multiple-use purposes (36 CFR 219.19), which includes harvest for timber production purposes as well as for other purposes. Timber harvest may be used as a tool designed to achieve desired conditions on some lands classified as not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest to move toward desired conditions or other multiple use purposes may also yield timber as a byproduct. This can occur on lands not suitable for timber production but where harvest for other purposes is allowed, as well as on lands that are suitable for timber production.

### Lands that *May be* Suitable for Timber Production

Identification of lands that *may be* (tentatively) suitable for timber production is the first step in the process of determining lands that are suitable for timber production. This preliminary classification is made before considering objectives and desired conditions that are part of the forest plan revision process. It excludes National Forest System lands that are not suitable for timber production based on the following criteria:

- Timber production is prohibited by statute, Executive order, regulation, or where the Secretary of Agriculture or the Chief of the Forest Service has withdrawn the land from timber production. Examples include designated wilderness areas, inventoried roadless areas, designated wild river segments, research natural areas and other designated areas where timber is specifically prohibited.
- Land that is not forested (nonforest), identified by having less than 10 percent occupation<sup>51</sup> by conifer trees of any size or having a nonforest use like powerline clearings, residential or administrative sites, improved pasture, or other such features.

---

<sup>51</sup> Ten percent occupation was represented using 10 percent canopy cover during analysis.

- Known environmental factors exist that preclude reasonable assurance that restocking can be achieved within 5 years of final regeneration harvest.<sup>52</sup>
- Technology to harvest timber is not currently available without causing irreversible damage.

National Forest System lands that remain after this initial screening are termed “lands that *may* be suitable for timber production.” Based on this initial suitability analysis, the Sequoia National Forest has 134,549 acres that *may* be suitable for timber production. Table 22 shows timber suitability for the Sequoia National Forest and includes a row that reflects the total land acreage that *may* be suitable for timber production. Note that the total acreage of the Sequoia National Forest includes the Giant Sequoia National Monument, and these acres are also included in the lands withdrawn from timber production. The Giant Sequoia National Monument has its own land management plan and is not covered by timber program direction contained in this plan.

Note that acres of land classification category reported in table 22 and displayed in figure 25 do not represent current corporate GIS data. Timber Suitability GIS data released with the Land Management Plan does represent current corporate GIS data at the time of publication.

**Table 22. Sequoia National Forest land suitable for timber production**

Land classification category	Acres
A. Sequoia National Forest System Land	1,114,913
B. Lands nonsuited for timber production due to legal or technical reasons (1+2+3)	980,364
1. Land withdrawn from timber production	869,597
2. Nonforested lands or lands where adequate stocking is not assured	110,767
3. Lands where irreversible resource damage is likely	0
C. Lands that <i>may</i> be suitable for timber production (A-B)	134,549
D. Lands where management objectives limit timber harvest <sup>1</sup>	54,955
1. Recommended wilderness areas	0
2. Eligible wild river segments	1,058
3. California spotted owl protected activity centers	7,056
4. Riparian conservation areas	50,458
E. Lands <u>not suitable</u> for timber production (B+D)	1,035,319
F. Lands suitable for timber production (A-E)	79,594

1. Note that categories in part D may overlap, for example, some acres in protected activity centers are also in riparian conservation areas. The acreage shown for each category includes all acres for that category regardless of overlap with other categories. The total in row D does not double-count any acres that fit more than one category, therefore, summing these numbers in part D will not equal the total in row D.

<sup>52</sup> The following Regional Dominance Types (CalVeg Forest Types) are recognized as capable of adequate restocking within 5 years: giant sequoia, Pacific Douglas-fir, Douglas-fir-ponderosa pine, eastside pine, Jeffrey pine, mixed conifer-giant sequoia, incense cedar, mixed conifer-fir, mixed conifer-pine, ponderosa pine, red fir, and white fir. In addition, Order 3 soil survey data were used to inform the likelihood of regeneration success.

## Lands Suitable for Timber Production

The final step in determining lands suitable for timber production is to determine which of the lands that *may* be suitable for timber production, *are* suited for timber production, based on compatibility with desired conditions and objectives:

- Timber production is a desired primary or secondary use of the land
- Timber production is anticipated to continue after desired conditions have been achieved
- A flow of timber can be planned and scheduled on a reasonably predictable basis
- Regeneration of the stand is intended
- Timber production is compatible with the desired conditions or objectives for the land

The following land categories are not suitable and have objectives or desired conditions that are not compatible with timber production: recommended wilderness, eligible wild river segments,<sup>53</sup> riparian conservation areas, and California spotted owl protected activity centers. These categories of lands are subtracted from lands that may be suitable for timber production. It is important to note that these categories of lands may overlap, for example, part of a California spotted owl territory may also be within a riparian conservation area. In table 22, the total number of acres in each category are shown, but the total number of acres where objectives or desired conditions are not compatible with timber production accounts for overlap and shows the number of acres subtracted from timber suitability with no double-counting of acres that fall into more than one category.

The Sequoia National Forest includes approximately 79,594 acres that are suitable for timber production (figure 25 and table 22). Suitability indicates timber production could be a primary or secondary management objective. Project designs often incorporate actions to meet a variety of objectives, such as riparian area enhancement, habitat maintenance or development, and scenic stability and integrity. Timber harvest for the purposes of timber production must be consistent with all applicable plan components, for example, standards or guidelines that require retention of scenic quality or wildlife habitat elements. Note that type and intensity of silvicultural treatments may be required to be modified where timber production is an objective to comply with all applicable plan requirements, and this may reduce potential timber yield harvested.

On lands not suitable for timber production, timber harvest may occur to protect multiple-use values other than timber production, such as for salvage, sanitation, public health, or safety, as specified in plan components for specific categories of lands. Note that public health or safety includes meeting requirements for safe operation of public infrastructure such as highways or utility facilities. Multiple-use values may also include various restoration activities intended to move lands toward desired conditions. For example, meadow restoration may require cutting encroaching trees, or trees might be thinned to reduce stand density or manage species composition to be within the natural range of variation. These trees may be made available for sale, but the intent is to maintain the meadow or restore stand structure and composition toward desired conditions based on the natural range of variation. Timber harvest for multiple-use purposes other than timber production must be consistent with all applicable plan components.

---

<sup>53</sup> Area includes a corridor incorporating approximately 0.25 mile on either side of eligible wild and scenic rivers.

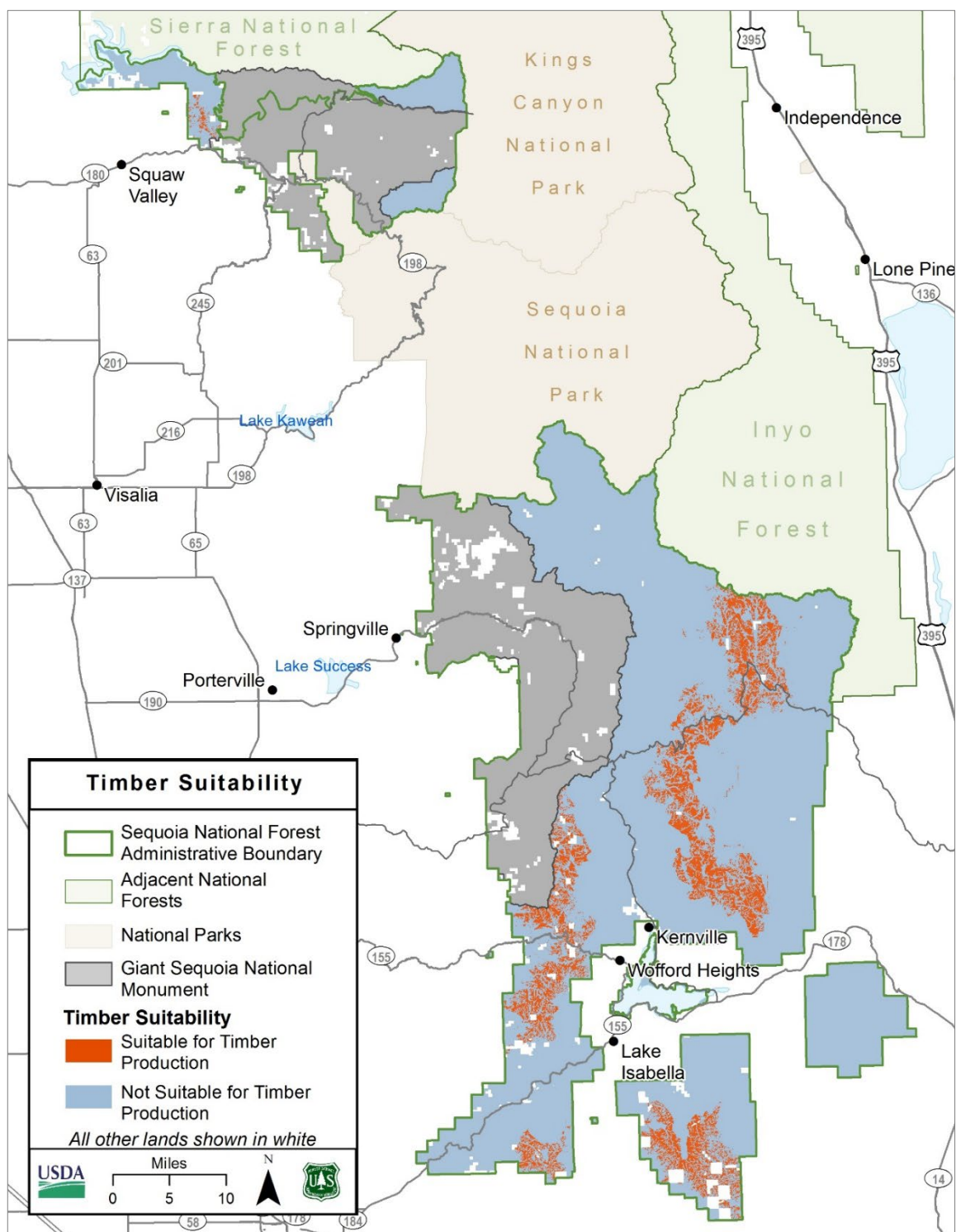


Figure 25. Timber suitability areas of the Sequoia National Forest

## Planned Timber Sale Program

The planned timber sale program represents an estimation of treatment types, planned to achieve the outcomes described by the plan's desired conditions and objectives, and consistent with other plan components during the plan period. The planned practices are based on the projected fiscal capability and organizational capacity of the planning unit and are not a commitment to take an action or to develop a project-specific proposal for such action.

## Sustained Yield Limit

The sustained yield limit is the amount of timber meeting applicable utilization standards, "which can be removed from a national forest annually in perpetuity on a sustained yield basis."<sup>54</sup> It is the volume that could be produced in perpetuity on lands that *may be suitable* for timber production. The calculation of the sustained yield limit is not limited by land management plan desired condition, other plan components, or the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. The sustained yield limit for the lands that *may be suitable* for timber production is 159 MMcf per decade, or 15.9 MMcf per year.

## Projected Wood Sale Quantity and Timber Sale Quantity

The estimated quantity of timber and all other wood products expected to be sold from the plan area for the plan period is called the projected wood sale quantity. The projected wood sale quantity consists of the projected timber sale quantity as well as other woody material such as fuelwood, firewood, or biomass that is also expected to be available for sale. The projected wood sale quantity includes volume from timber harvest for any purpose based on expected harvests that would be consistent with the plan components. The projected wood sale quantity is also based on the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. Projected wood sale quantity is neither a target nor a limitation on harvest.

The projected timber sale quantity is the estimated quantity of timber meeting applicable utilization standards that is expected to be sold during the plan period. As a subset of the projected wood sale quantity, the projected timber sale quantity includes volume from timber harvest for any purpose from all lands in the plan area based on expected harvests that would be consistent with the plan components. The projected timber sale quantity is also based on the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. Projected timber sale quantity is neither a target nor a limitation on harvest. Average annual volume output for the plan period for the Sequoia National Forest planned timber sale program is displayed in table 23. Multiplying the projected average annual output of sawtimber from both suitable and unsuitable lands (row C) by the 15-year life of the plan yields the same numbers as the plan component volume objectives. Actual outputs may vary up or down from year to year, but the long-term average is projected to be within the range shown over the long term. The projected timber and wood sale quantities do not include volumes anticipated from any salvage or sanitation harvests (FSH 1909.12 Ch. 60, section 64.32). Salvage and sanitation harvests may occur, and the amounts could fluctuate over a considerable range. Harvests for sanitation and salvage purposes may be substituted for, or could be in addition to, the projected timber and wood sale quantities, as provided for in the National Forest Management Act.

---

<sup>54</sup> National Forest Management Act at section 11, 16 U.S.C. 1611; 36 CFR 219.11(d)(6)

**Table 23. Average annual volume outputs for the Sequoia National Forest planned timber sale program.<sup>1</sup> The sustained yield limit for the lands that may be suitable for timber production is 159 MMcf per decade, or 15.9 MMcf per year.**

Land suitability	Product type	Product subtype	MMcf <sup>2</sup>	MMbf <sup>3</sup>
Suitable <sup>4</sup>	Timber product <sup>5</sup>	A. Sawtimber	0.5–0.8	2.7–4
Not suitable <sup>6</sup>	Timber product	B. Sawtimber	0.3–0.4	1.3–2
Both suitable & not suitable	Timber product	C. Projected timber sale quantity (A+B)	0.8–1.2	4–6
Both suitable & not suitable	Other estimated wood products <sup>7</sup>	D. Fuelwood	0.2–0.3	1.0–1.5
Both suitable & not suitable	Other estimated wood products	E. Biomass and cull logs	0–0.4	0–2.0
Both suitable & not suitable	All	F. Projected wood sale quantity (C+D+E)	1.0–1.9	5–9.5

1. The National Forest Management Act limits the sale of timber to less the sustained yield limit (16 U.S.C. 1611).

2. MMcf: Million cubic feet.

3. MMbf: Million board feet.

4. Lands suitable for timber production.

5. The timber product categories are for volumes other than for salvage or sanitation, that meet timber product utilization standards.

6. Lands not suitable for timber production.

7. Other estimated wood products include fuelwood, biomass, and others that do not meet timber product utilization standards.

## Vegetation Management Practices

Harvest of timber on National Forest System lands occurs for many different reasons, including ecological restoration, community protection in wildland-urban interfaces, habitat restoration, and protection of municipal water supplies. Timber harvest also contributes to economic sustainability through the production of timber, pulp for paper, specialty woods for furniture, and fuel as a renewable energy source. Timber harvest, whether for wood production, restoration, or other reasons, can support local businesses and employment.

Forest management on the Sequoia National Forest consists of restoration and fuels reduction treatments designed to achieve or maintain desired conditions for each associated terrestrial vegetation type on lands suitable for timber production as well as lands not suited for timber production, but where timber harvest is allowed for other purposes. This includes objectives such as moving species composition toward desired conditions or reducing risk of loss of mature forest stands to insect infestations or uncharacteristic severe wildfire. Thinning increases individual tree vigor, increases horizontal heterogeneity, and reduces fuel hazards. Uneven-aged management using group selection or single tree selection is used for any regeneration harvests. Group and single-tree selection increases vertical and horizontal structure heterogeneity and promotes regeneration of shade-tolerant pines to move species composition toward desired conditions based on the natural range of variation, as well as to increase age class diversity. Typical restoration prescriptions often emphasize removing intermediate and suppressed trees while retaining larger and older trees, and preferentially removing overabundant shade-tolerant species such as firs and cedar, sometimes including larger individuals of these species. Thinning often leaves a variable density of trees in a heterogeneous pattern of individual trees, clumps of trees and small openings or gaps to promote regeneration of preferentially shade-intolerant pines. The residual stand density, structure and composition will be consistent with moving toward desired



conditions for the appropriate vegetation type. Where used, gaps will be also be consistent with size and other characteristics described by desired conditions of the appropriate vegetation type and may occupy approximately 5 to 15 percent of the total area in a specific stand or treatment unit. Table 24 displays the annual average acres of activity projected to be implemented over the plan period for the Sequoia National Forest. Note that because group selection is typically used in conjunction with a thinning treatment, the acreages shown for group selection are a subset of the acres shown for thinning rather than a unique set of acres. In other words, the group selection footprint overlaps the thinning footprint. Other silvicultural practices may be used to achieve site-specific objectives such as those related to insect and pathogen concerns, meadow enhancement, or other objectives. Precommercial thinning refers to thinning young plantations where trees are smaller than the merchantability required for sawtimber, as well smaller or younger trees in older stands, either natural or planted. Thinning of these sub-merchantable-sized trees can be an important part of removing ladder fuels to reduce risk of loss and may be done in conjunction with thinning of larger trees, and it also is useful to manage density in younger stands. Table 24 also shows expected acreage of precommercial thinning treatments.

**Table 24. Estimated vegetation management practices on the Sequoia National Forest (annual average acres implemented)**

Forestwide vegetation management practice	Acres
Thinning (intermediate harvest)	800–1,200
Regeneration (group selection)	40–180
Precommercial thinning	500–700

Even-aged management systems such as clearcuts or shelterwood cuts are prohibited by a standard and therefore will not be used. These systems are not considered the best way to move toward desired conditions given current trends in southern Sierra conifer forests, including relative lack of large trees compared to natural range of variation, and continued loss of mature forest due to uncharacteristically severe fire and loss of large and old trees due to droughts and insect infestation interacting with overly dense stands. Therefore, this revised plan does not specify the maximum size of openings that would be created in even-aged regeneration harvests. The gaps created in uneven-aged single tree or group selections, which typically are less than 1.25 acres in size but may range up to about 3 acres, do not meet the definition of “openings” in even-aged regeneration harvests as used in the 2012 Planning Rule or the National Forest Management Act. Consistent with the National Forest Management Act of 1976, harvests for salvage or sanitation following natural catastrophic conditions such as fire, insect and disease attack, or windstorms, are not considered even-aged regeneration harvests and these may occur with no limit on the size of canopy opening created, although they must comply with all applicable plan direction.

Forests in wildfire protection zones, strategic ridge tops, and other areas conducive to fuelbreaks or other strategic features used for managing fire will be prioritized for treatment. Because most projects have a primary or single purpose of moving toward desired conditions or other purposes such as reducing fuel loads in the wildland-urban interface, vegetation management practices may look similar in many cases on lands both suited and not suited for timber production. Lands suited for timber production may receive somewhat more intensive application of treatments such as thinning to a lower density within the range of natural variation or having a greater proportion of the area in gaps, with the potential for somewhat increased yields per acre, because producing timber can be an objective on suitable lands in addition to moving toward desired conditions.

However, all harvests for any purposes must comply with applicable plan direction including standards and guidelines, and as a result, areas with more restrictions such as some categories of habitat for at-risk wildlife species or areas with more emphasis on scenic quality may yield less volume per acre in typical treatments. The ability to produce greater yields on some treated acres can provide the financial means necessary to conduct important non-commercial treatments on the same or different areas, such as pre-commercial thinning or thinning of sub-merchantable-sized trees for ladder fuel reduction.

### **Silvicultural Treatments Used in Timber Management Prescriptions**

While uneven-aged management will be the primary management system used to achieve desired conditions and restoration objectives, other silvicultural treatments may be used to better meet specific forest health and restoration objectives for long-term sustainability.

#### **Reforestation**

Reforestation is the act of renewing forest cover by establishing young trees. This is typically accomplished by planting nursery-grown seedlings, but establishment of seedlings from natural seeding of nearby sexually mature trees may supplement areas planted with nursery-grown seedlings. In some cases, natural seedlings originating from nearby trees may be used to meet management objectives. In the case where desired tree species are capable of sprouting new trees from roots (such as oaks and aspen), prolific sprouting can provide for effective reestablishment. Uneven-aged regeneration harvests such as group selections on lands suitable for timber production must by law have sufficient restocking within five years, consistent with applicable stocking criteria (table 25).

#### **Site Preparation**

Site preparation treatments are designed to enhance the success of regeneration efforts. Various methods may be used to reduce competing vegetation, planting obstacles, and fuel levels. Ground-based equipment may be used to reduce tree and shrub levels, providing a more favorable environment for developing seedlings. Selective herbicides may be applied to suppress competing plants, reducing competition for soil moisture and sunlight. Fire may be used to reduce surface fuel or to consume woody material piled by machine or hand.

#### **Seedling Establishment**

As discussed under reforestation, new forests may be established by planting nursery-grown seedlings or by germinating seed from nearby mature trees. Seedlings are grown in tree nurseries, from selected seed sources, to meet the expected demands of the future growth environment. Selected species, numbers, and arrangements are designed to provide a variety of options for the future. Seedlings developing from seeding of nearby mature trees vary widely in number and arrangement and commonly establish, in pulses, over time.

In managed environments, planting selected species at designed numbers and arrangements provides advantages over the development of seedlings from nearby mature trees. Seedlings originating from seeding of nearby trees often provide numbers exceeding need and in undesirable arrangement. They may, however, provide for successful establishment of new forests in places regarded as difficult to plant, or where planted seedling mortality levels are unacceptably high. Regardless of origin, both sources benefit from actions taken to provide more favorable growth environments.

### Seedling Stocking Criteria

Table 25 shows the stocking criteria for lands suitable for timber production. They are designed to attain long-term desired conditions and provide sufficient stocking to meet the potential forest product yields over time. The values apply after regeneration harvests, and after disturbances, like in areas affected by high-severity fire.

**Table 25. Stocking criteria for suitable lands by forest type\***

Forest type	Region 5 site class	Trees per acre minimum
Ponderosa/Jeffrey pine	0–3	200
Ponderosa/Jeffrey pine	4–5	150
True fir	All	300
Douglas-fir	All	225
Mixed conifer	All	200

\* Final density after stand establishment (within 5 years of harvest).

A certified silviculturist may write and implement a prescription that deviates from these stocking levels if site-specific conditions or objectives warrant doing so. On lands identified as suitable for timber production, successful restocking is expected to occur within 5 years of the final harvest.

### Release

These treatments are designed to free young trees from undesirable competing vegetation. Treatments aim to increase the availability of moisture, sunlight, and nutrients to planted seedlings, thus increasing survival and favorable growth rates. Depending on conditions, release can be performed using hand tools, herbicides, or mechanical methods.

### Precommercial Thinning

This treatment removes selected trees to reduce stocking and promote the growth and development of desirable trees. The removed trees are typically small and without sufficient value to cover the cost of the treatment.

### Timber Harvest

The projected activities associated with scheduled forest management on lands suitable for timber production are geared toward uneven-aged management, a system using a planned sequence of treatments, designed to maintain and regenerate a stand with three or more age classes. The types of treatments used are primarily thinning and group selection.

- Thinning is commonly applied to decrease stand density and improve the health and growth rates of the remaining trees. It may also be designed to alter tree arrangement. Trees of merchantable size are selected for removal; trees of less than merchantable size are selected when the reduction of ladder fuels is an objective. The youngest age classes are typically excluded from thinning.
- Group selection is the most common method used to regenerate an age class. All, or most, of the trees in a group are removed to create a gap, followed by the establishment of seedlings. The size of the gap is variable but is designed to provide sufficient site resources for favorable seedling establishment and growth. For example, establishment of shade-intolerant pine species typically requires larger gaps than shade-tolerant true fir

species. Unlike even-aged methods such as clearcutting, group selection gaps are always smaller than an individual forest stand, and typically do not exceed three acres in size. Group selection harvests can be used to improve heterogeneity consistent with historic stand structures. Sierran mixed-conifer stands historically exhibited fine-scale heterogeneity with gap sizes commonly ranging between 0.05 and 0.75 acre whereas current stands are often relatively homogeneous over tens or hundreds of acres. Group selections may sometimes create gaps up to 3 acres, depending on stand conditions, but will be designed to move toward the desired conditions of finer scale variability over time as stand development, natural disturbances, and intermediate treatments such as prescribed burning or thinning occur. Larger gap sizes than the natural range of variation may be necessary in some cases to ensure establishment of shade-intolerant species such as pines. The shift in species composition from pines to shade-tolerant true firs and cedars is also a significant departure from historic conditions and reestablishing appropriate species composition is therefore a necessary part of moving toward desired conditions over the long term. Having appropriate species composition facilitates future modifications of stand structure toward desired conditions and is important for long-term sustainability of Sierran mixed-conifer stands.

In addition to scheduled forest management, management may also occur in response to disturbance events (such as wildfire, windthrow, insects, parasites, or pathogen-related decline). Other harvest methods will likely apply to these specific conditions and project objectives. For example, after wildfire, and especially on suitable land, salvage harvests may be implemented to recover the economic value of dead and dying trees and to reduce the future fuel environment. Other events, such as windthrow and insect- and pathogen-related infestations, may lead to salvage or sanitation harvests, to recover economic value and improve residual stand health.

Safety considerations, although not regarded as a component of a harvest system, will likely lead to the harvest of dead and dying trees, as well as living trees deemed a risk, that may fall along roads and other places where people or property are threatened. This action, commonly referred to as hazard tree removal, or tree risk reduction, may be used extensively along roads and trails within wildfire areas.

Timber harvest activities generate slash or activity fuels which can exacerbate surface fuel loading, particularly as greater volumes per acre are harvested. Slash is commonly disposed of by burning, either in piles or by broadcast burning treatment units. Piles can be constructed by hand or various tractors within treated units or consolidated on landings using whole-tree yarding.

# Appendix E: Aquatic and Riparian Conservation Strategy

## Introduction

This appendix describes how water, watersheds, aquatic species, and riparian plan direction are integrated together into a strategy to retain, restore, and protect the processes that provide habitat for aquatic and riparian-dependent organisms, and produce and deliver high-quality waters. This aquatic and riparian strategy was developed under the guidance of the 2012 Planning Rule, updating the direction provided by the 2004 Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment<sup>55</sup>, and adopting an approach focused on maintaining and restoring ecological integrity and dynamic processes across broad landscapes.

The 2012 Planning Rule includes requirements for maintaining and restoring watersheds and the ecological integrity of aquatic ecosystems, water resources, and riparian areas in the plan area. The increased focus on watersheds and water resources in the planning rule reflects the Forest Service's commitment to the stewardship of water resources. The planning rule defines ecological integrity as "the quality or condition of an ecosystem when its dominant ecological characteristics (for example, composition, structure, function, connectivity, and species composition and diversity) occur within the natural range of variation and can withstand and recover from most perturbations imposed by natural environmental dynamics or human influence." The new strategy is also consistent with the goals of the 2017 National Fish and Aquatic Strategy<sup>56</sup> that includes conservation of fish and aquatic resources and strengthening partnerships for stewardship of aquatic and riparian ecosystems and dependent species.

## Plan Components

This plan includes direction to maintain or restore water quality and the structure, function, composition, and connectivity of aquatic ecosystems in the plan area. Potential stressors, including climate change, and how these could affect ecosystem health and resilience were considered. Plan components include desired conditions, goals, objectives, standards, and guidelines.

Plan direction is provided for the following topics:

1. **Watershed Conditions (Forestwide):** Plan direction covers the broad area of soils and water throughout the Sequoia National Forest at the watershed scale. Watersheds include riparian conservation areas and the riparian and aquatic environments contained within them, such as rivers, streams, meadows, springs, and seeps. Plan direction for priority watersheds can be found here.
2. **Riparian Conservation Areas:** Lands adjacent to water resources and unstable and potentially unstable areas where special standards and guidelines direct land use.
3. **Conservation Watersheds:** Conservation watersheds are a specific subset of watersheds selected by national forest managers to provide for continued high-quality water sources and the long-term persistence of at-risk species.

---

<sup>55</sup> USDA Forest Service. 2004. Sierra Nevada Forest Plan Amendment: Record of Decision and Final Supplemental Environmental Impact Statement. Vallejo, CA.

<sup>56</sup> USDA Forest Service. 2017. Rise to the future: National fish and aquatic strategy. FS-1100b. November 2017. Forest Service. Washington, D.C.

4. **Monitoring:** The forest plan monitoring program forms the basis for continuous improvement of the forest plan and provides information for adaptive management within the plan area. Questions and indicators are identified for evaluating the effectiveness of plan components.

## Watershed Conditions (Forestwide)

Plan direction found in this section of the plan cover the broad area of soils and water throughout the Sequoia National Forest at the watershed scale. Watersheds include riparian conservation areas and the riparian and aquatic environments contained within them, such as rivers, streams, meadows, springs, and seeps. Plan components specific to these areas are also found here.

Priority watersheds are where plan objectives for restoration are implemented to maintain or improve watershed condition. The Forest Service Watershed Condition Framework is used to identify priority watersheds for restoration. The Framework provides national direction to protect high value watersheds on the national forest and provide maximum flexibility to improve water quality, species habitat, and watershed condition. The Sequoia National Forest currently has one priority watershed within the plan area. The list of priority watersheds can be changed administratively without a forest plan amendment. Watershed Condition Framework priority watersheds are mapped online at the Forest Service Watershed Condition and Prioritization Interactive Map at [https://www.fs.usda.gov/biology/watershed/condition\\_framework.html](https://www.fs.usda.gov/biology/watershed/condition_framework.html).

Conservation watersheds differ from priority watersheds in several ways:

- Conservation watersheds are large areas composed of multiple subwatersheds (HUC-12; see glossary). Priority watersheds are smaller, generally equivalent to HUC-12 watersheds in size and area.
- Conservation watersheds represent a long-term prioritization for maintenance and restoration of watersheds that remains in effect for the life of the plan. Priority watersheds are a short-term tactical approach to restoring HUC-12 watersheds. Watershed restoration action plans for priority watersheds are developed and implemented over a 5- to 7-year period. New priority watersheds are identified following completion of restoration activities and the cycle repeats.
- The development of watershed restoration action plans is specific to priority watersheds only.

## Riparian Conservation Areas

Riparian conservation area plan components apply to the entire riparian conservation area, as well as the specific riparian and aquatic environments contained within them, such as rivers, streams, meadows, springs, and seeps. Management activities in riparian conservation areas are designed to protect, restore, or enhance water quality and the ecological health and function of aquatic and riparian ecosystems and associated resources. Riparian areas and aquatic habitat standards were developed to protect hydrologic processes, water temperatures, flows, connectivity, aquatic species, shorelines, and occupied native cutthroat trout stream reaches.

Riparian conservation area widths are defined by type:

- perennial streams, 300 feet on each side of the stream, measured from the bank full edge of the stream;

- seasonally flowing streams (includes intermittent and ephemeral streams), 150 feet on each side of the stream, measured from the bank full edge of the stream;
- streams in inner gorges (defined by stream adjacent slopes greater than 70 percent gradient), top of inner gorge;
- special aquatic features (e.g., lakes, wet meadows, bogs, fens, wetlands, vernal pools, and springs) or perennial streams with riparian conditions extending more than 150 feet from edge of streambank, or seasonally flowing streams with riparian conditions extending more than 50 feet from edge of streambank, 300 feet from edge of feature or riparian vegetation, whichever width is greater; and
- other hydrological or topographic depressions without defined channels (for these, riparian conservation area widths and protection measures are determined through project-level analysis).

Riparian conservation areas are defined under the 2012 Planning Rule as lands of a specific character, not as management areas. Plan direction for lands of specific character includes a description of where the direction applies (Forest Service Handbook 1909.12, section 22.2). Riparian conservation areas are included as lands of a specific character because they are not tied to a specific management or geographic area and are found across the entire national forest.

Riparian conservation area widths may be adjusted at the project level if interdisciplinary analysis demonstrates a need for different widths to maintain or improve aquatic or riparian habitats. Any changes to the mapped and defined widths will require an interdisciplinary analysis to show how proposed changes are consistent with riparian conservation area management direction.

Riparian conservation areas contain equipment exclusion zones that are nested within them or are identical to the total riparian conservation area width. Equipment exclusion zones vary by feature type and can be adjusted based on factors such as slope and soil stability. The equipment exclusion zone width is within 150 feet of perennial streams, meadows springs, and seeps; 75 feet for intermittent streams, and 25 feet for ephemeral streams. The width where mechanical equipment is limited can be adjusted in consideration of geomorphology, slope, soil conditions, and when needed to allow for ecological restoration activities. Temporary crossings can be authorized provided that the risk of short-term sedimentation and erosion are minimized by implementing best management practices. Projects occurring within the exclusions zone will repair any damage, including stabilizing soils.

## **Conservation Watersheds**

The importance of a landscape-scale approach to establish functioning aquatic and riparian ecosystems to protect at-risk species is widely accepted. Large-scale aquatic preserves allow for connectivity of habitat where appropriate, allow species to shift their distributions in response to climate change, and focus on maintaining high-quality habitat.

Protecting headwaters has a profound influence on shaping downstream water quantity and water quality and species diversity. Conservation watersheds support networks of properly functioning watersheds that support populations of fish, other aquatic and riparian-dependent organisms, and State-designated uses of water while enabling provision of multiple other goods and services such as outdoor recreation, timber, forage, and habitats for plants and wildlife.

Conservation watersheds were designed to complement priority watersheds identified through the agency's 2011 Watershed Condition Framework. By definition, priority watersheds under the

Watershed Condition Framework are designated for 5 to 7 years. In contrast, conservation watersheds are intended to help protect and maintain the most intact aquatic systems as well as restore degraded watersheds of high importance for stewardship of fish, aquatic resources, and water quality over the long term. The Sequoia National Forest is committed to working in cooperation with the State of California, other Federal agencies and in partnership with many other entities to accomplish maintenance and restoration of the conservation watersheds.

During selection of conservation watersheds, resource specialists considered maximizing resilience and connectivity of habitat where appropriate, for at-risk species; selecting watersheds that were primarily in National Forest System ownership with high-quality habitats for at-risk species and at-risk species distributions. Local knowledge, stakeholder input, and scientific literature were also considered. Local knowledge was used to evaluate the most vulnerable at-risk aquatic species locations to be protected, maintained, or improved.

The selection of conservation watersheds was based on the aforementioned factors and the additional criteria below:

- Highest priority areas to ensure species persistence, especially at-risk aquatic species
- Provision of high-quality water for species and other beneficial uses (municipal watersheds) and protecting the best first
- In good condition: functioning or functioning-at-risk according to Watershed Condition Framework
- Anchored to areas (like wilderness or inventoried roadless areas) that augment resilience
- At spatial scales to facilitate networks of high-quality watersheds and connectivity among them to provide resilience in face of large-scale unplanned events, like fire or floods
- Relationship to priority watersheds

Conservation watersheds were selected where agreements on all criteria were met.

## **Monitoring Indicators**

Monitoring forms the basis for continuous improvement of the forest plan and provides information for adaptive management within the plan area. Monitoring activities are focused on the following topics:

- The status of select watershed conditions.
- The status of select ecological conditions including key characteristics of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.
- The status of a select set of ecological conditions required under 36 CFR 219.9 to contribute to the recovery of federally listed threatened and endangered species, conserve proposed and candidate species, and maintain a viable population of each species of conservation.
- Measurable changes on the plan area related to climate change and other stressors that may be affecting the plan area.
- The effects of each management system to determine that they do not substantially and permanently impair the productivity of the land (16 U.S.C. 1604(g)(3)(C)).



Monitoring questions developed for each of these topics are designed to provide information on watershed condition, soil structure and function, soil disturbance from management activities, ecological conditions of riparian ecosystems including meadows, stream condition, stream temperature, and habitat conditions for at-risk species (if applicable). Monitoring questions also assess watershed health by providing information on the status of fire regimes and tree mortality.

## **Conservation Watershed Descriptions**

The following section provides information on the conservation watershed identified on the Sequoia National Forest.

**Upper South Fork Kern Conservation Watershed** contains much of the South Fork Kern River and its tributaries on the Sequoia National Forest. Many of these subwatersheds have high overall biodiversity, moderate to high terrestrial diversity, and moderate aquatic biodiversity. Aquatic at-risk species contained within this conservation watershed include mountain yellow-legged frogs, golden trout, Kern Plateau slender salamander, Behr's metalmark, and Evius blue butterfly.

**Upper North Fork Kern Conservation Watershed** contains the Upper North Fork Kern River and its tributaries within the plan area. The conservation watershed has areas of high to moderate biodiversity, and aquatic biodiversity. Aquatic at-risk species include Little Kern golden trout, mountain yellow-legged frogs, foothill yellow-legged frogs, Kern River rainbow trout, Behr's metalmark, Evius blue butterfly, Kern Plateau slender salamander, and Fairview slender salamander.

**Lower Kern River Conservation Watershed** contains the subwatersheds in the lower Kern River primarily on the Forest. This watershed has high species biodiversity, high terrestrial biodiversity, and high to moderate and aquatic biodiversity. At-risk species include hardhead minnows, western pearlshell mussels, relictual and Kern Canyon slender salamanders, tricolored blackbirds, and California condor and migratory birds.

Sustaining healthy watersheds and aquatic ecosystems that support an abundance and diversity of fish, other aquatic species, and their habitats is part of the Forest Service's mission. This strategy illustrates how the Sequoia National Forest is committed to protecting, restoring, and enhancing watersheds and aquatic ecosystems upon which populations of fish and other aquatic species depend. This long-term effort will enable the Forest staff to connect people to the outdoors through fishing, rafting, kayaking, and volunteer activities to clean the rivers. These types of activities bring economic, social, and cultural benefits to the underserved communities in the Central Valley, the southern Sierra foothills, and nearby Bakersfield.

## Appendix F: Species of Conservation Concern

Regional Forester Jennifer Eberlien finalized the Sequoia National Forest’s species of conservation concern list in 2023. This list was updated compared to earlier versions of the list with the addition of eight plant species, and removal of four species that were proposed for listing under the Endangered Species Act. The 2023 updated list appears in table 26. Four species identified in table 27 were on previous versions of the list and were considered as species of conservation concern throughout the planning process; however, they were recently proposed for listing under the Endangered Species Act. As proposed species, they are still considered “at-risk” species under the plan but no longer meet the definition of species of conservation concern under the 2012 Planning Rule. The list of species of conservation concern is dynamic and will be periodically updated when the regional forester determines new scientific information warrants a change in species status. To see the most up-to-date list of species of conservation concern, please go to the Pacific Southwest Region Species of Conservation Concern [website at https://www.fs.usda.gov/goto/SCC](https://www.fs.usda.gov/goto/SCC).

The regional forester’s species of conservation concern list is updated through an administrative change, so a plan amendment is not required to change the list. The process for revising the species of conservation concern list, either by addition or deletion, is found in Forest Service Handbook 1909.12, chapter 20, section 21.22b Evaluating New Information on Species of Conservation Concern. This section of the handbook repeats many of the requirements found in FSH 1909.12, chapter 10, section 12.52, Identifying Species of Conservation Concern. If a species is added to the list, the forest plan will be reviewed to determine if plan content provides for the ecological needs of the newly listed species of conservation concern, and, if necessary, the plan would be amended to add any plan components necessary to provide for the species’ long-term persistence in the plan area.

**Table 26. Regional forester’s list of animal species of conservation concern for the Sequoia National Forest as of March 2023**

Type	Common Name ( <i>Scientific name</i> )
Birds	Bald eagle ( <i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i> ) Great gray owl ( <i>Strix nebulosa</i> ) Kern red-winged blackbird ( <i>Agelaius phoeniceus aciculatus</i> ) Mount Pinos sooty grouse ( <i>Dendragapus fuliginosus howardi</i> ) Northern goshawk ( <i>Accipiter gentilis atricapillus</i> ) Tricolored blackbird ( <i>Agelaius tricolor</i> ) Willow flycatcher ( <i>Empidonax traillii brewsteri</i> and <i>E.t. adastus</i> )
Mammals	Fringed myotis ( <i>Myotis thysanodes</i> ) Sierra marten ( <i>Martes caurina sierra</i> ) Townsend's big-eared bat ( <i>Corynorhinus townsendii</i> )
Aquatic Amphibians	Kern Plateau salamander ( <i>Batrachoseps robustus</i> )
Terrestrial Amphibians	Fairview slender salamander ( <i>Batrachoseps bramei</i> ) Yellow-blotched salamander ( <i>Ensatina eschscholtzii croceator</i> )
Fish	California golden trout ( <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss aguabonita</i> ) Central Valley hitch ( <i>Lavinia exilicauda exilicauda</i> ) Hardhead ( <i>Mylopharodon conocephalus</i> ) Kern River rainbow trout ( <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss gilberti</i> )
Terrestrial Invertebrates	Behr's metalmark ( <i>Apodemus virgulti davenporti</i> ) Evius blue ( <i>Plebejus icarioides evius</i> ) Greenish blue ( <i>Plebejus saepiolus aehaja</i> ) Tehachapi fritillary ( <i>Speyeria egleis tehachapina</i> )

Appendix F: Species of Conservation Concern

Type	Common Name (Scientific name)
Aquatic Invertebrates	Western pearlshell ( <i>Margaritifera falcata</i> )
Plants	<p>Walker Pass milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus ertterae</i>)</p> <p>Kern Plateau milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus lentiginosus</i> var. <i>kernensis</i>)</p> <p>Little Kern or Shevock's milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus shevockii</i>)</p> <p>Kern County milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus subvestitus</i>)</p> <p>Hidden rockcress (<i>Boechea evadens</i>)</p> <p>Tulare rockcress (<i>Boechea tularensis</i>)</p> <p>Scalloped moonwort (<i>Botrychium crenulatum</i>)</p> <p>Palmer's mariposa lily (<i>Calochortus palmeri</i> var. <i>palmeri</i>)</p> <p>Alkali mariposa lily (<i>Calochortus striatus</i>)</p> <p>Shirley Meadows star-tulip, mariposa lily (<i>Calochortus westonii</i>)</p> <p>Pygmy pussypaws (<i>Calyptidium pygmaeum</i>)</p> <p>Kern River evening primrose (<i>Camissonia integrifolia</i>)</p> <p>Muir's tarplant (<i>Carlquistia muirii</i>)</p> <p>Kern Plateau bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus eremicus</i> ssp. <i>kernensis</i>)</p> <p>Tulare cryptantha (<i>Cryptantha incana</i>)</p> <p>Mojave tarplant (<i>Deinandra mohavensis</i>)</p> <p>Unexpected larkspur (<i>Delphinium inopinum</i>)</p> <p>Rose-flowered Larkspur (<i>Delphinium purpusii</i>)</p> <p>Sierra bleeding heart, Tulare County bleeding heart (<i>Dicentra nevadensis</i>)</p> <p>Calico monkeyflower (<i>Diplacus pictus</i> (<i>Mimulus pictus</i>))</p> <p>Blandow's bog moss (<i>Elodium blandowii</i> (<i>Helodium blandowii</i>))</p> <p>Tracy's eriastrum (<i>Eriastrum tracyi</i>)</p> <p>Hall's daisy, Hall's fleabane (<i>Erigeron aequifolius</i>)</p> <p>Kern River daisy (<i>Erigeron multiceps</i>)</p> <p>Breedlove's buckwheat, Piute buckwheat (<i>Eriogonum breedlovei</i> var. <i>breedlovei</i>)</p> <p>Monarch buckwheat (<i>Eriogonum ovalifolium</i> var. <i>monarchense</i>)</p> <p>Two-colored monkeyflower (<i>Erythranthe discolor</i>)</p> <p>Greenhorn fritillary (<i>Fritillaria brandegeei</i>)</p> <p>Boyden Cave gilia (<i>Gilia yorkii</i>)</p> <p>Tube flower bluecup (<i>Githopsis tenella</i>)</p> <p>Piute cypress (<i>Hesperocyparis nevadensis</i>)</p> <p>Monarch golden aster (<i>Heterotheca monarchensis</i>)</p> <p>Shevock's golden aster (<i>Heterotheca shevockii</i>)</p> <p>Kern Plateau horkelia (<i>Horkelia tularensis</i>)</p> <p>Short-leaved hulsea (<i>Hulsea brevifolia</i>)</p> <p>Pygmy hulsea (<i>Hulsea vestita</i> ssp. <i>pygmaea</i>)</p> <p>Field ivesia (<i>Ivesia campestris</i>)</p> <p>Madera leptosiphon (<i>Leptosiphon serrulatus</i>)</p> <p>Yosemite lewisia (<i>Lewisia disepala</i>)</p> <p>Meesia moss (<i>Meesia uliginosa</i>)</p> <p>Shevock's copper moss (<i>Mielichhoferia shevockii</i>)</p> <p>Tehachapi or flaxlike Monardella (<i>Monardella linoides</i> ssp. <i>oblonga</i>)</p> <p>Baja navarretia (<i>Navarretia peninsularis</i>)</p> <p>Chimney Creek nemacladus (<i>Nemacladus calcaratus</i>)</p> <p>Twisselmann's nemacladus (<i>Nemacladus twisselmannii</i>)</p> <p>Purple mountain-parsley (<i>Oreonana purpurascens</i>)</p> <p>Woolly mountain-parsley (<i>Oreonana vestita</i>)</p> <p>Spjut's bristle moss (<i>Orthotrichum spjutii</i>)</p> <p>Charlotte's phacelia (<i>Phacelia nashiana</i>)</p> <p>Nine Mile Canyon phacelia (<i>Phacelia novemmillensis</i>)</p> <p>Cut-leaf checkerbloom (<i>Sidalcea multifida</i>)</p> <p>Chickweed oxytheca (<i>Sidotheca carophylloides</i>)</p> <p>Piute Mountains jewel-flower (<i>Streptanthus cordatus</i> var. <i>piutensis</i>)</p> <p>Tehipite Valley jewel-flower (<i>Streptanthus fenestratus</i>)</p> <p>San Bernardino aster (<i>Symphyotrichum defoliatum</i>)</p> <p>Dedecker's clover (<i>Trifolium kingii</i> ssp. <i>dedeckerae</i> (<i>T. dedeckerae</i>))</p> <p>Oval-leaved viburnum (<i>Viburnum ellipticum</i>)</p>

**Table 27. Species recently proposed for listing under the Endangered Species Act. These species were considered as species of conservation concern throughout the plan revision process.**

Type	Common Name ( <i>Scientific name</i> )
Birds	California spotted owl ( <i>Strix occidentalis occidentalis</i> )
Amphibians	Foothill yellow-legged frog ( <i>Rana boyii</i> ) Kern Canyon slender salamander ( <i>Batrachoseps simatus</i> ) Relictual slender salamander ( <i>Batrachoseps simatus</i> )

## Appendix G: Existing Resource Plans

### Existing Resource Plans that Continue to Guide Management

The following existing resource plans and agreements guide management of the Sequoia National Forest along with the land management plan. This list is not comprehensive, and there may be other resource plans that are being implemented by the Sequoia National Forest.

- Individual research natural area management plans for established research natural areas:
  - ♦ Church Dome Research Natural Area, established 1992
  - ♦ Long Canyon Research Natural Area, established 2004
  - ♦ Moses Mountain Research Natural Area, established 1989
- Administration and management plan for designated national recreation trails:
  - ♦ Cannell Meadow National Recreation Trail (1979)
  - ♦ Jackass National Recreation Trail (1979)
  - ♦ Summit National Recreation Trail (1979)
- Bodfish Piute Cypress Botanical Area (1970)
- Domeland Wilderness Plan (1979)
- Golden Trout Wilderness Plan (1982)
- Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan (1982)
- Implementation Plan, Kings River Special Management Area; Kings, Kings South Fork and Kings Middle Fork, Wild and Scenic Rivers (1991)
- South Sierra Wilderness Plan (1991)
- North and South Forks of the Kern Wild and Scenic River Plan (1994)
- Upper Kern Basin Fishery Management Plan (1994)
- California condor (*Gymnogyps californianus*) Recovery Plan (1975; Revised 1996)
- Species Management Guide for *Calochortus westonii* (1984, updated 1997)
- Recovery Plan for Upland Species of the San Joaquin Valley, California (1998)
- Southwestern Willow Flycatcher (*Empidonax traillii extimus*) Recovery Plan (2002)
- Conservation Assessment and Strategy for the California Golden Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss aguabonita*) (2004)
- Sierra Nevada Bighorn Sheep (*Ovis canadensis sierrae*) Recovery Plan (2007)
- Motorized Travel Management Plan (2009). Designations of roads, trails and areas made in the 2009 travel management decision will not change in the revised land management plan.
- Giant Sequoia National Monument Management Plan (2012)

## **Superseded Resource Plans**

The land management plan supersedes the following resource plans

- Sequoia National Forest Section Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Management Plan (1981)

# Appendix H: Geographic Definitions of Mixed Conifer Types and Application for Wildlife Territories

## Topographic Definitions

Distinguishing dry mixed conifer and moist mixed conifer within the plan area is important because of the unique desired conditions associated with each of these vegetation types. Delineating these types on a map may be achieved using a number of different data sources or analytical approaches. The specific geographic definitions used in the planning process are provided in this Appendix for clarification.

Although the approach used to delineate dry and moist mixed conifer in plan revision documents was based on the current best available science (i.e., North 2012) at a landscape scale, new and emerging spatial data, analytical tools, and science information may become available in the near future to more accurately and precisely delineate these and other vegetation types within the plan area. In future project and landscape planning efforts, the consideration of new technology (e.g., LiDAR or other high-resolution imagery), spatial data (e.g., higher resolution digital elevation models that represent the bare earth topographic surface), and science information would help refine future mapping efforts of dry versus moist mixed conifer forests and other vegetation types.

The approach in the environmental analysis used the Landscape Management Unit (LMU) Version 2 Tool (Information Center for the Environment [ICE] 2013). The moist and dry delineations were created using a combination of vegetation type mapping and topographic data. Mixed conifer was identified in the environmental analysis using Existing Vegetation (Eveg) 2016 data (USDA Forest Service 2018) that was converted from vector to raster based on the WHRTYPE field at a 5-meter pixel size. The 5-meter “WHRTYPE” raster was aggregated (resampled) to 30-meter pixels (approximately 0.22 acres) based on a majority function. The Sierran Mixed Conifer vegetation type was separated into dry and moist categories using the LMU 2 tool output run on a 30-meter digital elevation model. The LMU 2 tool classified the landscape into six topographic categories (LMUs):

1. Ridge
2. Canyon/Drainage Bottom
3. Midslope SW < 30% slope
4. Midslope SW > 30% slope
5. Midslope NE < 30%
6. Midslope NE > 30% slope

Specific parameters used within the LMU 2 tool include:

- Terrain Type: Steep
- TPI radius for ridges: 500 meters
- Minimum elevation separation for ridges: 25 meters
- Minimum area of ridge top (m<sup>2</sup>): 20,000 square meters
- TPI radius for canyons: 500 meters

- Minimum elevation separation for canyons: 20 meters
- Minimum area of canyon bottoms (m<sup>2</sup>): 40,000 square meters

Ten acres was the minimum area classified; any topographic and vegetation type unit less than 10 acres was assigned to the closest area over ten acres.

## Dry Mixed Conifer

Mixed conifer forests were defined as dry when located on ridges or on south- or west-facing aspects.

## Moist Mixed Conifer

Mixed conifer forests were defined as moist when located in canyon/drainage bottoms or on north- or east-facing aspects.

## Application for California Spotted Owl Territories

At least one of the following criteria must be met for a California spotted owl territory to be classified as Moist Mixed Conifer; otherwise, it will be considered Dry Mixed Conifer.

- $\geq 51\%$  of the 800-acre territory is Moist Mixed Conifer; OR
- $\geq 51\%$  *Forested* acres of the territory is Moist Mixed Conifer; OR
- $\geq 51\%$  of the 800-acre territory is Moist Conifer and/or Red Fir; OR
- $\geq 51\%$  of *Forested* acres of the territory is Moist Mixed Conifer and/or Red Fir

## References for Appendix H

- Landscape Management Unit (LMU) GIS toolbox [computer program] (Version 2.0). 2013. University of California, Davis, Information Center for the Environment, Davis, CA. [https://reforestationtools.org/LMU\\_tool/LMUtoolVersion2.zip](https://reforestationtools.org/LMU_tool/LMUtoolVersion2.zip).
- North, M., ed. 2012. Managing Sierra Nevada forests. Albany, CA: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station. <https://doi.org/10.2737/PSW-GTR-237>.
- USDA Forest Service. 2018. Existing vegetation (EVEG) geodatabases (South Sierra and Central Valley). U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Region, McClellan, CA. <https://www.fs.usda.gov/detail/r5/landmanagement/resourcemanagement/?cid=stelprdb5347192>.



# Glossary

---

**Adaptive capacity** is the ability of ecosystems to respond, cope, or adapt to disturbances and stressors, including environmental change, to maintain options for future generations.

**Allotment management plan (AMP)** is the plan that prescribes the livestock grazing practices necessary to meet specific resource objectives; specifies the conditions within which the permittee(s) may adjust operations without prior approval of the authorized officer; and provides for monitoring to evaluate the effectiveness of management actions in achieving the specific resource objectives of the plan.

**Aquatic restoration** includes all activities that result in direct benefits to aquatic and riparian habitats (e.g., fish passage restoration, riparian planting, large woody debris reintroduction, bank stabilization). These may also include offsite activities that result in a direct benefit to aquatic habitats such as road sediment source reduction at sites that contribute sediment directly to aquatic and riparian habitats. Considered a subset of watershed and ecological restoration.

**At-risk species** are federally recognized threatened, endangered, proposed, and candidate species and species of conservation concern within the plan area.

**Best management practices for water quality (BMPs)** are methods, measures or practices selected by an agency to meet its nonpoint source control needs. BMPs for water quality include but are not limited to structural and nonstructural controls and operation and maintenance procedures. BMPs for water quality can be applied before, during, and after pollution-producing activities to reduce or eliminate the introduction of pollutants into receiving waters (36 CFR 219.19).

**Biotic integrity** refers to habitat that supports viable populations of native and desired nonnative plant, invertebrate, and vertebrate species. Species composition and structural diversity of plant and animal communities provide desired habitat conditions and ecological functions. New introductions of invasive species are prevented. Where invasive species are adversely affecting the viability of native species, the appropriate State and Federal wildlife agencies have reduced impacts to native populations. The distribution and health of biotic communities perpetuates functions and biological diversity.

**Broader landscape** is the plan area and the lands surrounding the plan area. The spatial scale of the broader landscape varies depending upon the social, economic, and ecological issues under consideration.

**California spotted owl** is a medium-sized brown owl with a mottled appearance: white spots on the head and breast, and a barred tail. California spotted owls are one of three subspecies of spotted owl. California spotted owls generally inhabit older forests that contain structural characteristics necessary for nesting, roosting, and foraging. Nests are typically found in areas of dense canopy cover, with a multi-layered canopy, old decadent trees, a high number of large trees, and coarse downed woody debris.

**Protected activity center:** An area established around an occupied California spotted owl site to help ensure successful reproduction and species viability. A protected activity center is approximately 300 acres in size and includes the best owl nesting and roosting

habitat. Management in protected activity centers is focused on reduction of surface and ladder fuels and includes retention of key habitat elements such as higher levels of canopy cover to provide the cool understory conditions owls need, and the down woody debris and forage (cover, fungi, seeds) needed by their prey. Management may involve thinning and/or burning to reduce the risk of high-intensity wildfire, often with timing restrictions to prevent disturbance to owls during the breeding season.

**Candidate species** is a species under the purview of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, for which the Fish and Wildlife Service possesses sufficient information on vulnerability and threats to support a proposal to list as endangered or threatened, but for which no proposed rule has yet been published by the Service. For species under the purview of the National Marine Fisheries Service, a candidate species is a species that is the subject of a petition to list as a threatened or endangered species and for which the Fisheries Service has determined that listing may be warranted, pursuant to section 4(b)(3)(A) of the Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1533(b)(3)(A)), or a species that is not the subject of a petition but for which the Fisheries Service has announced in the Federal Register the initiation of a status review.

**Canopy closure** is the percentage of the sky hemisphere obscured by vegetation when viewed from a single point.

**Canopy cover** is the percentage of forest floor covered by the vertical projection of the tree crowns.

**Carbon carrying capacity** is the amount of carbon that can be stored in a system as a function of prevailing climatic conditions and natural disturbance regimes, and a potential foundation for carbon management plans.<sup>57</sup>

**Carbon sequestration** is the process of carbon uptake and storage that is carried out primarily by vegetation. Carbon sequestration is an ecosystem service for mitigating human-caused climate change.

**Carbon stocks** are the total pool of carbon in an area, including live and dead biomass, and above and below ground carbon (also referred to as “stored carbon” or “carbon storage”).

**Climate change adaptation** is an adjustment in natural or human systems in response to actual or expected climatic stimuli, or their effects, which moderates harm or exploits beneficial opportunities. This adaptation includes initiatives and measures to reduce the vulnerability of natural and human systems against actual or expected climate change effects: building resistance to climate-related stressors; increasing ecological resilience by minimizing the severity of climate change impacts, reducing the vulnerability, and increasing the adaptive capacity of ecosystem elements; and facilitating ecological transitions in response to changing environmental conditions.

**Collaboration** is a structured way a collection of people with diverse interests share knowledge, ideas, and resources, while working together in an inclusive and cooperative manner toward a common purpose.

**Community buffers** are areas directly adjacent to structures where treatments on National Forest System lands are designed to reduce wildfire behavior and intensity and provide for firefighter

---

<sup>57</sup> Hurteau, M.D. and M.L. Brooks. 2011. Short- and long-term effects of fire on carbon in U.S. dry temperate forest systems. *BioScience*, 61 (2):139–146.

safety if deployed to defend the structure. Human health and safety are the primary values at risk within these areas and there are very few or no snags that would present a hazard to firefighters near the structure. The maximum width is based on potential fire behavior in adjacent areas under extreme fire weather conditions (i.e., 97th percentile weather, probable average momentary wind gusts). The maximum width is sufficient to provide low radiant heat from areas of untreated fuels (i.e., four times the potential maximum flame length in adjacent areas on slopes less than 40 percent and six times the potential maximum flame length in adjacent areas on slopes greater than 40 percent). Community buffers are within the community wildfire protection zone (see chapter 2).

**Complex early seral habitat** is a type of early successional forest habitat that contains structural, compositional, or functional elements of ecological complexity or integrity. These post-disturbance elements may include large snags, logs, and isolated live trees or tree clumps, as well as patches of young native shrubs, hardwoods, herbaceous plants, or tree regeneration. Spatial heterogeneity in vegetation structure and diversity in vegetation composition during post-disturbance recovery is an important element of complexity in early seral forest habitat.

**Connectivity** is the ecological conditions that exist at several spatial and temporal scales to provide landscape linkages, including to permit the exchange of flow, sediments, and nutrients; the daily and seasonal movements of animals within home ranges; the dispersal and genetic interchange between populations; and the long-distance range shifts of species, such as in response to climate change.

**Conservation** is the protection, preservation, management, or restoration of natural environments, ecological communities, and species.

**Critical habitat** for a threatened or endangered species is: (1) the specific areas within the geographical area occupied by the species, at the time it is listed and in accordance with the provisions of section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1533), on which are found those physical or biological features (a) essential to the conservation of the species, and (b) which may require special management considerations or protections; and (2) specific areas outside the geographical area occupied by the species at the time it is listed in accordance with the provisions of section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (16 U.S.C. 1533), upon a determination by the Secretary that such areas are essential for the conservation of the species, (16 U.S.C. 1532 section 3(5)(A)). Critical habitat is designated through rulemaking by the Secretary of the Interior or Commerce, Endangered Species Act (section 4 (a)(3) and (b)(2)).

**Design criteria** are elements of a project description in project-level National Environmental Policy Act documents that identify various requirements for project implementation. They may be mandatory to comply with applicable laws or regulations, or they may be voluntary to mitigate findings of effects of the project at the discretion of the responsible official. Project design criteria are commonly used to implement forest plan components such as standards and guidelines, or other policy requirements such as best management practices for soil and water conservation.

**Development scale** is a classification system for recreation sites that distinguishes the degree of site amenities and alteration present. Development scales range from 0 (no Forest Service investment or amenities) to 5 (designed developed site with significant Forest Service investment and delineation). Reference FSH 2309.13, sec. 10.5 and 10.8.

**Distinctive scenic attractiveness**<sup>58</sup> is defined as areas where landform, vegetation patterns, water characteristics, and cultural features combine to provide unusual, unique, or outstanding scenic quality. These landscapes have strong positive attributes of variety, unity, vividness, mystery, intactness, order, harmony, uniqueness, pattern, and balance.

**Disturbance** is any relatively discrete event in time that disrupts ecosystem, watershed, community, or species population structure and/or function, changing resources, substrate availability, or the physical environment.

**Ecological conditions** are the biological and physical environment that can affect the diversity of plant and animal communities, the persistence of native species, and the productive capacity of ecological systems. Ecological conditions include habitat and other influences on species and the environment. Examples of ecological conditions include the abundance and distribution of aquatic and terrestrial habitats, connectivity, roads and other structural developments, human uses, and invasive species.

**Ecological integrity** is the quality or condition of an ecosystem when its dominant ecological characteristics (such as composition, structure, function, connectivity, and species composition and diversity) occur within the natural range of variation and can withstand and recover from most perturbations imposed by natural environmental dynamics or human influence. Synonymous with ecosystem integrity.

**Ecological restoration** is the process of assisting the recovery of an ecosystem that has been degraded, damaged, or destroyed. Ecological restoration focuses on reestablishing the composition, structure, pattern, and ecological processes necessary to facilitate terrestrial and aquatic ecosystem sustainability, resilience, and health under current and future condition.

**Ecosystem** is a spatially explicit, relatively homogeneous unit of the Earth that includes all interacting organisms and elements of the abiotic environment within its boundaries. An ecosystem is commonly described in terms of its (1) composition or the biological elements within the different levels of biological organization, from genes and species to communities and ecosystems; (2) structure or the organization and physical arrangement of biological elements such as snags and down woody debris, vertical and horizontal distribution of vegetation, stream habitat complexity, landscape pattern and connectivity; (3) function or the ecological processes that sustain composition and structure, such as energy flow, nutrient cycling and retention, soil development and retention, predation and herbivory, and natural disturbances such as wind, fire and floods; and (4) connectivity.

**Ecosystem services** are benefits people obtain from ecosystems: (1) provisioning services, such as clean air and fresh water, energy, food, fuel, forage, wood products or fiber, and minerals; (2) regulating services, such as long-term storage of carbon; climate regulation; water filtration, purification, and storage; soil stabilization; flood and drought control; and disease regulation; (3) supporting services, such as pollination, seed dispersal, soil formation and nutrient cycling; and (4) cultural services, such as educational, aesthetic, spiritual, and cultural heritage values, recreational experiences, and tourism opportunities.

**Endangered species** are any species that the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Commerce has determined is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its

---

<sup>58</sup> USDA Forest Service. 1995. Landscape Aesthetics: A Handbook for Scenery Management. Agriculture Handbook Number 701. Washington, DC. 104 p.

range. Endangered species are listed in the Code of Federal Regulations at 50 CFR sections 17.11, 17.12, and 224.101.

**Ephemeral stream** is a stream that flows only in direct response to precipitation in the immediate locality (watershed or catchment basin), and whose channel is at all other times above the zone of saturation.

**Even-aged stand** refers to a stand of trees composed of a single age class.

**Federally recognized Indian Tribe** is an Indian Tribe or Alaska Native Corporation, band, nation, pueblo, village, or community that the Secretary of the Interior acknowledges to exist as an Indian Tribe under the Federally Recognized Indian Tribe List Act of 1994 (25 U.S.C. 479a).

**Final regeneration harvest** is the final timber harvest in a sequence of harvests designed to regenerate a timber stand or release a regenerated stand. A final regeneration harvest could be a clearcut, removal cut of a shelterwood or seedtree system, or a selection cut.

**Fine scale** refers to areas less than 10 acres in size.

**Fisher denning habitat** is habitat used by females while raising young.

**Fisher linkage area** is a delineated polygon of habitats considered likely to facilitate dispersal between fisher habitat core areas, based on least-cost corridor models. There are seven fisher core areas, which are described in detail in the Southern Sierra Fisher Conservation Strategy.<sup>59</sup> Least-cost corridors are intended to represent the least risky areas for fishers to disperse between fisher habitat core areas, based on expert assumptions about fisher dispersal relative to vegetation, terrain and other factors.<sup>60</sup> Within the broad linkage areas, key connectivity areas are finer scale areas of remaining suitable fisher habitat that could allow a fisher to cross the linkage area.

**Focal species** refers to a small subset of species whose status permits inference to the integrity of the larger ecological system to which they belong, and provides meaningful information regarding the effectiveness of the forest plan in maintaining or restoring the ecological conditions to maintain the diversity of plant and animal communities in the forest plan area. Focal species are commonly selected based on their functional role in ecosystems.

**Foreground** refers to the scenery management system, detailed in Forest Service Handbook 701, with a distance zone consisting of a detailed landscape generally found from the observer to 0.5 mile away.

---

<sup>59</sup> Spencer, W.D., S.C. Sawyer, H.L. Romsos, W.J. Zielinski, C.M. Thompson, and S.A. Britting. 2016. Southern Sierra Nevada fisher conservation strategy. Unpublished report produced by Conservation Biology Institute.

<sup>60</sup> Spencer, W.D., S.C. Sawyer, H.L. Romsos, W.J. Zielinski, R.A. Sweitzer, C.M. Thompson, K.L. Purcell, D.L. Clifford, L. Cline, H.D. Safford, S.A. Britting, and J.M. Tucker. 2015. Southern Sierra Nevada fisher conservation assessment. Unpublished report produced by Conservation Biology Institute.

**Forest land** is land that is at least 10 percent occupied by forest trees of any size or formerly having had such tree cover and not currently developed for nonforest uses. Land developed for nonforest use includes areas for agricultural crops, improved pasture, residential or administrative areas, roads of any width and adjoining road clearing, and powerline clearing of any width (36 CFR 219.19).

**Forest recreation program niche** is the specific recreation focus of a forest, incorporating public expectations with unique social and ecological features of the land. It is used to help focus to create the most public value with limited resources.

**Fuel breaks** are linear, strip-like vegetation treatment units that are strategically placed to protect high valued resources and assets, such as communities, by modifying fire behavior (such as slowing fire spread, reducing flame lengths, and lowering the incidence of torching and crowning) in the treated area.

**Fuelwood** is wood used for conversion to some form of energy.

**Functional hydrology** refers to perennial and intermittent streams with the following characteristics: (1) stream energy during high flows is dissipated, reducing erosion and improving water quality; (2) streams filter sediment and capture bedload, aiding floodplain development; (3) meadow conditions enhance floodwater retention and ground water recharge; and (4) root masses stabilize stream banks against cutting action.

**Functional restoration** refers to restoration of abiotic and biotic processes in degraded ecosystems. Functional restoration focuses on the underlying processes that may be degraded, regardless of the structural condition of the ecosystem. Functionally restored ecosystem may have a different structure and composition than the historical reference condition. As contrasted with ecological restoration that tends to seek historical reference condition, the functional restoration focuses on the dynamic processes that drive structural and compositional patterns. Functional restoration is the manipulation of interactions among process, structure, and composition in a degraded ecosystem to improve its operations. Functional restoration aims to restore functions and improve structures with a long-term goal of restoring interactions between function and structure. It may be, however, that a functionally restored system will look quite different than the reference condition in terms of structure and composition and these disparities cannot be easily corrected because some threshold of degradation has been crossed or the environmental drivers, such as climate, that influenced structural and (especially) compositional development have changed.

**Geographic area** is a spatially contiguous land area identified within the planning area. A geographic area may overlap with a management area.

**Great gray owl protected activity centers (PACs)** are established and maintained to include the forested area and adjacent meadow around all known great gray owl nest sites. A protected activity center encompasses at least 50 acres of the highest quality nesting habitat (California wildlife habitat relationship type 6, 5D, and 5M) available in the forested area surrounding the nest. A protected activity center also includes the meadow or meadow complex that supports the prey base for nesting owls.

**Greenline** is a linear grouping of perennial plants at or near the stream channel.

**Groundwater-dependent ecosystem** refers to the community of plants, animals, and other organisms whose extent and life processes depend on groundwater. Examples include wetlands, groundwater-fed lakes and streams, cave and karst systems, aquifer systems, springs, and seeps.

**Growing stock** is all trees growing in a forest or in a specified part of it, usually commercial species, meeting specified standards of size, quality, and vigor, and generally expressed in terms of trees per acre, density, or volume.

**Hand treatments** refer to person-based fuels reduction, tree felling or other vegetation removal using either motorized (e.g., chainsaw) or nonmotorized (e.g., shovels, hoes, hand saws) hand tools.

**Heritage Resources** are an object or definite location of human activity, occupation, or use identifiable through field survey, historical documentation, or oral evidence. Heritage resources are prehistoric, historic, archaeological, or architectural sites, structures, places, or objects and traditional cultural properties. Heritage resources include the entire spectrum of resources for which the Forest Service is responsible, from artifacts to cultural landscapes without regard to eligibility for listing on the National Register of Historic Places. These resources represent past human activities or uses and, by their nature, are considered an irreplaceable and nonrenewable resource if not managed for preservation over the long term.

**Heterogeneity** (forest)—Generally, variation or complexity in the arrangement of vegetation structure horizontally (e.g., single trees, clumps of trees, and gaps of no trees) and vertically (e.g., vegetation at different heights from the forest floor to the top of the forest canopy). Also refers to variation in ecological structure, composition, or function across landscape scales. The opposite of homogeneity, where vegetation is characterized by relatively uniform conditions than would have occurred under the natural range of variation.

**Hydrologic unit code (HUC)** is a hierarchical system developed by the U.S. Geological Survey identifying all the drainage basins in the United States in a nested arrangement from largest (regions) to smallest (cataloging units). Hydrologic units are assigned a code, and the number of digits represent a region (2 digits), subregion (4 digits), basin (6 digits), subbasin (8 digits), watershed (10 digits) and subwatershed (12 digits).

**Inherent capability of the plan area** is the ecological capacity or ecological potential of an area characterized by the interrelationship of its physical elements, its climatic regime, and natural disturbances.

**Integrated pest management** refers to a pest control strategy based on the determination of an economic, human health, or environmental threshold that indicates when a pest population is approaching the level at which control measures are necessary to prevent the decline in the desired conditions. In principle, integrated pest management is an ecologically based holistic strategy that relies on natural mortality factors, such as natural enemies, weather, and environmental management, and seeks control tactics that disrupt these factors as little as possible. It is the planned and systematic use of detection, evaluation, and monitoring techniques, and all appropriate silvicultural, biological, chemical, genetic, and mechanical tactics needed to prevent or reduce pest-caused damage and losses to levels that are economically, environmentally, and aesthetically acceptable. For more information about the Forest Service integrated pest management approach, see Forest Service Manual 2100, Chapter 2150, Pesticide-use management and coordination.

**Integrated resource management** refers to multiple-use management that recognizes the interdependence of ecological resources and is based on the need for integrated consideration of ecological, social, and economic factors.

**Intermittent stream** is a stream that flows only at certain times of the year when it receives water, usually from springs or from a surface source, such as melting snow.

**Invasive species** are alien species whose introduction does or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm or harm to human health; species that causes or is likely to cause harm and that is exotic to the ecosystem it has infested. Invasive species infest both aquatic and terrestrial areas and can be identified within any of the following four taxonomic categories: plants, vertebrates, invertebrates, and pathogens.

**Landscape** refers to a defined area, irrespective of ownership or other artificial boundaries, such as a spatial mosaic of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, landforms, and plant communities, repeated in similar form throughout such a defined area.

**Landscape scale** refers to areas that are greater than 10,000 acres in size.

**Line officer** is a Forest Service official who serves in a direct line of command from the Chief.

**Maintain**, in reference to an ecological condition, is to keep in existence or continuance of the desired ecological condition in terms of its desired composition, structure, and processes. Depending upon the circumstance, ecological conditions may be maintained by active or passive management or both.

**Management area** is land area identified within the planning area that has the same set of applicable plan components. A management area does not have to be spatially contiguous.

**Management intensities** are the set and schedule of management practices typically used for certain forest or timber types to achieve desired conditions that may include timber production.

**Management practices (vegetation management practices)** are silvicultural practices such as reforestation, prescribed fire, thinning to reduce stand density, and other practices designed to facilitate tree growth and development.

**Management system** is a timber management system including even-aged management and uneven-aged management.

**Marten suitable habitat** refers to the California Wildlife Habitat Relationship database specific to forest structure and composition types used by marten for foraging and denning. This includes red fir, Douglas-fir, lodgepole pine, subalpine conifer, montane hardwood conifer, montane riparian, and/or wet meadow habitats dominated by trees with a quadratic mean diameter at breast height of over 11 inches and canopy cover greater than 40 percent.

**Mean annual increment of growth** is the total increment of increase of volume of a stand (standing crop plus thinning) up to a given age, divided by that age. The **culmination of mean annual increment of growth** is the age in the growth cycle of an even-aged stand at which the average annual rate of increase of volume is at a maximum. In land management plans, the mean annual increment of growth is expressed in cubic measure and is based on the expected growth of stands according to intensities and utilization guidelines in the plan (36 CFR 219.19).



**Mechanical equipment exclusion zone** is the area where heavy equipment associated with vegetation management operations is excluded for the protection of soils, water quality, the beneficial uses of water, and/or protection of other forest resources. Mechanical equipment exclusion zones are commonly associated with aquatic and riparian habitats (such as streams, lakes, springs), and areas where ground-based equipment has the potential to cause hillslope erosion. Examples of heavy equipment include excavators, backhoes, bulldozers, graders, loaders, feller bunchers, and grapple skidders. Use of equipment within mechanical equipment exclusion zones can occur when consistent with forest plan direction. Examples of activities that would allow for work within mechanical equipment exclusion zones include construction, maintenance or decommissioning of stream crossings and roads, temporary crossings required for vegetation management operations, and management of developed recreation sites. The aforementioned exceptions can occur provided potential resource impacts can be mitigated with best management practices and/or other resource protection measures.

**Mechanical treatment** is machine-based fuels reduction and tree harvest (for example, use of ground-based heavy equipment such as feller-bunchers and skidders or aerial-based systems such as cable yarding systems or helicopter). Excludes hand thinning with chainsaws.

**Mechanized travel/transport** is movement using any mechanical device over land, water, or air, having moving parts, which provides a mechanical advantage to the user and that is powered by a living or nonliving power source. This includes sailboats, hang gliders, parachutes, bicycles, game carriers, carts, and wagons. It does not include wheelchairs when used as necessary medical appliances. It also does not include skis, snowshoes, rafts, canoes, sleds, travois, or similar primitive devices without moving parts.

**Mid-scale** refers to areas that are hundreds to thousands of acres in size.

**Mitigate** is to avoid, minimize, rectify, reduce, or compensate the adverse environmental impacts associated with an action.

**Monitoring** is a systematic process of collecting information to evaluate effects of actions or changes in conditions or relationships.

**Motorized travel** is movement using machines that use a motor, engine, or other nonliving power sources other than a vehicle operated on rails or a wheelchair or mobility device, including one that is battery powered, designed solely for the use by a mobility-impaired person for locomotion, and that is suitable for use in an indoor pedestrian area.

**Multiple use** is the management of all the various renewable surface resources of the National Forest System, so that they are used in the combination that will best meet the needs of the American people; making the most judicious use of the land for some or all of these resources or related services, over areas large enough to provide sufficient latitude for periodic adjustments in use to conform to changing needs and conditions; that some land will be used for less than all of the resources; and harmonious and coordinated management of the various resources, each with the other, without impairment of the productivity of the land, with consideration being given to the relative values of the various resources, and not necessarily the combination of uses that will give the greatest dollar return or the greatest unit output, consistent with the Multiple-Use Sustained-Yield Act of 1960 (16 U.S.C. 528–531).

**National Forest System** includes lands and facilities administered by the Forest Service within the boundaries of national forests, national grasslands, and the national tallgrass prairie.

**National Forest System trail** is a trail wholly or partly within or adjacent to and serving the National Forest System that the Forest Service determines is necessary for the protection, administration, and utilization of the National Forest System and the use and development of its resources. A forest trail other than a trail that has been authorized by a legally documented right-of-way held by a state, county, or other local public road authority (36 CFR 212.1).

**National historic trails** are designated by Congress, under the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1241) and are extended trails that follow as closely as possible and practicable the original trails or routes of travel of national historical significance. Congressional designation of such trails or routes is continuous, but the established or developed trail, and the acquisition thereof, need not be continuous onsite. The purpose of a national historic trail is the identification and protection of the historic route and its historic remnants and artifacts for public use and enjoyment. The term “extended trails” means trails or trail segments that total at least 100 miles in length. While it is desirable that extended trails be continuous, one or more trail segments which, in the aggregate, constitute at least one hundred miles in length.

**National Quality Standards** are the national criteria that establish the level of quality in terms of health and cleanliness, resource setting, safety and security, responsiveness, and condition of facilities for National Forest System trails managed at a full-service level (FSH 2309.18, Section 15).

**National recreation trails**, within the National Forest System, are established and designated by the Secretary of Agriculture under the National Trails System Act and FSM 2350, and provide a variety of outdoor recreation uses in or reasonably accessible to urban areas.

**National scenic trails**, such as the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail, are designated by Congress, under the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1241), and are extended trails so located as to provide for maximum outdoor recreation potential and for the conservation and enjoyment of the nationally significant scenic, historic, natural, or cultural qualities of the areas through which such trails may pass. National scenic trails may be located to represent desert, marsh, grassland, mountain, canyon, river, forest, and other areas, as well as landforms which exhibit significant characteristics of the physiographic regions of the Nation. The term “extended trails” means trails or trail segments that total at least 100 miles in length. While it is desirable that extended trails be continuous, one or more trail segments which, in the aggregate, constitute at least 100 miles in length.

**National Trail Management Area (see also “Trail corridor” and in this plan, only related to the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail):** Includes lands identified within the planning area that have the same set of applicable plan components unique to a National Scenic or Historic Trail, as described in FSH 1909.12, Chapter 20, Sections 24.1 and 24.43, to provide for the nature and purposes of such a trail. Such areas are also related to, but distinct from, National Trail Right(s)-of-Way in Section 7 (a)(2) of the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1246 (a)(2)), and corridors in FSM 2350, which are administered to be compatible with the nature and purposes of such a trail (FSM 2353.42). In section 9(a) of the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1248), the term “rights-of-way” means authorizations the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Agriculture may grant upon, over, under, across, or along the National Trails System, which is a different meaning than either National Trail Management Area, in the plan, or corridor, in FSM 2350.

**National trails (and National Trails System)** contain the following components, national scenic trails, national historic trails, national recreation trails, and connecting and side trails, as described in the National Trails System Act and FSM 2350.

**Native species** is an organism that is, or was historically, present in a particular ecosystem because of natural migratory or evolutionary processes and not as a result of an accidental or deliberate introduction into that ecosystem. An organism's presence and evolution (adaptation) in an area are determined by climate, soil, biotic and abiotic factors.

**Natural range of variation (NRV):** Spatial and temporal variation in ecosystem characteristics under historical disturbance regimes during a reference period. The reference period considered should be sufficiently long to include the full range of variation produced by the dominant natural disturbance regimes, often several centuries, for such disturbances as fire and flooding, and should also include short-term variation and cycles in climate. NRV is a term used synonymously with the historical range of variation. The NRV is a tool for assessing ecological integrity and does not necessarily constitute a management target or desired condition. The NRV can help identify structural, functional, compositional, and connectivity characteristics, for which plan components may be important for either maintenance or restoration of such ecological conditions.

**Nature and purposes**, in the context of national scenic and historic trails, is the language that identifies the character, characteristics, and congressional intent for such a trail and may include authorized mode(s) of travel and/or activities, as well as other specifications. For definition of the "nature and purposes of the trail," see the National Trails System Act and Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Plan, and for further information, see other agency documents (such as Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail Foundation Document).

**Nonforest land** is land that does not meet the definition of forest land. Land developed for nonforest use includes areas for agricultural crops, improved pasture, residential or administrative areas, roads of any width and adjoining road clearing, and powerline clearing of any width (36 CFR 219.19).

**Northern goshawk protected activity centers (PACs)** are established to include the forested area around all known or suspected northern goshawk nest sites. A PAC encompasses at least 200 acres of the highest quality nesting habitat (i.e., California wildlife habitat relationship type 6, 5D, and 5M) available in the forested area surrounding the nest. The protected activity center should be in the largest contiguous block possible and not include large patches of nonforest vegetation. If the best available habitat is in smaller blocks, they must be within 0.5 mile of one another. PAC boundaries may be adjusted to encompass known or suspected nest stands and the best available forested habitat. Northern goshawk PACs may be removed after a stand-replacing event if the habitat has been rendered unsuitable or may be removed as otherwise provided in current regional guidance.

**Old forest** is defined as late successional stands in the montane and upper montane zones that are characterized by the presence of large and old trees (generally exceeding 30 to 40 inches in diameter and more than 150 years in age) and contain unique structural features, such as large snags, large logs, and variable tree size classes, that contribute to high structural complexity and heterogeneity. Structural complexity of old forests includes a mixture of individual trees, tree clusters, and canopy openings, with and without shrub or tree regeneration patches, which vary over space and time.

**Old-growth tree** refers to large and old trees, such as those found in old forest described above.

**Patch** refers to a relatively homogeneous area that differs from its surroundings. Patches are the basic unit of the landscape that change and fluctuate over space and time. Patches have a definite shape and spatial configuration and can be described structurally and compositionally by internal variables such as number of trees, number of tree species, age of trees, height of trees, or other similar measurements. Patches can range widely in size and include:

- At the scale of generally less than 1 acre but up to 10 acres, fine-scale patches are composed of individual trees, tree clumps, and canopy gaps within a stand;
- At the scale of approximately 10 to 100 acres, fine-scale patches of individual forest stands;
- At the scale of hundreds to thousands of acres, mid-scale patches of multiple stands of generally similar vegetation; and
- At the scale of greater than 10,000 acres, landscape-scale patches consisting of multiple vegetation types intermixed across a large area or watershed (i.e., mosaic of vegetation patches).

**Perennial stream** is a stream or reach of a channel that flows continuously, or nearly so, throughout the year and whose upper surface is generally lower than the top of the zone of saturation in areas adjacent to the stream.

**Persistence** is continued existence.

**Plan components** are the parts of a national forest land management plan that guide future project and activity decision-making. Specific plan components may apply to the entire plan area, to specific management areas or geographic areas, or to other areas as identified in the plan. Every plan must include the following plan components: desired conditions; objectives; standards; guidelines; suitability of lands. A plan may also include goals as an optional component.

**Plan monitoring program** is an essential part of the land management plan that based on plan components sets out the plan monitoring questions and associated indicators. The plan monitoring program informs management of resources on the plan area and enables the responsible official to determine if a change in plan components or other plan content that guide management of resources on the plan area may be needed.

**Plant and animal community** is a naturally occurring assemblage of plant and animal species living within a defined area or habitat.

**Prescribed burning** is the use of wildland fire ignited to meet specific objectives identified in a written and approved prescribed fire plan for which National Environmental Policy Act requirements (where applicable) have been met prior to ignition. Synonymous with prescribed fire and controlled burn. Preparation for prescribed burning typically includes the construction of control lines.

**Productivity** is the capacity of National Forest System lands and their ecological systems to provide the various renewable resources in certain amounts in perpetuity. For the purposes of land management planning, productivity is an ecological term, not an economic term (36 CFR part 219).

**Project** refers to an organized effort to achieve an outcome on National Forest System lands identified by location, tasks, outputs, effects, times, and responsibilities for execution.

**Proposed species** is any species of fish, wildlife, or plant that is proposed by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service or the National Marine Fisheries Service in the Federal Register to be listed under section 4 of the Endangered Species Act.

**Reasonable assurance** is a judgment made by the responsible official based on best available scientific information and local professional experience; practices that are based on existing technology and knowledge are likely to deliver the intended results. Reasonable assurance applies to average and foreseeable conditions for the area and does not constitute a guarantee to achieve the intended results.

**Recovery** is a word used with respect to threatened or endangered species to denote the improvement in the status of a listed species to the point at which listing as federally endangered or threatened is no longer appropriate.

**Recreation experience** includes perceptions, feelings, and reactions that a visitor has before, during, and after a visit to an area. Reference “Interagency Visitor Use Management Framework: A Guide to Providing Sustainable Outdoor Recreation,” July 2016.

**Recreation management areas (RMAs)** include the different types of sustainable recreation management areas (destination recreation areas, general recreation areas, backcountry terrain recreation areas) that are identified in the plan.

**Recreation opportunity** is an opportunity to participate in a specific recreation activity in a particular recreation setting and enjoy desired recreation experiences and other benefits that accrue. Recreation opportunities include primitive, nonmotorized, motorized, developed, and dispersed recreation on land, water and in the air.

**Recreation opportunity spectrum (ROS)** is a system by which existing and desired recreation settings (synonymous with “ROS class”) are defined, classified, inventoried, and monitored. ROS includes six distinct recreation settings/ROS classes along a continuum (primitive, semiprimitive nonmotorized, semiprimitive motorized, roaded natural, rural, and urban). FSM 2310 provides the physical, managerial, and social characteristics for each recreation setting/ROS class. In the following table, NA indicates that the characteristic is not applicable to the recreation setting.

ROS class characteristics	Primitive	Semiprimitive nonmotorized	Semiprimitive motorized	Roaded natural	Rural	Urban
<b>Theme</b>	Predominately unmodified, naturally evolving, vast, and remote	Predominately natural / natural-appearing; rustic improvements to protect resources	Predominately natural-appearing; motorized use visible and audible	Natural-appearing with nodes and corridors of development such as campgrounds, trailheads, boat launches, and rustic, small-scale resorts	Altered landscapes with cultural emphasis such as: rural, pastoral, and/or agricultural; administrative sites, historic complexes, and moderately developed resorts such as local ski areas, are typical	Highly developed site modifications and facilities; regionally significant ski areas and other destination resorts as well as large, highly developed visitor centers are examples of urban nodes within National Forest System lands
<b>Remoteness</b>	3 miles or more from designated motorized routes and areas	½ mile or more from designated motorized routes and areas	½ mile or more from maintenance level 3–5 roads but containing maintenance level 2 roads and motorized trails and/or designated motorized areas	Within ½ mile of maintenance level 3–5 roads; maintenance level 2 roads may also be present	Not remote, often near other (non-Forest Service) rural settings and communities	Often close to towns and cities
<b>Size</b>	5,000 or more acres	2,500 or more acres	2,500 or more acres	NA	NA, but typically small parcels within larger roaded natural settings	NA, but typically small nodes

*Glossary*

<b>ROS class characteristics</b>	<b>Primitive</b>	<b>Semiprimitive nonmotorized</b>	<b>Semiprimitive motorized</b>	<b>Roaded natural</b>	<b>Rural</b>	<b>Urban</b>
<b>Access</b>	Nonmotorized trails, class 1; travel on foot and horse; no motorized travel; no mechanized travel within designated wilderness	Nonmotorized routes, trail classes 1–2 typical; foot/horse/mountain bike use; no motorized travel; closed and temporary roads may be present	Motorized routes, maintenance level 2 roads, trail class 2; off-highway vehicles allowed on designated routes and areas	Typically, maintenance level 3–5 roads; maintenance level 2 roads may also be present, typically trail classes 3–4; highway vehicles, off-highway vehicles, and other motorized travel on designated routes	Typically, maintenance level 3–5 roads and trail classes 3–5; mass transit sometimes available	Typically, maintenance level 4–5 roads and trail classes 4–5; mass transit often available
<b>Recreation Sites</b>	Typically, Development scale 0, no improvements	Typically, Development scale 0–1, sometimes 2; minor investments to protect natural and cultural resources	Typically, Development scale 0–2; purpose of investments is to protect natural and cultural resources	Typically, Development scale 0–3, sometimes 4	Typically, Development scale 4–5	Typically, Development scale 5, sometimes 4
<b>Sanitation</b>	No facilities; leave no trace	No facilities; leave no trace	Limited facilities; outhouses may be in areas of concentrated use	Typically vault toilets	Flush toilets	Flush toilets
<b>Water Supply</b>	Undeveloped, natural	Undeveloped, natural	Undeveloped, natural	Often developed	Developed, showers common	Hot water, showers
<b>Signing</b>	Minimal, constructed of rustic, natural materials	Rustic, natural materials	Rustic, natural materials	Variety of materials; blend with natural setting	Natural and synthetic materials	Extensive
<b>Interpretation</b>	Through self-discovery	Typically, self-discovery	Self-discovery, some located off site or at trailheads	Simple roadside signs, some interpretive displays	Roadside exhibits, interpretive programs, etc.	Exhibits in staffed visitor centers, highly developed and formalized exhibits

*Glossary*

<b>ROS class characteristics</b>	<b>Primitive</b>	<b>Semiprimitive nonmotorized</b>	<b>Semiprimitive motorized</b>	<b>Roaded natural</b>	<b>Rural</b>	<b>Urban</b>
<b>Water Crossing</b>	Minimal, pedestrian only, made of natural materials	Rustic structures for foot/horse and bicycle traffic	Rustic structures or bridges	Bridges, natural materials	Bridges that accommodate highway vehicles, recreation vehicles, and heavy equipment	Bridges for highway vehicles, buses, recreation vehicles, heavy equipment
<b>Vegetation</b>	Natural, no treatments except for fire use	Treatments enhance forest health and mimic natural vegetation patterns	Treatments improve forest health and mimic natural vegetation patterns	Treatments are evident but in harmony with the scenic character	Treatments often visible, blend with landscape	Often planted, manicured, and maintained
<b>Scenic Integrity</b>	Very High	Typically high	Typically high to moderate	Ranges from High to Low; note that low scenic integrity is typically in highly manipulated settings where the evidence of mining, extensive timber harvest, or other management activities are dominant on the landscape	Ranges from High to Low	Ranges from High to Low



Glossary

ROS class characteristics	Primitive	Semiprimitive nonmotorized	Semiprimitive motorized	Roaded natural	Rural	Urban
<b>Managerial</b>	Little to no on-site regimentation, few encounters with Forest Service personnel or partners/volunteers working on behalf of the agency; visitor use management is largely off-site and accomplished through regulation, permitting, and other visitor use management techniques	Minimum or subtle signing, regulations, or other on-site regimentation; low encounters with Forest Service personnel or partners/volunteers working on behalf of the agency	Minimum, subtle on-site controls; designated motorized routes/areas	Signs and regulations present but typically subordinate to the setting; moderate likelihood of encountering Forest Service personnel or partners/volunteers working on behalf of the agency	Obvious signing (regulation and information), education and law enforcement staff; motorized and mechanized travel common and often separated	Intensive on-site management, obvious signs, and staffing, education, and law enforcement available; motorized and mechanized travel on designated routes

**Recreation setting** is synonymous with recreation opportunity spectrum (ROS) class (primitive, semiprimitive nonmotorized, semiprimitive motorized, roaded natural, rural, and urban).

**Resilience** is the ability of an ecosystem and its component parts to absorb, or recover from the effects of disturbance through preservation, restoration, or improvement of its essential structures and functions, and redundancy of ecological patterns across the landscape.

**Responsible official** is the official with the authority and responsibility to oversee the planning process and to approve a plan, plan amendment, and plan revision (36 CFR 219.62).

**Restocked** is the condition of the growing space occupancy of trees that is to be achieved after a disturbance that substantially altered the previous stocking.

**Restoration strategy** is a strategic vision that describes broad ecological restoration approaches that support ecosystem management goals and objectives within a specific landscape of interest.<sup>61</sup>

**Riparian areas** include terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems that extend down into the groundwater, up above the canopy, outward across the floodplain, up the near-slopes that drain to the water, laterally into the terrestrial ecosystem, and along the water course at variable widths.

**Risk** is a combination of the likelihood that a negative outcome will occur and the severity of the subsequent negative consequences.

**River corridor** is the geographic area generally encompassed within one-quarter mile on either side of a river studied for eligibility or suitability that contains the river and its outstandingly remarkable values, as described in FSH 1909.12, Chapter 80.

**Road** is a motor vehicle route over 50 inches wide, unless identified and managed as a trail.

**Route** is a road or trail.

**Rotation** is the number of years (including the regeneration period) required to establish and grow timber under an even-aged management system to a specified condition or maturity for regeneration harvest.

**Satisfactory soils** are soil conditions with favorable structure and infiltration characteristics to absorb and filter precipitation and support adequate vegetative cover to minimize erosion and sustain desired habitat diversity.

**Satisfactory condition for range vegetation** is good to excellent vegetation condition or fair vegetation condition with an upward trend.

**Scenic character** is the combination of the physical, biological, and cultural images that give an area its scenic identity and contributes to its sense of place. Scenic character provides a frame of reference from which to determine scenic attractiveness and to measure scenic integrity (36 CFR 219.19). As described in the 2012 Planning Rule and Forest Service Handbook 1909.12 Chapter 20, Section 23.23f, scenic character replaces the term “landscape character” as defined and

---

<sup>61</sup> Meyer, M.D., J.W. Long, and H.D. Safford, eds. 2021. Postfire restoration framework for national forests in California. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-270. Albany, CA: USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Research Station. 204 p.

referenced in FSM 2380 and Agriculture Handbook 701 (Landscape Aesthetics - A Handbook for Scenery Management).

**Scenic Integrity Objectives (SIOs)** are the minimum degree to which desired scenic character attributes are to remain intact (Agriculture Handbook 701). Four nationally defined scenic integrity objectives can serve as desired conditions, and one (very low) is used only in describing existing (not desired) conditions. Each is defined in FSM 2310.

**Very High:** The landscape is intact with only minor changes from the valued attributes described in the scenic character.

**High:** Management activities are unnoticed, and the landscape appears unaltered.

**Moderate:** Management activities are noticeable but are subordinate to the scenic character. The landscape appears slightly altered.

**Low:** The landscape appears altered. Management activities are evident and sometimes dominate but are designed to blend with surroundings by repeating form, line, color, and texture of attributes described in the scenic character.

**Very Low:** Used to describe landscapes that are heavily altered and in which the valued attributes described in the scenic character are not evident. Very low is used only to describe the existing scenic integrity. It is NOT used as an SIO or desired condition.

**Scenic stability** is the degree to which the scenic character and its scenery attributes can be sustained through time and ecological progression. In other words, it looks at the ecological sustainability of the valued scenic character and its scenery attributes. Because attributes such as rock outcroppings and landforms change relatively little over time, scenic stability focuses on the dominant vegetation scenery attributes. It recognizes the often subtle, incremental changes that can severely diminish or eliminate scenic character. As described in Forest Service Handbook 1909.12 Chapter 20, Section 23.23f, desired conditions may include scenic stability. Reference the Scenic Stability/Sustainability Technical Guide, appendix J.

**Special places** refers to locations in the landscape with unique importance and meaning. At times, special places are isolated, small areas or spots; at other times, they are large areas of land. Special places often have “place names” indicating local or regional significance. Special places may be merited strictly because of scenic attributes.

**Species of conservation concern** are species, other than federally recognized threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species, that are known to occur in the plan area and for which the regional forester has determined that the best available scientific information currently indicates substantial concern about the species' capability to persist over the long-term in the plan area (36 CFR § 219.9). More information about species of conservation concern on the Sequoia National Forest is available at the Forest's website at <https://www.fs.usda.gov/detail/r5/landmanagement/planning/?cid=STELPRD3847418>.

**Stand** is a contiguous group of trees sufficiently uniform in age class distribution, composition, and structure, and growing on a site of sufficiently uniform quality, to be a distinguishable unit, such as mixed, pure, even-aged, and uneven-aged stands.

**Stressors:** Agents of change that may directly or indirectly degrade or impair ecosystem composition, structure, or ecological process in a manner that may impair its ecological integrity.

Examples are invasive species, loss of connectivity, the disruption of a natural disturbance regime, uncharacteristic wildfire, insect or pathogen outbreaks, air pollution, drought, invasive species, and climate change.

**Sustainability** is the capability to meet the needs of the present generation without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. For the purposes of the land management planning regulation at 36 CFR part 219, ecological sustainability refers to the capability of ecosystems to maintain ecological integrity; economic sustainability refers to the capability of society to produce and consume or otherwise benefit from goods and services, including contributions to jobs and market and nonmarket benefits; and social sustainability refers to the capability of society to support the network of relationships, traditions, culture and activities that connect people to the land and to one another, and support vibrant communities.

**Sustainable recreation** refers to the set of recreation settings and opportunities on the National Forest System that is ecologically, economically, and socially sustainable for present and future generations.

**Threatened species** is any species that the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Commerce has determined is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range. Threatened species are listed at 50 CFR sections 17.11, 17.12, and 223.102.

**Timber harvest** refers to the removal of trees for wood fiber use and other multiple-use purposes.

**Timber production** is the purposeful growing, tending, harvesting, and regeneration of regulated crops of trees to be cut into logs, bolts, or other round sections for industrial or consumer use (36 CFR 219.19).

**Trail** is a route 50 inches or less in width or a route over 50 inches wide that is identified and managed as a trail.

**Trail corridor (see also National Trail Management Area):** In the context of a national scenic or historic trail (and in this plan, only related to the Pacific Crest National Scenic Trail), includes lands identified within the planning area that have the same set of applicable plan components unique to such a trail, as described in FSH 1909.12, Chapter 20, Sections 24.1 and 24.43, to provide for the nature and purposes of such a trail. Such areas are also related to, but distinct from, “National Trail Right(s)-of-Way” in Section 7 (a)(2) of the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1246 (a)(2)) and “corridors” in FSM 2350, which are administered to be compatible with the nature and purposes of such a trail (FSM 2353.42). In section 9(a) of the National Trails System Act (16 U.S.C. 1248), the term “rights-of-way” means authorizations the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Agriculture may grant upon, over, under, across, or along the National Trails System, which is a different meaning than either “National Trail Management Area,” in the plan, or “corridor,” in FSM 2350.

**Unauthorized route** is a road or trail that is not a National Forest System road or trail or a temporary road or trail and that is not included in a national forest transportation atlas (36 CFR 212.1, Forest Service Manual 2353.05, and Forest Service Manual 7705). Repeated cross-country motor vehicle use of National Forest System lands has resulted in unplanned, unauthorized roads and trails. Unauthorized routes develop without agency authorization, environmental analysis, or

public involvement and do not have the same status as National Forest System roads and trails included in the national forest transportation system.

**Uncharacteristic wildfire** refers to wildfire that exceeds the natural range of variation in fire severity (such as high-severity proportion, high-severity patch size) and other fire effects indicators for a specific vegetation type.<sup>62</sup>

**Underserved Communities** refers to populations sharing a particular characteristic, as well as geographic communities, that have been systematically denied a full opportunity to participate in aspects of economic, social, and civic life, such as Black, Latino, and Indigenous and Native American persons, Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders and other persons of color; members of religious minorities; lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, and queer (LGBTQ+) persons; persons with disabilities; persons who live in rural areas; and persons otherwise adversely affected by persistent poverty or inequality.<sup>63</sup>

**Undesirable wildfire** refers to wildfire that does not meet the desired conditions for a specific vegetation type.

**Utilization standards** are specifications for merchantable forest products offered in a timber sale.

**Vegetation treatments** include mechanical treatments, hand treatments, and prescribed burn treatments. Fuels treatments are vegetation treatments aimed at reducing fuels.

**Viable population** is a population of a species that continues to persist over the long term with sufficient distribution to be resilient and adaptable to stressors and likely future environments (36 CFR 219.19).

**Visitor use management** is the proactive and adaptive process for managing characteristics of visitor use and the natural and managerial setting using a variety of strategies and tools to achieve and maintain desired resource conditions and visitor experiences. Visitor use management strategies include education (e.g., increase visitor contacts), site management (e.g., relocate a facility), regulation (e.g., initiate a permit system), and enforcement (e.g., prohibit access at a particular time).

**Visual foreground** (related to scenery management) is the area within the foreground distance zone (up to 0.5 mile) that is visible from a height of 5 feet above the ground, where visibility is not obscured by terrain.

**Watershed** is a region or land area drained by a single stream, river, or drainage network, a drainage basin.

**Watershed condition** as defined by the Watershed Condition Classification (WCC) technical guide is the state of the physical and biological characteristics and processes within a watershed that affect the hydrologic and soil functions supporting aquatic ecosystems.<sup>64</sup> Watershed condition reflects a range of variability from natural pristine (functioning properly) to degraded (severely altered state or impaired). Watersheds that are functioning properly have terrestrial,

---

<sup>62</sup> Hardy, C.C. 2005. Wildland fire hazard and risk: Problems, definitions, and context. *Forest ecology and management*, 211(1), 73-82.

<sup>63</sup> Executive Order 13985

<sup>64</sup> Potyondy, J.P., and Geier, T.W. 2011. Watershed condition classification technical guide. Report FS-978. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 41 p.

riparian, and aquatic ecosystems that capture, store, and release water, sediment, wood, and nutrients within their range of natural variability for these processes. When watersheds are functioning properly, they create and sustain functional terrestrial, riparian, aquatic, and wetland habitats that are capable of supporting diverse populations of native aquatic- and riparian-dependent species. In general, the greater the departure from the natural pristine state, the more impaired the watershed condition is likely to be. Watersheds that are functioning properly are commonly referred to as healthy watersheds. Watershed condition assessment places specific emphasis on the physical and biological characteristics and processes affecting hydrologic and soil functions that support aquatic ecosystems. Therefore, in this WCC system, primary emphasis is placed on indicators that directly or indirectly affect soil and hydrologic functions and associated riparian and aquatic ecosystems.

The FSM uses three classes to describe watershed condition (USDA Forest Service 2004, FSM 2521.1).

Class 1 watersheds exhibit high geomorphic, hydrologic, and biotic integrity relative to their natural potential condition. (Functioning Properly)

Class 2 watersheds exhibit moderate geomorphic, hydrologic, and biotic integrity relative to their natural potential condition. (Functioning at Risk)

Class 3 watersheds exhibit low geomorphic, hydrologic, and biotic integrity relative to their natural potential condition. (Impaired Function)

**Watershed Condition Class (WCC)** is determined through a modelling process that evaluates the conditions of 12 watershed condition indicators and associated attributes that include the following:

1. Water Quality (impaired waters (303(d)) listed, water quality problems not listed)
2. Water Quantity (flow characteristics)
3. Aquatic Habitat (habitat fragmentation, large woody debris, channel shape and function)
4. Aquatic Biota (life form presence, native species, exotic and/or aquatic invasive species)
5. Riparian/Wetland Vegetation (vegetation condition)
6. Roads and Trails (open road density, road and trail maintenance, proximity to water, mass wasting)
7. Soils (soil productivity, soil erosion, soil contamination)
8. Fire Regime or Wildfire (fire regime condition class or wildfire effects)
9. Forest Cover (loss of forest cover)
10. Rangeland Vegetation (rangeland vegetation condition)
11. Terrestrial Invasive Species (extent and rate of spread)
12. Forest Health (insects and disease, ozone)

A condition class score for each watershed is determined based on the attribute information. Indicators 1–7 receive a higher weighting than indicators 8–12 in the calculation of the watershed

condition class. The resulting watershed condition classes include Class 1 – Functioning Properly, Class 2 – Functioning at Risk, and Class 3 – Impaired Function.

**Watershed Condition Framework** is a national comprehensive and consistent approach for classifying watershed condition, implementing integrated restoration in priority watersheds on national forests and grasslands, and tracking and monitoring outcome-based program accomplishments for performance accountability.<sup>65</sup>

**Watershed restoration** includes all activities that can improve the watershed condition class as defined by the Watershed Condition Framework, including riparian and aquatic habitat restoration, as well as upland activities that benefit these habitats (see watershed condition class definition for more information on indicators and attributes). Watershed restoration is considered a subset of ecological restoration.

**Wild and scenic river** is a river designated by Congress as part of the National Wild and Scenic Rivers System that was established in the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (16 U.S.C. 1271 (note), 1271–1287) with the following characteristics:

**Wild**—Those rivers or sections of rivers free of impoundments and generally inaccessible except by trail, with watersheds or shorelines essentially primitive and waters unpolluted. These represent vestiges of primitive America.

**Scenic**—Those rivers or sections of rivers free of impoundments, with shorelines or watersheds still largely primitive and shorelines largely undeveloped, but accessible in places by roads.

**Recreational**—Those rivers or sections of rivers readily accessible by road or railroad that may have some development along their shorelines, and that may have undergone some impoundment or diversion in the past.

**Wilderness** is any area of land designated by Congress as part of the National Wilderness Preservation System that was established in the Wilderness Act of 1964 (16 U.S.C. 1131–1136).

**Wildland fire** refers to wildfire or prescribed fire.

---

<sup>65</sup> USDA Forest Service. 2011. Watershed Condition Framework; a framework for assessing and tracking changes to watershed condition. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Washington, Report FS-977.